



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

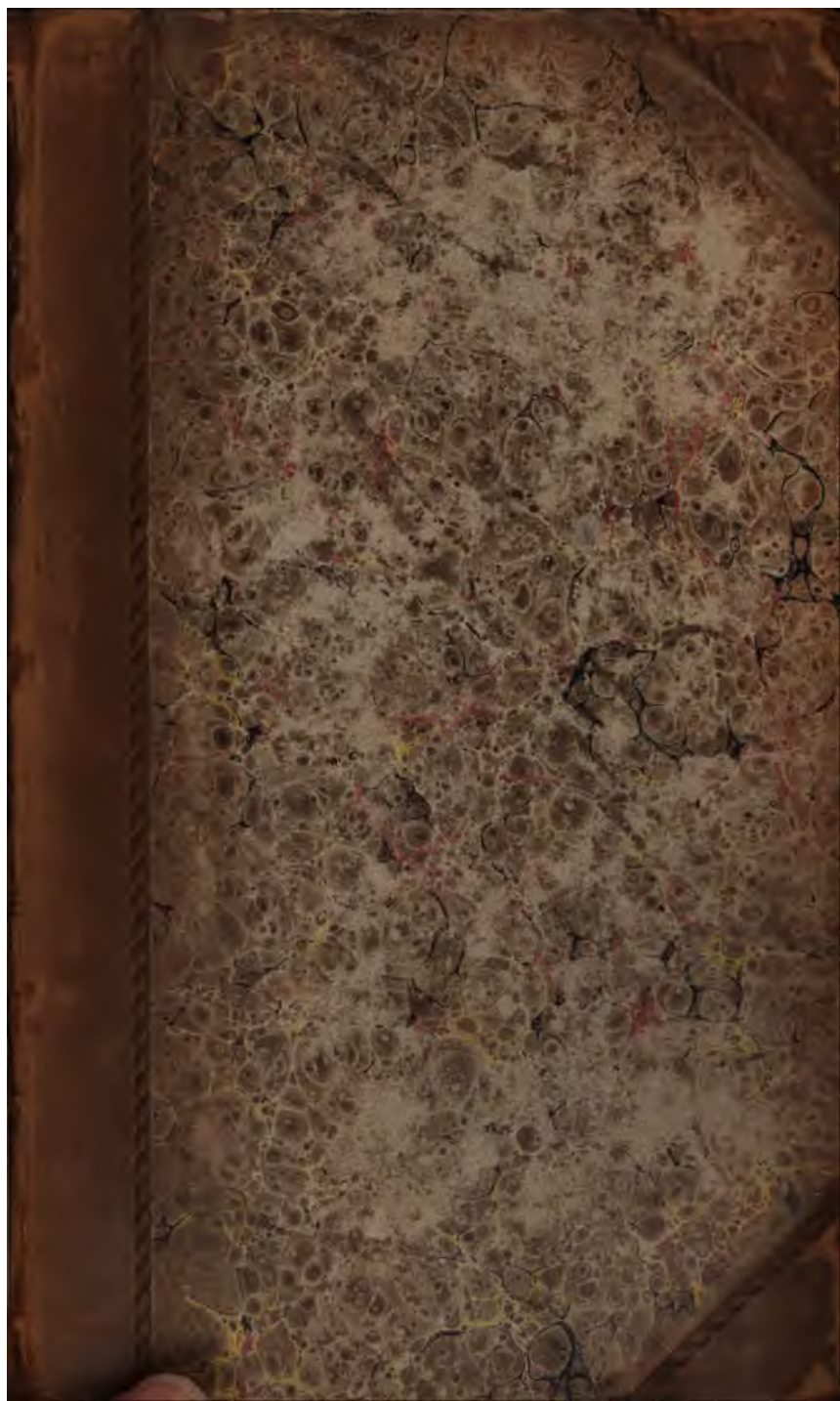
Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>





600010642J

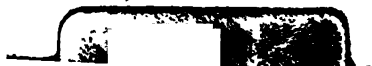
26-261.

101-42

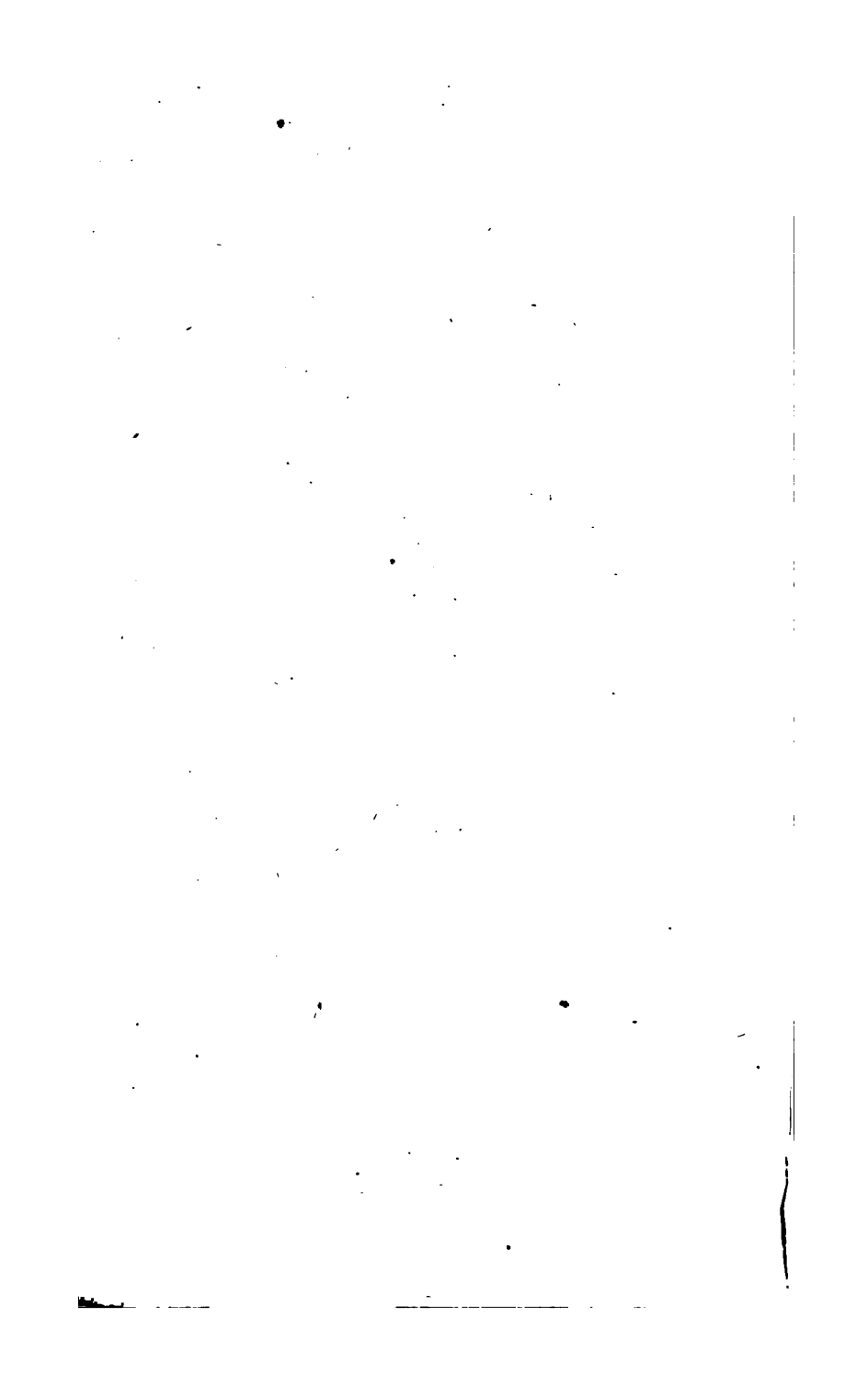


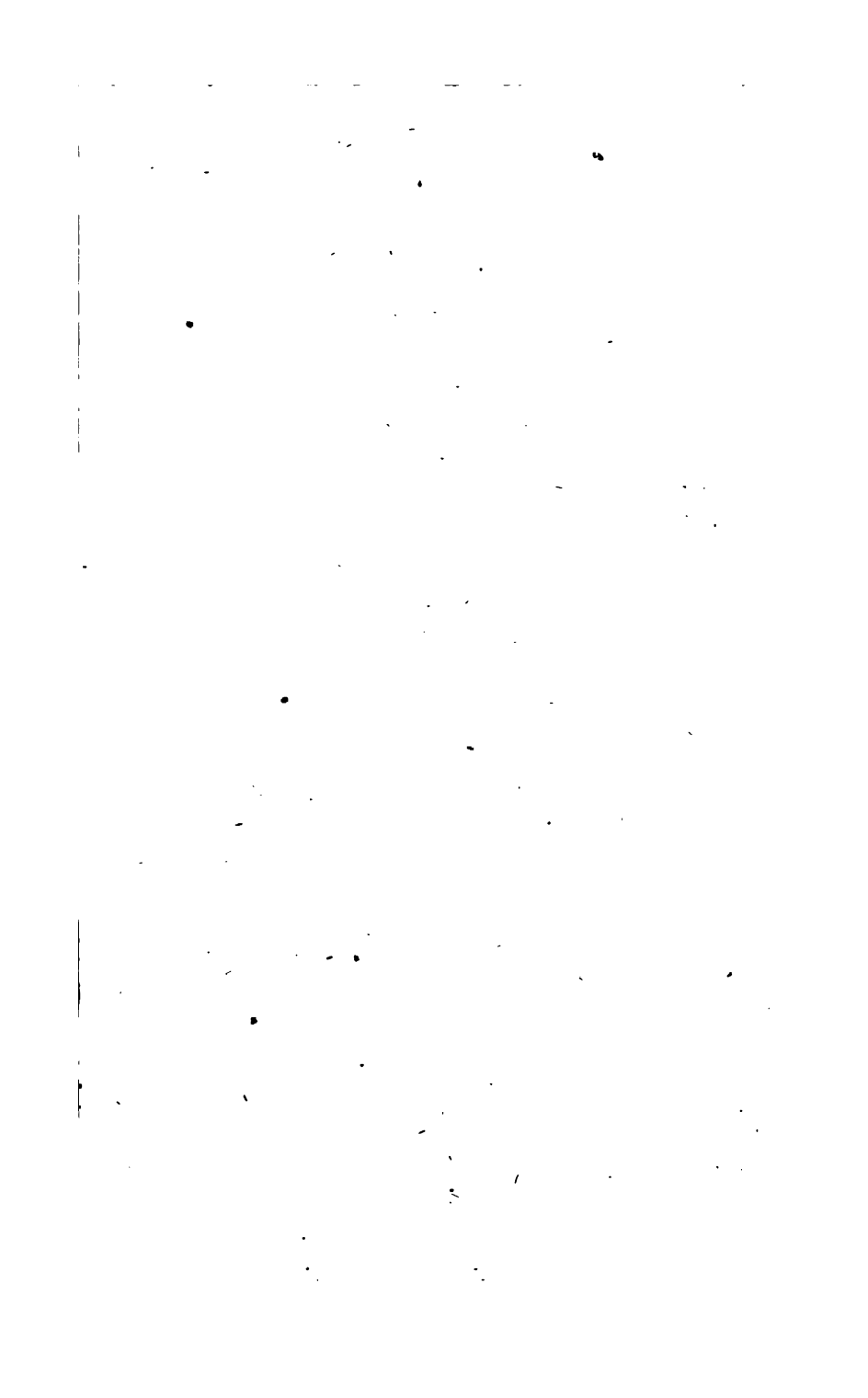
600010642J

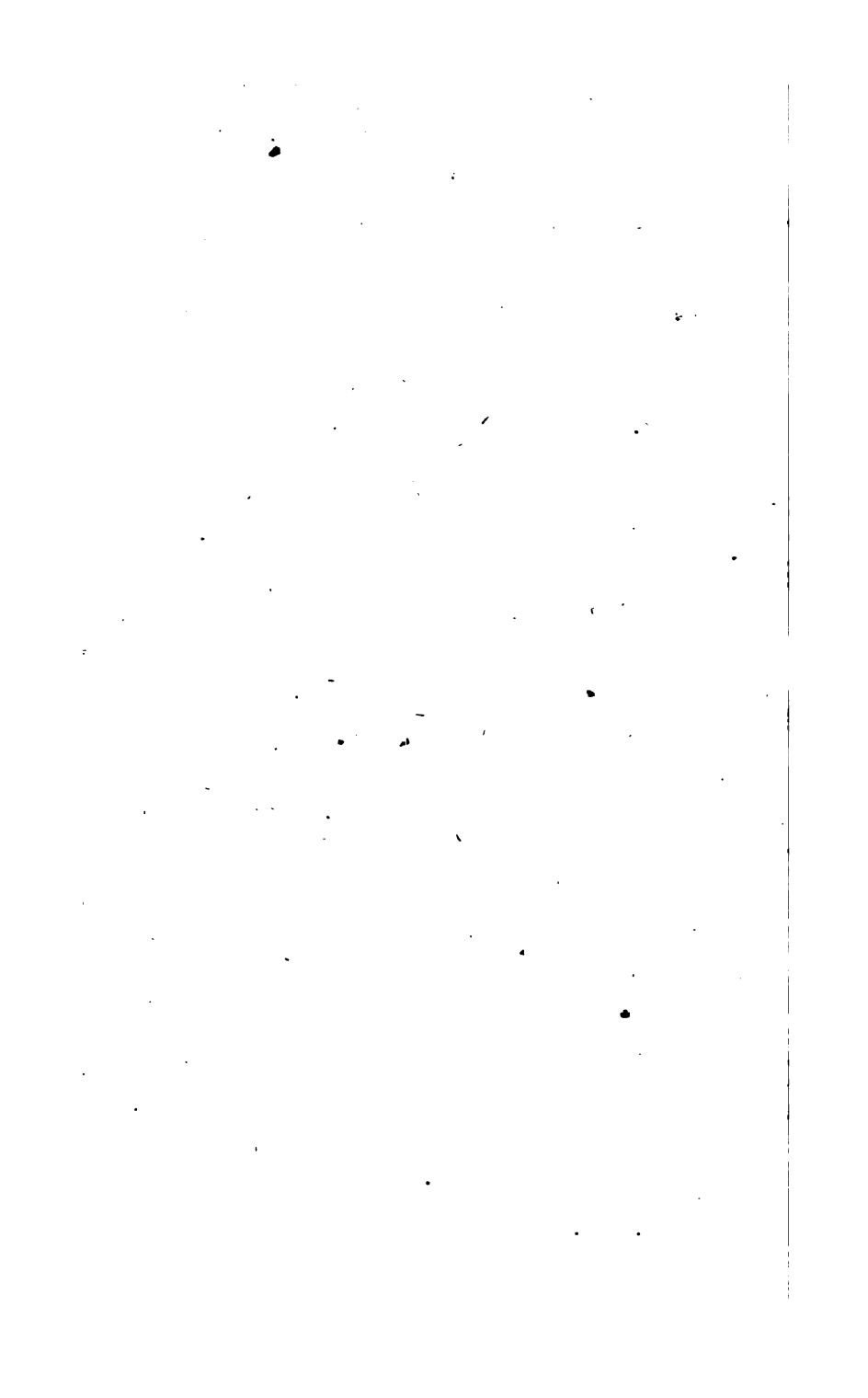
26-261.











A PRACTICAL
GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE.

52

HYCISCHIA

LEUCOPHYLLA

LEUCOPHYLLA

LEUCOPHYLLA

A

J. H. 1826.

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

French Language,

ILLUSTRATED BY

COPIOUS EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES,

SELECTED FROM THE

MOST APPROVED FRENCH WRITERS;

DESIGNED FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS.



By J. ROWBOTHAM,

AUTHOR OF A GERMAN GRAMMAR, &c. AND MASTER OF THE
CLASSICAL, MATHEMATICAL, AND COMMERCIAL ACADEMY, WALWORTH.

London:

Printed for

BALDWIN, CRADOCK, AND JOY;
HARVEY AND DARTON; SIMPKIN AND MARSHALL;
AND THE AUTHOR.

1826.

261.



A PRACTICAL
GRAMMAR
OF THE
FRENCH LANGUAGE.

REPORT

ON

THE

... ..

A

J. H. 1826.

PRACTICAL GRAMMAR

OF THE

French Language,

ILLUSTRATED BY

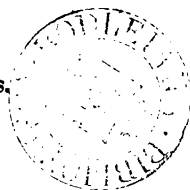
COPIOUS EXAMPLES AND EXERCISES,

SELECTED FROM THE

MOST APPROVED FRENCH WRITERS;

DESIGNED FOR THE

USE OF SCHOOLS AND PRIVATE STUDENTS.



By J. ROWBOTHAM,

AUTHOR OF A GERMAN GRAMMAR, &c. AND MASTER OF THE
CLASSICAL, MATHEMATICAL, AND COMMERCIAL ACADEMY, WALWORTH.

London:

Printed for

BALDWIN, CRADOCK, AND JOY;
HARVEY AND DARTON; SIMPKIN AND MARSHALL;
AND THE AUTHOR.

1826.

261.

THE UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO PRESS

P R E F A C E.

MANY and various have been the opinions of the learned, in different ages of the world, respecting the easiest mode of acquiring languages. The general opinion, of late years, appears to have been, that it was necessary to begin with the study of grammar; but there are persons who justly contend, that we should at the same time acquire a knowledge of words, in order that we may form clear conceptions of the principles by which their composition and order are to be regulated. For this purpose, the aim of the Author has been to combine practice with principles; and that the student may lose as little time as possible, he has introduced exercises from the best French writers, by which he trusts the pupil may, whilst he is learning the language, acquire some knowledge of men and things.

A knowledge of the French tongue is peculiarly valuable, not only on account of its being in a great degree the universal language of Europe, but because it contains treasures of inestimable value, both in science and literature. Yet, it is to be regretted, that the means of acquiring this knowledge should not have hitherto been commensurate with its importance. T

French Grammars have generally been the productions of Frenchmen who may have been well acquainted with their own language, but who have been unable, either to feel or understand the difficulties against which Englishmen have to contend.

It is not, however, the object of the Author to enter into particular details respecting their defects; but merely to state that one great disadvantage attending most of them is, that the first exercises commence with long sentences, which require the application of most, or all, of the rules of Syntax. The plan of this work is, in some respects, similar to that of the Author's German Grammar, which has already obtained no inconsiderable share of public approbation. "The exercises increase in difficulty by regular and almost imperceptible gradations, commencing with the articles and nouns which are sufficiently difficult for beginners; then proceeding with the articles, nouns, and adjectives, and so on through the other parts of speech in regular succession." The writer has endeavoured to make the principal rules as short as the nature of the subject would admit; and has caused the observations and notes to be printed in a smaller type, so that it may be unnecessary for the learner to commit them to memory; but merely to read them, particularly, on first going through the Grammar.

Although the rules and arrangement differ materially from the works of preceding writers, yet it may be

requisite to state, that some of the examples and exercises have been extracted from a work of a similar nature ; and that the authorities are generally founded upon the grammars of *Du Marsais*, *L'Abbé Sicard*, *Grammaire des Grammaires*, *Silvestre de Sacy*, *Wailly*, *Restaut*, *Chambaud*, &c. The writer, however, trusts, that his Grammar (though it must have something in common with all) will be found to contain more originality than any similar production.

Throughout the work the author has been studious to avoid entering into crowded details, which would only tend to embarrass and perplex the student ; and though he has deviated from the beaten path of his predecessors, his object has not been to distinguish himself by innovations, but to simplify and facilitate the study of so universal a language. He therefore trusts that his labors may not only be acceptable, but useful to the public.

April 18, 1826.

101101

CONTENTS.

ALPHABET	<i>Page</i> 1
Pronunciation	2
Genders of Nouns	5
Points, Marks, &c.	8
Etymology	10
Articles	10
Plural of Nouns	11
Declension of Nouns	16
Examination on the Articles and Nouns	23
ADJECTIVES.—Plural of Adjectives	24
Gender of Adjectives	25
Comparison of Adjectives	28
Declension of Adjectives	30
Examination on the Adjectives	38
Numerals	39
PRONOUNS.—Personal Pronouns	44
Conjunctive Possessive Pronouns	45
Possessive Pronouns Relative	47
Demonstrative Pronouns	49
Relative Pronouns	52
Interrogative Pronouns	52
Indeterminate Pronouns	53
Examination on the Pronouns	57
VERBS.—Auxiliary Verbs	62
Regular Verbs	75
Terminations of Verbs	97
Irregular Verbs	98
Passive Verbs	112
Neuter Verbs	116

Reflective Verbs	.. .. .	Page	121
Reciprocal Verbs	.. .. .		129
Impersonal Verbs	.. .. .		130
ADVERBS.—Formation of Adverbs	.. .. .		144
Prepositions	.. .. .		156
Conjunctions	.. .. .		164
Syntax.			
Articles and Nouns	.. .. .		173
Adjectives	.. .. .		193
PRONOUNS.—Personal Pronouns	.. .. .		212
Possessive Pronouns	.. .. .		223
Demonstrative Pronouns	.. .. .		225
Relative Pronouns	.. .. .		226
The Pronouns <i>en</i> and <i>y</i>	.. .. .		230
Interrogative, &c. Pronouns	.. .. .		234
Indefinite Pronouns	.. .. .		237
The Pronoun <i>on</i>	.. .. .		241
VERBS	.. .. .		247
Simple Tenses. Indicative Mood	.. .. .		251
Compound Tenses Indicative	.. .. .		258
Subjunctive Mood	.. .. .		267
May, might, can, could, &c.	.. .. .		279
INFINITIVE MOOD	.. .. .		281
Infinitive with <i>de</i>	.. .. .		283
Infinitive with <i>à</i>	.. .. .		285
ON THE PRESENT, OF ACTIVE PARTICIPLE	.. .. .		291
Past Participles	.. .. .		292
On the placing of Adverbs	.. .. .		306
On the placing of Prepositions	.. .. .		310
Interjections	.. .. .		319
Idiomatical Expressions	.. .. .		320
Anecdotes, Bon-Mots, &c.	.. .. .		325
Recapitulatory Practice	.. .. .		327
French Abbreviations	.. .. .		332

Explanation of the Signs and Abbreviations.

THE asterisk (*), or (†) is used to direct the reader to some note, or observation.

The letters *M. F. m. f.* or *Mas. Fem.* denote the genders *Masculine* and *Feminine*.

The letters *N. G. D. A.* or *Nom. Gen. Dat. Acc.* denote the *Nominative, Genitive, Dative, and Accusative cases*; but the figures 1. 2. 3. are sometimes used before nouns instead of *N. G. D.* to denote the *states, or cases* (i. e. 1. stands for the *first state, or nominative*; 2. for the *second state, or genitive*; and 3. for *third state, or dative*).

Before verbs, 1. denotes the *first person*; 2. the *second*; and 3. the *third*.

Obs. is used for *observe, observation, or observations*.
Ex. for *example*. *Sing.* singular; and *Pl.* plural. *V.* or *v.* see. *P.* or *p.* page. *Gram.* Grammar, or Grammaire.
Dic. Fr. Ac. Dictionnaire de l'Académie Française.

Ind. Indicative Mood; *Subj.* Subjunctive; *Imper.* Imperative. *Pres.* Present Tense; *Imp.* Imperfect; *Pret.* Preterite; *Fut.* Future; *Cond.* Conditional. *Act.* Active Verb; *Neut.* Neuter; *Ref.* Reflective; *Def.* Defective.

A PRACTICAL

A PRACTICAL FRENCH GRAMMAR.

CHAPTER I.

THE letters of the Alphabet are the same in French as in English, with the exception of *w* which is wanting, and they are generally pronounced in a similar manner when in combination, except the vowels: we have, therefore, merely introduced them for the sake of uniformity.

§ I. THE ALPHABET.

Letters.	English mode of representing their sounds.	French mode of representing their sounds.	Pronounced in combination with other letters, or in words.	
			<i>Initial.</i>	<i>Final.</i>
A a . .	Ah . .	Ah . .	Ah . .	*
B b . .	bay . .	bé . .	be . .	eb
C c . .	say . .	cé . .	ce, or ke	ec
D d . .	day . .	dé . .	de . .	ed
E e . .	ay . .	e . .	e . .	*
F f . .	eff . .	effe . .	fe . .	ef
G g . .	jay . .	gé . .	ge . .	eg
H h . .	ash . .	ache . .	he . .	eh
I i . .	e . .	i . .	i . .	*
J j . .	je . .	ji . .	je . .	ej
K k . .	kah . .	ka . .	ke . .	ek
L l . .	elle . .	elle . .	le . .	el
M m . .	emme . .	emme . .	me . .	em
N n . .	enne . .	enne . .	ne . .	en
O o . .	o . .	o . .	o . .	*
P p . .	pay . .	pé . .	pe . .	ep
Q q . .	ku . .	qu . .	que . .	*
R r . .	erre . .	erre . .	re . .	er
S s . .	ess . .	esse . .	se, or ze	es
T t . .	tay . .	té . .	te . .	et
U u . .	u . .	u . .	u . .	*
V v . .	vay . .	vé . .	ve . .	ev
X x . .	eeks . .	ics, or ix.	xe . .	ex
Y y . .	egrec . .	igrec . .	i . .	*
Z z . .	zede . .	zéde . .	ze . .	ez

Although the author has endeavoured to mark, in different ways, the sounds of the letters, in the preceding page, yet he is of opinion that the pronunciation can only be acquired by hearing and by practice. However, the learner may be benefited by obtaining a knowledge, from a teacher, of the manner in which the following letters, syllables, and words are to be pronounced.

Pronunciation.

a, à, â, sounded as in, *chat*, cat; *ta*, thy; *à*, to, at; *âge*, age.

e, é, è, ê . . . *je*, I; *les*, the; *mesure*, measure; *donné*, given; *père*, father; *être*, to be.

i, î, y . . . *ici*, here; *petite*, little; *maître*, master; *yeux*, eyes.

o, ô . . . *trop*, too; *votre*, your; *vôtre*, yours; *hôte*, host.

u, û . . . *plus*, more; *rue*, street; *mûr*, ripe; *chûte*, fall.

ai, aï, aï, ay, au, août, } *plaire*, to please; *je faisais*, I did; *j'ai*, I have; *je chantai*, I sung; *haïr*, to hate; *naître*, to be born; *paysan*, peasant; *autre*, other; *auteur*, author; *Août*, August.

ea, ei, eu, eû, eai, eau, eoi, } *il mangea*, he ate; *neige*, snow; *veine*, vein; *eu*, had; *peu*, little; *heureux*, happy; *il eût*, he might have; *jeune*, young; *jeûne*, fast; *jeai*, a jay; *beau*, fine; *bourgeois*, citizen.

ia, io, ié, iè, io, iu, ieu, iou, } *diadème*, diadem; *viande*, meat; *il étudiait*, he studied; *fiacre*, a hackney coach; *impie*, impious; *amitié*, regard; *troisième*, third; *héritière*, heiress; *passion*, passion; *Confucius*, Confucius; *Monsieur*, Mr.; *chiourme*, a galley's crew.

oë, oi, ou, œu, oie, oua, oui,	{	<i>noël</i> , christmas; <i>Mademoiselle</i> , Miss; <i>poisson</i> , fish; <i>poison</i> , poison; <i>je louois*</i> , or <i>louais*</i> , I praised; <i>clou</i> , nail; <i>toujours</i> , always; <i>cœur</i> , heart; <i>œuf</i> , egg; <i>joie</i> , joy; <i>rouage</i> , wheelwork; <i>louange</i> , praise; <i>oui</i> , yes; <i>Louis</i> , Louis.
ua, ue, ué, uè, uê, ui, ueu,	{	<i>quantité</i> , quantity; <i>quatre</i> , four; <i>equateur</i> , equator; <i>leguer</i> , to bequeath; <i>écuelle</i> , porringer; <i>guérir</i> , to cure; <i>guère</i> , but little; <i>guêpe</i> , a wasp; <i>guide</i> , guide; <i>gueux</i> , beggarly.
am, an, aen, aim, ain, aon, aient,	{	<i>camp</i> , camp; <i>amiral</i> , admiral; <i>champ</i> , field; <i>an</i> , year; <i>changer</i> , to change; <i>Caen</i> ; <i>faim</i> , hunger; <i>pain</i> , bread; <i>fontaine</i> , fountain; <i>paon</i> , peacock: <i>ils chantaient</i> , they sung.
em, en, eap, eim, ein, eon, eup, eur, euse, eux,	{	<i>tems</i> , time; <i>empereur</i> , emperor: <i>solemnité</i> , solemnity; <i>vent</i> , wind; <i>Jean</i> , John; <i>mangeant</i> , eating; <i>Rheims</i> ; <i>déssein</i> , design; <i>pigeon</i> , pigeon; <i>nous mangeons</i> , we eat; <i>à jeun</i> , fasting; <i>bonheur</i> , happiness; <i>vertueuse</i> , f. <i>vertueux</i> , m. virtuous.
im, in, ian, ien, ienne, ion, ient,	{	<i>image</i> , image; <i>importun</i> , troublesome; <i>vin</i> , wine; <i>jardin</i> , garden; <i>jardinier</i> , gardener; <i>viande</i> , meat; <i>mien</i> , mine; <i>mienne</i> , mine; <i>lion</i> , lion; <i>patient</i> , patient; <i>ils parlaient</i> , they spoke.
om, on, oin,		<i>ombre</i> , shadow; <i>plomb</i> , lead; <i>nom</i> , name; <i>mon</i> , my; <i>mon ami</i> , my friend; <i>façon</i> , fashion; <i>foin</i> , hay; <i>coin</i> , corner.
um, un,		<i>parfum</i> , perfume; <i>humble</i> , humble; <i>chacun</i> , each; <i>chacune</i> , each.

* *Obs.* In the imperfect tense and conditional of verbs, *oi* is used by some writers instead of *ai*, and is pronounced in a similar manner.

The final consonants are not pronounced unless the ensuing word begin with a vowel; but they must always be pronounced as under:—

<i>Abraham</i> , Abraham	<i>gratis</i> , gratis
<i>air</i> , air	<i>Grec</i> , Greek
<i>arc</i> , bow	<i>hiver</i> , winter
<i>arsenal</i> , arsenal	<i>Jupiter</i> , Jupiter
<i>auteur</i> , author	<i>lac</i> , lake
<i>avec</i> , with	<i>mat</i> , mate
<i>avoir</i> , to have	<i>mer</i> , sea
<i>bis</i> , again	<i>ouest</i> , west
<i>brut</i> , rough	<i>Pallas</i> , Pallas
<i>calcul</i> , calculation	<i>poil</i> , hair
<i>cap</i> , cape	<i>retif</i> , restive
<i>car</i> , for	<i>sac</i> , sack
<i>Cérès</i> , Ceres	<i>sel</i> , salt
<i>chef</i> (<i>sing.</i>) chief	<i>seul</i> , alone
<i>cuiller</i> , spoon	<i>Sieur</i> , Sir
<i>David</i> , David	<i>sot</i> , fool
<i>dot</i> , dowry	<i>sud</i> , south
<i>echec</i> , check	<i>troc</i> , truck, barter
<i>est</i> , east	<i>Venus</i> , Venus
<i>exact</i> , exact	<i>vif</i> , alive, and most words
<i>fer</i> , iron	in <i>if</i>
<i>fier</i> , proud	<i>vis</i> , screw
<i>fil</i> , thread	<i>Zenith</i> , Zenith, &c.

The following is a list of those words which the English find most difficult to pronounce.

<i>aiguille</i> , needle	<i>chèvrefeuille</i> , honeysuckle
<i>angélique</i> , angelic	<i>chien</i> , dog
<i>anguille</i> , an eel	<i>cigogne</i> , stork
<i>Avignon</i> , Avignon	<i>citrouille</i> , pumpkin
<i>armée</i> , army	<i>croix</i> , cross
<i>Boulogne</i> , Boulogne	<i>cuvier</i> , a fish tub
<i>bouillir</i> , to boil	<i>deuil</i> , mourning
<i>Brétagne</i> , Britany	<i>egayant</i> , rejoicing
<i>brouillard</i> , fog	<i>epagneul</i> , spaniel
<i>campagne</i> , country	<i>Espagnol</i> , Spanish
<i>canaille</i> , rabble	<i>éternité</i> , eternity

<i>fruit</i> , fruit	<i>parapluie</i> , umbrella
<i>grenouille</i> , frog	<i>plusieurs</i> , many
<i>heure</i> , hour	<i>puisque</i> , since
<i>horreur</i> , horror	<i>quelquefois</i> , sometimes
<i>ignominie</i> , ignominy	<i>quinze</i> , fifteen
<i>ignorant</i> , ignorant	<i>quotient</i> , quotient
<i>joyeusement</i> , cheerfully	<i>reluire</i> , to shine
<i>joindre</i> , to join	<i>saigner</i> , to bleed
<i>lumière</i> , light	<i>singularité</i> , singularity
<i>lieue</i> , league	<i>soleil</i> , sun
<i>Monsieur</i> , Mr.	<i>soulier</i> , shoe
<i>murmure</i> , murmur	<i>tailleur</i> , tailor
<i>musicien</i> , musician	<i>témoignage</i> , witness
<i>Neuchatel</i> , Neufchatel	<i>ultérieur</i> , ulterior
<i>nettoyer</i> , to clean	<i>universalité</i> , universality
<i>observatoire</i> , observatory	<i>vaincu</i> , conquered
<i>oeillet</i> , pink	<i>vailleusement</i> , bravely
<i>oignon</i> , onion	<i>Versailles</i> , Versailles
<i>orgueil</i> , pride	<i>vigne</i> , vine
<i>oseille</i> , sorrel	<i>vouloir</i> , to be willing.

Although the preceding words are introduced in this part of the Grammar, yet it may be better for the pupil not to attempt to pronounce them till he has made some progress in the language, because their correct pronunciation requires a very delicate ear.

OBSERVATIONS RESPECTING THE

Genders of Nouns.

EVERY noun, in French, is either of the masculine or feminine gender, whether the being or thing that is named be *animate* or *inanimate*. The genders of *animate* or *living* beings may easily be distinguished; thus, all male animals are *masculine*, and all female animals are *feminine*; but the genders of inanimate things can only be learned by practice; for which purpose we have generally marked the genders of the nouns throughout the work.

1. The sexes are sometimes distinguished by different names ; as,

Masculine.

**l'homme*, the man
le dindon, the turkey-cock
le bouc, the he-goat
le lièvre, the hare
un garçon, a boy
un cerf, a stag
le jars, the gander

Feminine.

la femme, the woman
la dinde, the turkey-hen
la chèvre, the she-goat
la hase, the hare
une fille, a girl
une biche, a hind
l'oie, the goose, &c.

2. Some are distinguished by their terminations ; as,

Masculine.

le tigre, the tiger
le lion, the lion
le loup, the he-wolf
un lapin, a (buck) rabbit
un canard, a drake
un Juif, a Jew
un paysan, a countryman

un cousin, a (male) cousin
un ami, a (male) friend.
un acteur, an actor
un pécheur, a sinner
le défendeur, the defendant
le vengeur, the avenger

Feminine.

la tigresse, the tigress
la lionne, the lioness
la louve, the she-wolf
une lapine, a (doe) rabbit
une cane, a duck
une Juive, a Jewess
une paysanne, a country-
 woman
une cousine, a (female) cousin
une amie, a (female) friend
une actrice, an actress
une pécheresse, a sinner
la défenderesse, the defendant
la vengeresse, the avenger, &c.

3. Sometimes the same word (though masculine or feminine) is used to designate both sexes ; as, *une baleine*, a whale ; *un requin*, a shark ; *une corneille*, a crow or rook ; *un crapaud*, a toad ; *une grenouille*, a frog, &c.

4. *Majesté*, Majesty ; and *sentinelle*, sentinel, are feminine.

* The articles must be of the same gender as the nouns to which they refer ; but when a noun begins with a vowel or *h* mute, then *l'* is put instead of *le* or *la*.

5. *Amour*, love; *délice*, delight; and *orgue*, organ, are masculine in the singular, and feminine in the plural.

6. *Automne*, autumn, is masculine when the adjective precedes; as, un *bel* automne, a *fine* autumn; but it is feminine when the adjective follows; as, *une* automne *froide et pluvieuse*, a cold and rainy autumn.

7. *Personne*, substantive, is feminine; and *personne*, pronoun, is masculine.

8. The following nouns designate both sexes; *auteur*, author or authoress; *docteur*, doctor or doctress; *écrivain*, writer; *orateur*, orator; *philosophe*, philosopher; *poète*, poet or poetess; *témoin*, witness, &c.—[Vide. *Grammaire des Grammaires*, p. 93.]

The following nouns are sometimes masculine and sometimes feminine, depending generally upon the manner in which they are used; but, in some instances, they appear to be nouns of similar orthography and different origin.

Masculine.

un *aigle*, an eagle

un *ange*, an angel

le *carpe*, the wrist

un *coche*, a caravan

un *couple*, a married couple

un *enfant* (a boy), a child

un *enseigne* (an officer), an
ensign

un *exemple*, an example

le *fin*, the main point

un *foret*, a gimlet

un *garde*, a warden or keeper

le *greffe* (an office), the Rolls

le *guide*, the conductor

un *livre*, a book

un *manche*, a handle

Feminine.

aigle Romaine, Roman
standard

une ange, an angel-fish, or a
scate

une carpe (a fish), a carp

une coche, a notch or a sow

une couple, a couple (as
rabbits, &c.)

une enfant (a girl), a child

une enseigne, a sign

une exemple (a written model),
a copy

la fin, the end

une forêt, a forest

une garde, a guard

la greffe (a branch), the graft

les guides, the reins

une livre (a weight), a pound

une manche (of a coat), a
sleeve

Masculine.

un manœuvre, a labourer
un mémoire, a bill
un mode, a mood
un moule, a model
un mousse, a cabin boy
un office, an office
un page (an officer), a page
un pique (in cards), a spade
un poêle, a stove
un poste (employment), a post
le pourpre, the scarlet fever
un remise, a glass-coach
un somme, a nap or sleep

un souris, a smile
un tour, a turn
un triomphe, a triumph

un trompette, a trumpeter
un vase, a vessel
un voile, a veil

Feminine.

la manœuvre, the managing
une mémoire, a memory
une mode, a fashion
une moule (a fish), a muscle
de la mousse, moss
une office, a pantry
une page (of a book), a page
une pique (in arms), a pike
une poêle, a frying-pan
la poste, the post
la pourpre (a colour), purple
une remise, a coach-house
la somme, the sum or total amount
une souris, a mouse
une tour, a tower
une triomphe (in cards), a trump
une trompette, a trumpet
la vase, the mud
une voile (of a ship), a sail

Points, Marks, &c.

English Names.

1. The comma (,)
2. The semicolon (;)
3. The colon (:)
4. The period (.)
5. The mark of interrogation (?)
6. The mark of admiration (!)
7. The quotation mark (")
8. The parenthesis ()

French Names.

la virgule
le point et la virgule
les deux points
le point
le point interrogatif
le point exclamatif
le guillemet
la parenthese

Note. The above points or marks are the same in both languages; but the following seldom occur in English.

9. The hyphen (-) *le trait d'union.*

This mark is used for connecting compound words ; as, *un arc-en-ciel*, a rainbow ; it is also put between a verb and a pronoun when a question is asked ; as, *parlez-vous français?* do you speak French? *a-t-il?* has he? and after the imperative when it is followed by the pronouns, *moi, toi, nous, vous, le, la, lui, y* and *en* ; as, *donnez-moi*, give me ; *allez-y*, go to it, or there.

10. The cedilla (,) *la cédilla.*

This mark is put under *c* (thus *ç*) when it is sounded like *s* before *a, o, and u* ; as, *le façade*, the front ; *le garçon*, the boy ; *reçu*, received.

11. The apostrophe or mark of elision (') *l'apostrophe.*

This mark is used when a vowel is omitted, ex. *l'*, the, is used before a vowel or *h* mute, instead of *le* or *la*, the ; as, *l'étoile*, the star ; *l'histoire*, the history : also *qu'* is used instead of *que* ; as, *qu'il ait*, that he may have, and in many other instances which may be learned by practice.

12. The dialysis or diæresis (¨) *le tréma.*

This mark is sometimes put over *e, i, or u* (thus *ë, î, ü*), to show that it is to be separated in pronunciation from the vowel which precedes, thus making two distinct syllables ; as, *poëte*, poet ; *haïr*, to hate.

13. The acute accent (') *l'accent aigu.*

The acute accent (which marks a sharp sound) is never used but over *é* ; as, *bonté*, goodness ; *donné*, given.

14. The grave accent (`) *l'accent grave.*

This accent (denoting an open sound) is placed over the vowels *a, e, u* (thus *à, è, ù*) ; as, *mère*, mother ; *là*, there ; *où*, where.

15. The circumflex accent (^) *l'accent circonflexe.*

The vowels, over which this accent is placed, are always pronounced long ; as, *vôtre*, yours ; *maître*, master : it was probably used originally instead of a *caret*, to show that a

letter was omitted ; Ex. *même*, same, was originally spelled *mesme*.

Obs. These marks are frequently of great importance, and should be particularly attended to : the grave accent is put over *prepositions* and *adverbs* to distinguish them from *verbs*, *conjunctions*, *articles*, or *pronouns* ; as, *a* (*verb*) is Englished by *has* ; but *à* (*prep.*) is Englished by *to*, *at*, &c. *ou*, or (*conj.*) *or*, where, in which (*adv.*) ; *la*, the (*art.*) *la*, her or it (*pron.*) *là*, there (*adv.*) ; *des*, of the or some (*art.*) *dès que*, as soon as (*adv.*) &c.

Etymology.

In French, as in English, there are nine parts of speech, five of which are declinable, and four indeclinable.

Declinable.

1. *l'Article*, the article
2. *le Nom*, the noun
3. *l'Adjective*, the adjective
4. *le Pronom*, the pronoun
5. *le Verbe*, the verb

Indeclinable.

6. *l'Adverbe*, the adverb
7. *la Préposition*, the preposition
8. *la Conjonction*, the conjunction
9. *l'Interjection*, the interjection

CHAPTER I.

ARTICLES.

There are three articles, viz. *le*, the, definite ; *un*, a, indefinite ; and *du*, some, partitive.

They are declined in three states or cases, viz. nominative, genitive, and dative ; as follows. The definite *le*, *the* ; thus,

SINGULAR.

	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Common.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. or 1st state .	<i>le</i>	<i>la</i>	<i>l'</i> *	<i>les</i> , the
Gen. or 2nd . . .	<i>du</i>	<i>de la</i>	<i>de l'</i>	<i>des</i> , of the
Dat. or 3rd . . .	<i>au</i>	<i>à la</i>	<i>à l'</i>	<i>aux</i> , to the

* *Obs.* 1. The apostrophe is used instead of *e* before a masculine, and instead of *a* before a feminine noun.

2. That *du* is a contraction of *de le* ; *des* of *de les* ; *au* of *à le* ; and *aux* of *à les*. *De le*, *de les*, *à le*, *à les*, must never be used before a noun.

3. *Du*, *de la*, &c. are sometimes Englished by *from the* ; *d'un* and *d'une* by *from a* ; *de* and *d'* by *from some*.

The indefinite article *un*, a, is thus declined.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
1. <i>un</i>	<i>une</i> , a
2. <i>d'un</i>	<i>d'une</i> , of a
3. <i>à un</i>	<i>à une</i> , to a.

The partitive article *du*, some, is thus declined.

<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Common.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>*du</i> , some	<i>*de la</i> , some	<i>de l'</i> , some	<i>*des</i> , some
2. <i>de</i> , of some	<i>de</i> , of some	<i>d'</i> , of some	<i>de</i> , of some
3. <i>à du</i> , to some	<i>à de la</i> , to some	<i>à de l'</i> , to some	<i>à des</i> , to some

Plural of Nouns.

CHAPTER II.

§ 5. THE plural of nouns is generally formed by adding *s* to the singular ; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>le père</i> , m.† the father	<i>les pères</i> , the fathers
<i>le livre</i> , m. the book	<i>les livres</i> , the books
<i>la mère</i> , f.† the mother	<i>les mères</i> , the mothers
<i>la haie</i> , f. the hedge	<i>les haies</i> , the hedges
<i>la ville</i> , f. the town	<i>les villes</i> , the towns
<i>l'homme</i> , m. the man	<i>les hommes</i> , the men
<i>l'arbre</i> , m. the tree	<i>les arbres</i> , the trees
<i>l'étoile</i> , f. the star	<i>les étoiles</i> , the stars

So form the following examples, and observe that a masculine singular article must be put before a masculine singular noun, a feminine singular before a feminine singular, a plural before a plural, and *l'* before a noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute.

* *Obs.* *Du*, *de la*, &c. are used to express a *part* of a whole, and *des* is used to express a *part* of a quantity of things. Ex. *donnez-moi du pain*, give me some bread ; *donnez-moi de la viande*, give me some meat ; *donnez-moi des pommes*, give me some apples.

† *Note.* m. stands for masculine, and f. for feminine

Roi, m. king; *reine*, f. queen; *garçon*, m. boy; *maison*, f. house; *champ*, m. field; *main*, f. hand; *loi*, f. law; *hiver* m. (*h* mute), winter; *église*, f. church; *histoire*, f. (*h* mute), history; *cause*, f. cause; *prince*, m. prince; *cordon*, m. string; *larme*, f. tear; *jardin*, m. garden; *huitre*, f. (*h* mute), oyster; *langue*, f. language; *harpe*, f. (*h* aspirate), harp; *lettre*, f. letter; *oncle*, m. uncle; *vertu*, f. virtue; *habit*, m. (*h* mute), coat; *ami*, m. (*male*) friend; *amie*, f. (*female*) friend; *cousin*, m. (*male*) cousin; *cousine*, f. (*female*) cousin; *étranger*, m. foreigner; *étrangère*, f. foreigner; *voisin*, m. neighbour; *voisine*, f. neighbour.

The general rule admits of the following exceptions.

1 Those nouns which end in *s*, *x*, and *z*, in the singular, remain the same in the plural; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>le fils</i> , m. the son	<i>les fils</i> , the sons
<i>l'os</i> , m. the bone	<i>les os</i> , the bones
<i>la croix</i> , f. the cross	<i>les croix</i> , the crosses

So; *palais*, m. palace; *mois*, m. month; *brébis*, f. sheep; *prix*, m. price; *noix*, f. nut; *lynx*, m. lynx; *voix*, f. voice; *souris*, f. mouse; *nez*, m. nose; *héros*, m. (*h* aspirate), hero.

2. Most nouns in *au*, *eau*, *eu*, *œu*, *ieu*, and *ou*,* form their plural by adding *x*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>le feu</i> , m. the fire	<i>les feux</i> , the fires
<i>le Dieu</i> , m. the God	<i>les Dieux</i> , the Gods
<i>l'oiseau</i> , m. the bird	<i>les oiseaux</i> , the birds
<i>l'eau</i> , f. the water	<i>les eaux</i> , the waters

So; *couteau* m. knife; *chapeau*, m. hat; *berceau*, m. cradle; *tableau*, m. picture; *genou*, m. knee; *caillou*, m. flint; *neveu*, m. nephew; *veau*, m. calf; *vœu*, m. vow; *chou*, m. cabbage; *lieu*, m. place; *vaisseau*, m. vessel; *manteau*, m. cloak; *hameau*, m. (*h* aspirate), hamlet; *pieu*, m. stake; *bijou*, m. jewel; *chateau*, m. castle; *jeu*, m. game; *joyau*, m. jewel; *peau*, f. skin.

* *Obs.* Some nouns in *ou* follow the general rule; as, *le clou*, the nail; *le trou*, the hole; *le verrou*, the bolt; *le hibou*, the owl; *le fou*, the fool; *le filou*, the sharper; *le matou*, the male cat; *le licou*, the halter. Plural, *les clous*, the nails; *les trous*, &c. also *le bleu*, the blue, takes *s* in the plural.

3. Most nouns, in *al* and *ail*, form their plural by changing *l*, or *il* into *ux*; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>le cristal</i> , m. the crystal	<i>les cristaux</i> , the crystals
<i>l'animal</i> , m. the animal	<i>les animaux</i> , the animals
<i>le corail</i> , m. the coral	<i>les coraux</i> , the corals

So; *mal*, m. evil; *général*, m. general; *travail*, m. labor or work; *soupirail*, m. air-hole; *cheval*, m. horse; *bail*, m. lease; *arsenal*, m. arsenal; *maréchal*, m. marshal; *cardinal*, m. cardinal; *émail*, m. enamel.

But the following nouns, in *al* and *ail*, take *s* in the plural. *Le carnaval*, the carnival; *le régal*, the treat; *le bal*, the ball; *le bocal*, the jug; *le cal*, the hard skin; *Juvenal*, Juvenal, and other proper names in *al*; *le mail*, the mallet, *l'éventail*, the fan; *le gouvernail*, the rudder; *le camail*, the capuchin; *l'attirail*, the train; *le étrail*, the seraglio; *le portail*, the portal; *le détail*, the detail. Plural, *les carnavals*, the carnivals; *les régals*; *les bals*, &c.

4. Nouns, in *nt*, form their plural by changing the *t* into *s*; but those of one syllable, in *nt*, follow the general rule; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>le moment</i> , m. the moment	<i>les momens</i> ,* the moments
<i>l'enfant</i> , m. the child	<i>les enfans</i> , the children
<i>le pont</i> , m. the bridge	<i>les ponts</i> , the bridges
<i>la dent</i> , f. the tooth	<i>les dents</i> , the teeth

So; *serpent*, m. serpent; *accent*, m. accent; *sentiment*, m. sentiment; *événement*, m. event; *mouvement*, m. movement; *parent*, m. relation; *gant*, m. glove; *vent*, m. wind; *accident*, m. accident; *cure-dent*, m. tooth-picker; *lieutenant*, m. lieutenant.

* *Obs.* This mode of spelling is adopted by the French Academy, as well as by most modern writers, *vide* the Dictionary of the French Academy, *Revue Encyclopédique*, &c. But some writers prefer retaining the *t*. — (*Vide* the French Grammars of Girard, De Wailly, Restaut, &c.)

5. Nouns, with the indefinite article in the singular and partitive article, in the plural; as,

Singular.	Plural.
<i>un verre</i> , m. a glass	<i>des verres</i> , glasses
<i>une plume</i> , f. a pen	<i>des plumes</i> , pens or <i>some pens</i>
<i>un écolier</i> , m. a scholar	<i>des écoliers</i> , scholars
<i>*une écolière</i> , f. a scholar	<i>des écolières</i> , scholars
<i>un chapeau</i> , m. a hat	<i>des chapeaux</i> , hats
<i>une voix</i> , f. a voice	<i>des voix</i> , voices
<i>un savant</i> , m. a learned man	<i>des savans</i> , learned men
<i>une savante</i> , f. a learned woman	<i>des savantes</i> , learned women

So; *cuiller*, f. a spoon; *plat*, m. dish; *assiette*, f. plate; *couteau*, m. knife; *fourchette*, f. fork; *jardin*, m. garden; *cuisine*, f. kitchen; *cuisinier*, m. male cook; *cuisinière*, f. female cook; *chambre*, f. room; *gilet*, m. waistcoat; *dent*, f. tooth; *ange*, m. angel; *fille*, f. daughter; *parent*, m. relation; *enfant*, m. or f. child; *veau*, m. calf.

The following nouns are irregularly formed.

Singular.	Plural.
<i>l'œil</i> , † m. the eye	<i>les yeux</i> , the eyes
<i>le ciel</i> , † m. the heaven	<i>les cieux</i> , the heavens
<i>le bétail</i> , m. the cattle	<i>des bestiaux</i> , cattle
<i>l'aïeul</i> , m. the ancestor	<i>les aïeux</i> , the ancestors
<i>ail</i> , m. garlic	<i>aux</i> or <i>aulx</i> , garlic.

* *Obs.* 1. When the feminine of an indefinite article or adjective is used, the final letter *e* is not taken away before a vowel; as, *une église*, a church; *de bonne eau*, good water.

2. The names of metals have no plural when taken in a general or collective sense; as, *de l'or*, gold; *de l'argent*, silver; *du fer*, iron; *du plomb*, lead; *du cuivre*, copper; but some have a plural when taken in a distributive sense, that is, when they denote different kinds of the same species of things; or, when used in work; then we may say *des fers*, *des plombs*, &c.—*Vide* De Wailly, p. 31.

3. The names of the virtues and vices have no plural; as, *la foi*, the faith; *la prudence*, prudence, &c.—*Vide* Restaut, p. 45.

4. The following nouns have no singular: *tenèbres*, f. darkness; *pleurs*, m. tears; *matines*, f. morning prayers; *ciseaux*, m. scissors; *nonces*, f. nonces; *vêpres*, f. vespers; *ancêtres*, m. ancestors; *gens*, m. or f. people, &c.

† 5. *Ciel* and *œil* sometimes follow the general rule; as, *des ciels de lit*, testers of a bed; *les ciels de tableaux*, the skies of pictures; *des œils de bœuf* (a term used in architecture), ovals.

ON THE PLURAL OF COMPOUND NOUNS.

When a word is compounded of two nouns, without a preposition between them, or of a noun and an adjective, both take the mark of the plural; as,

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>un arc-boutant</i> , m. a buttress	<i>des arcs-boutans</i> , buttresses
<i>un bout-rimé</i> , m. a rhyme	<i>des bouts-rimés</i> , rhymes
<i>un havre-sac</i> , m. a soldier's knapsack	<i>des havres-sacs</i> , soldiers' knapsacks

So; *un chêne-vert*, m. an evergreen-oak; *un gentil-homme*, m. a nobleman; *un bel-esprit*, m. a wit; *un petit-maitre*, m. a fop; *un chat-huant*, m. a screech-owl; *un chou-fleur*, m. a cauliflower.

When a word is compounded of two nouns, with a preposition between them, the first only takes the mark of the plural; as,

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>un jet-d'eau</i> , m. a water spout	<i>des jets-d'eau</i> , water spouts
<i>un chef-d'œuvre</i> , m. a master piece	<i>des chefs-d'œuvre</i> , master pieces

So; *un arc-en-ciel*, m. a rainbow; *un coq-à-l'âne*, m. an idle story; *un croc-en-jambe*, m. a trip; *un maître-d'hotel*, m. a steward.

When a noun is compounded of a verb, preposition, or adverb, the noun only changes for the plural; as,

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>un garde-manger</i> , m. a larder	<i>des garde-mangers</i> , larders
<i>un avant-coureur</i> , m. a fore-runner, or harbinger	<i>des avant-coureurs</i> , fore-runners, or harbingers
<i>un garde*-fou</i> , m. a railing on bridges	<i>des garde-fous</i> , railings on bridges

* *Obs.* When *garde* is used as a noun, it takes the mark of the plural; as, *les gardes-françaises*,* the French guards; *les gardes-suisse*, f. the Swiss guards.

* *Note.* Adjectives derived from the names of nations begin with a small letter.—(*V. Gram. des Grammaires*, vol. ii, p. 240.)

So; *une avant-courrière*, f. a forerunner; *un entre-sol*, m. a suite of rooms between the ground and first floor; *un entre-sourcil*, m. a space between the eyebrows; *un garde-feu*, m. a high fender; *un abat-vent*, m. a penthouse of a steeple; *un abat-jour*, m. a sky-light.

Proper names, when used as common, take the mark of the plural; as, *les Cicerons*,* *les Démosthènes*,* *les Homères*, et *les Virgiles*, *seront toujours rares*, Ciceros, Demosthenes, Homers, and Virgils, will always be rare.—(Vide Du Marsais' Gram. p. 3, vol. ii., and Wailly, p. 33.)

* *Note.* *Poètes comme*, poets like; or, *orateurs comme*, orators like, is understood.

When a noun is compounded with the pronoun *mon* or *ma*, my, both change for the plural; as,

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Monsieur</i> , Mr., Master, or Sir	<i>Messieurs</i> , gentlemen
<i>Madame</i> , Madam, or Mrs.	<i>Mesdames</i> , ladies
<i>Monseigneur</i> , my Lord	<i>Messeigneurs</i> , my Lords
<i>Mademoiselle</i> , Miss	<i>Mesdemoiselles</i> , Misses

Declension of Nouns.

THE Declensions of Nouns make three distinct states or cases, that is, nominative, genitive, and dative.

1. Masculine nouns with the definite article are thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.
*N. <i>Le garçon</i> , the boy	<i>Les garçons</i> , the boys
G. <i>du garçon</i> , of the boy	<i>des garçons</i> , of the boys
D. <i>au garçon</i> , to the boy	<i>aux garçons</i> , to the boys

So; decline the masculine nouns; *livre*, book; *nez*, nose; *fil*, son; *cheval*, horse; *chapeau*, hat.

* *Obs.* Some Grammarians make six cases; but since there are no changes in the terminations of French nouns, we think they would only tend to perplex the student.

2. Feminine nouns with the definite article are thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>La plume</i> , the pen	<i>Les plumes</i> , the pens
G. <i>de la plume</i> , of the pen	<i>des plumes</i> , of the pens
D. <i>à la plume</i> , to the pen	<i>aux plumes</i> , to the pens

So; decline the feminine nouns; *table*, table; *mère*, mother; *mer*, sea; *noix*, walnut.

3. Nouns of either gender, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, are declined with the definite article; thus,

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>L'enfant</i> , the child	<i>Les enfans</i> , the children
G. <i>de l'enfant</i> , of the child	<i>des enfans</i> , of the children
D. <i>à l'enfant</i> , to the child	<i>aux enfans</i> , to the children

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>L'habit</i> , the coat	<i>Les habits</i> , the coats
G. <i>de l'habit</i> , of the coat	<i>des habits</i> , of the coats
D. <i>à l'habit</i> , to the coat	<i>aux habits</i> , to the coats

So; decline *ami*, m. friend; *amie*, f. friend; *animal*, m. animal; *homme*, m. man; *héritière*, f. heiress.

4. Nouns of either gender, with the indefinite article in the singular and partitive article in the plural, are thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>Un vaisseau</i> , a vessel	<i>Des vaisseaux</i> , vessels, or some vessels
G. <i>d'un vaisseau</i> , of a vessel	<i>de vaisseaux</i> , of or from vessels
D. <i>à un vaisseau</i> , to a vessel	<i>à des vaisseaux</i> , to some vessels

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>Une mère</i> , a mother	<i>Des mères</i> , mothers
G. <i>d'une mère</i> , of a mother	<i>de mères</i> , of or from mothers
D. <i>à une mère</i> , to a mother	<i>à des mères</i> , to mothers

So; *miroir*, m. looking-glass; *tapis*, m. carpet; *fille*, f. daughter; *loi*, f. law; *noix*, f. walnut; *femme*, f. woman.

5. Nouns of either gender, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, are thus declined with the indefinite and partitive articles ; which only differ from the preceding in the genitive plural.

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>Un écolier</i> , a scholar	<i>Des écoliers</i> , scholars
G. <i>d'un écolier</i> , of a scholar	<i>d'écoliers</i> , of scholars
D. <i>à un écolier</i> , to a scholar	<i>à des écoliers</i> , to scholars

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. <i>Une histoire</i> , an history	<i>Des histoires</i> , histories
G. <i>d'une histoire</i> , of an history	<i>d'histoires</i> , of histories
D. <i>à une histoire</i> , to an history	<i>à des histoires</i> , to histories

So; *orphelin*, m. male orphan; *orpheline*, f. female orphan; *enfant*, m. child; *animal*, m. animal; *hôtesse*, f. hostess; *heure*, f. hour.

6. Nouns of either gender with the partitive article in the singular, are thus declined :

*Masculine.**Feminine.*

N. <i>Du*cuivre</i> , copper or some copper	<i>De la viande</i> , meat or some meat
G. <i>de cuivre</i> , of some copper	<i>de viande</i> , of some meat
D. <i>à du cuivre</i> , to some copper	<i>à de la viande</i> , to some meat

So; *miel*, m. honey; **salade*, f. salad; *sel*, m. salt; *mustarde*, f. mustard; *poivre*, m. pepper; *cire*, f. wax; *pain*, m. bread.

7. Nouns of either gender, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, are thus declined with the partitive article.

*Masculine.**Feminine.*

N. <i>De l'airain</i> , brass or some brass	<i>De l'humanité</i> , humanity
G. <i>d'airain</i> , of some brass	<i>d'humanité</i> , of humanity
D. <i>à de l'airain</i> , to some brass	<i>à de l'humanité</i> , to humanity

* *Ob.* When different kinds of the same species of things are spoken of, we can use the partitive article *des*; as, *des cuivres*, coppers; *des sels*, salts; *des sels*, salts, &c.

So; *honneur*, m. honor; *encre*, f. ink; *argent*, m. money, or silver; *huile*, f. oil; *or*, m. gold; *eau*, f. water; *étain*, m. tin or pewter.

RECAPITULATORY PRACTICE ON THE ARTICLES AND
NOUNS.

The books, <i>livre</i> , m.	Some women,
Of the prince, <i>prince</i> , m.	Of women,
To the trees, <i>arbre</i> , m.	To a school, <i>école</i> , f.
The string, <i>cordon</i> , m.	Of a sword, <i>épée</i> , f.
Of the strings,	Of an end, <i>fin</i> , f.
The voice, <i>voix</i> , f.	To the stars, <i>étoile</i> , f.
To the voices,	To (some) stars,
Of the windows, <i>fenêtre</i> , f.	To a pen-knife, <i>canif</i> , m.
Cheese, <i>fromage</i> , m.	Of a plate, <i>assiette</i> , f.
To the beef, <i>bœuf</i> , m.	Some plates,
Peas, <i>pois</i> , m.	To a dish, <i>plat</i> , m.
Some mutton, <i>mouton</i> , m.	Of dishes,
Of veal, <i>veau</i> , m.	Some tea, <i>thé</i> , m.
To pork, <i>porc</i> , m.	Coffee, <i>café</i> , m.
Some poultry, <i>volaille</i> , f.	To some coffee,
Rabbits, <i>lapin</i> , m. or <i>lapine</i> , f.	Some sugar, <i>sucre</i> , m.
Of the ends, <i>fin</i> , f.	Of sugar,
To the towns, <i>ville</i> , f.	Milk, <i>lait</i> , m.
Of the teeth, <i>dent</i> , f.	Cream, <i>crème</i> , f.
To the eye, <i>œil</i> , m.	Of some lead, <i>plomb</i> , m.
To the eyes,	To some iron, <i>fer</i> , m.
Of an eye,	Steel, <i>acier</i> , m.
To a church, <i>église</i> , f.	Some water, <i>eau</i> , f.
From a church,	The waters,
To houses, <i>maison</i> , f.	Of the waters,
From houses,	Cabbages, <i>chou</i> , m.
Nails (of iron), <i>clou</i> , m.	Cauliflowers, <i>chou-fleur</i> , m.
Of nails,	Potatoes, <i>pomme de terre</i> , f.
Nails (of animals), <i>ongle</i> , m.	Some meat, <i>viande</i> , f.
Of the nails,	Mustard, <i>moutarde</i> , f.
From a book, <i>livre</i> , m.	Slates, <i>ardoise</i> , f.
A woman, <i>femme</i> , f.	To some pens, <i>plume</i> , f.

20 PRACTICE ON THE ARTICLES AND NOUNS.

Children, <i>enfant</i> , m.	Some money, <i>argent</i> , m.
The children,	To some silver, <i>argent</i> , m.
Of candles, <i>chandelle</i> , f.	Of silver,
Of the candles,	Some ink, <i>encre</i> , f.
A candlestick, <i>chandelier</i> , m.	Of ink,
Of candlesticks,	Some change, <i>monnaie</i> , f.
Some beer, <i>bière</i> , f.	Of some change,
Of wine, <i>vin</i> , m.	The desk, <i>pupitre</i> , m.
Of the wine,	Some desks,
Some paper, <i>papier</i> , m.	Of the desks,
Of some paper,	Learned men, <i>savant</i> , m.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISES, ON THE ARTICLES AND NOUNS, TO BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

FIRST LESSON.

Le bras, l'œil, la bouche, l'oreille, les rivières, des ruisseaux, du bras, un homme, une heure, de l'oreille, au feu, à l'œil, d'une maison, à la maison, à un homme, de l'eau, de la viande, de salade, à du miel, à une fontaine, d'un pays, de la ville, des armées, de la matière, d'un roi, aux fontaines, du charbon, du fromage, à la bouche, d'une reine, de l'or, de l'argent, du fer, du cuivre, du pain, du beurre, de l'étain, du plomb, du vif-argent, aux oiseaux, des louanges, une bouteille de vin, un gigot de mouton, une tête de veau.

* <i>bras</i> , m. arm	<i>reine</i> , f. queen
<i>bouche</i> , f. mouth	<i>beurre</i> , m. butter
<i>oreille</i> , f. ear	<i>plomb</i> , m. lead
<i>ruisseau</i> , m. rivulet or brook	<i>vif argent</i> , m. quicksilver
<i>pays</i> , m. country	<i>louange</i> , f. praise
<i>charbon</i> , m. coal	<i>gigot</i> , m. leg
<i>fromage</i> , m. cheese	<i>tête</i> , f. head

* *Obs.* 1. Those words that have occurred in a previous part of the Grammar are not generally given under the exercises.

2. *Du, de la, de l', and des*, are sometimes Englished by *of the*, and sometimes by *some*, depending on the nature of the sentences in which they are employed; thus, *de la viande*, may be Englished by *some meat* or *of the meat*.

SECOND LESSON.

Le soleil et la lune éclairent la terre. Je vis hier le roi, la reine et les princes. Le père, la mère, les frères, les sœurs, les oncles, les tantes, et plusieurs autres parens, sont allés en France. Apportez-moi une bouteille de vin. Le gazouillement des oiseaux, le murmure des ruisseaux, la fraîcheur des bois, le parfum des fleurs et la douce odeur des plantes contribuent beaucoup au plaisir de l'esprit et à la santé du corps. Le vin de Bourgogne se vend sur le pied de soixante sous* la bouteille. La Provence et le Languedoc produisent des oranges, des citrons, des figues, des olives, des amandes, des châtaignes, des pêches, des abricots, et des raisins. La vie est un mélange de biens et de maux. Donnez-moi du pain et du beurre. Le bonheur des méchans n'est que passager.

soleil, sun ; *et*, and
 lune, moon
 éclairent, enlighten
 terre, earth
 je vis hier, I saw yesterday
 tante, f. aunt
 plusieurs, several
 autres, other
 parens, relations
 sont allés, are gone
 en France, to France
 apportez-moi, bring me
 bouteille, f. bottle
 de, of ; vin, wine
 gazouillement, warbling
 murmure, murmuring
 ruisseaux, brooks
 fraîcheur, coolness
 bois, woods
 parfum, fragrance
 fleurs, flowers ; douce, sweet
 contribuent, contribute

beaucoup, greatly
 esprit, mind ; santé, health
 corps, body
 Bourgogne, Burgundy
 se vend, is sold
 sur le pied, at the rate
 soixante sous (sixty half-pence), thirty-pence
 la, a ; produisent, produce
 citron, m. lemon
 amande, f. almond
 châtaigne, f. chestnut
 pêche, f. peach
 abricot, m. apricot
 raisins, m. grapes
 est, is ; mélange, mixture
 biens, good ; maux, evil
 donnez-moi, give me
 bonheur, happiness
 méchans, wicked
 n'est que, is but
 passager, transitory.

* Obs. *Sous* is mostly called a *penny* by the English, but its real value is not more than the value of an English *half-penny*.

THIRD LESSON.

La France est séparée de l'Italie par les Alpes, et de l'Espagne par les Pyrénées. La Tamise est une belle rivière. La mer Méditerranée est entre l'Europe, l'Asie, et l'Afrique. La Suisse est un pays montagneux. Le Tage se jette dans l'Océan Atlantique. Les Antilles sont dans les Indes Occidentales. Les Moluques sont dans l'Océan Indien. L'Europe est borné au nord par la mer du nord et l'Océan Atlantique; à l'Orient, par le Don ou Duna, le détroit de Constantinople et l'Archipel; au midi par la mer Méditerranée, et à l'Occident par l'Océan Atlantique.

<i>est séparée</i> , is separated	<i>Océan Atlantique</i> , Atlantic
<i>par</i> , by; <i>de l'</i> , from (<i>the</i>)	Ocean
<i>Alpes</i> , Alps; <i>et</i> , and	<i>Antilles</i> , Antillas
<i>Espagne</i> , Spain	<i>sont</i> , are; <i>dans</i> , in
<i>Pyrénées</i> , Pyrenees	<i>Indes Occidentales</i> , West-
<i>Tamise</i> , Thames	Indies
<i>belle</i> , fine; <i>mer</i> , sea	<i>Moluques</i> , Moluccas
<i>Méditerranée</i> , Mediterranean	<i>Indien</i> , Indian
<i>entre</i> , between	<i>borné</i> , bounded
<i>Asie</i> , Asia	<i>au</i> , on the; <i>nord</i> , north
<i>Afrique</i> , Africa	<i>à l'Orient</i> , on the east
<i>Suisse</i> , Switzerland	<i>détroit de</i> , straits of
<i>montagneux</i> , mountainous	<i>Archipel</i> , Archipelago
<i>Tage</i> , Tagus	<i>au midi</i> , on the south
<i>se jette dans</i> , falls into	<i>à l'Occident</i> , on the west.

FOURTH LESSON.

Saturne était le Dieu du tems, et Cybèle la Déesse de la terre. Jupiter fils de Saturne et d'Ops, était le Dieu du ciel, Neptune le Dieu de la mer, Pluton le Dieu des enfers et Vulcain celui du feu. Mercure était le messager des Dieux, et le Dieu de l'éloquence, des marchands et des voleurs. Apollon était le Dieu des beaux-arts, Mars le Dieu de la guerre, et Bacchus celui du vin. Diane était la Déesse de la chasse, Cérès la Déesse de l'agriculture, Flore la Déesse des fleurs, Venus la Déesse de l'amour, et Minerve celle de la sagesse, des arts et des sciences.

EXAMINATION ON THE ARTICLES AND NOUNS. 23

<i>était</i> , was; <i>du tems</i> , of time	<i>Apollon</i> , Apollo
<i>Déesse</i> , Goddess	<i>beaux-arts</i> , fine arts
<i>Pluton</i> , Pluto	<i>guerre</i> , war
<i>enfers</i> , infernal regions	<i>Diane</i> , Diana
<i>Vulcain</i> , Vulcan	<i>chasse</i> , hunting
<i>celui</i> , that (needs no trans.)	<i>Flore</i> , Flora
<i>Mercure</i> , Mercury	<i>fleurs</i> , flowers
<i>messager</i> , messenger	<i>amour</i> , love
<i>marchands</i> , merchants	<i>Minerve</i> , Minerva
<i>voleurs</i> , thieves	<i>sagesse</i> , wisdom.

EXAMINATION ON THE ARTICLES AND NOUNS.

What is *a* before a feminine noun? *to a* before a masculine noun? *the* before a masculine? *of the* before a feminine? *to the* before a masculine? *to the* before a feminine? *of the* before a plural? *to the* before a plural? *the* before a noun beginning with a vowel? *to the* before a noun beginning with a vowel? *of the* before a masculine? *of a* before a feminine?

What is *some* (*meaning a part of a whole*) before a feminine noun? *some* before a noun beginning with a vowel? *to some* before a masculine? How is *of some* expressed in the masculine, feminine, and plural? Is *of some* the same before a vowel as before a consonant? If not, what is the difference? What is *some* (*meaning a part of a quantity of things*) in the plural? Is *of the* expressed in the same manner as *some*?

What is the general ending of the plural of nouns? Are there any exceptions to the general rule? When nouns end in *s*, *x*, or *z* in the singular, how are their plurals formed? What do nouns end in, in the singular, that take *x* in the plural? Tell me the plural of *tableau*, *oiseau*? Are there any nouns in *ou* that follow the general rule? If so, what are they? How are the plurals of nouns formed that end in *al* and *ail*? Are there any nouns in *al* and *ail* that follow the general rule? If so, what are they? How do nouns in *nt* form their plural?

CHAPTER III.

Adjectives.

ADJECTIVES change for the plural, the gender, the degrees of comparison, and the declension.

PLURAL OF ADJECTIVES.

The same rules that have been given for forming the plurals of nouns will apply to the adjectives; as,

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>aimable,</i>	<i>aimables, amiable</i>
<i>ambitieux,</i>	<i>ambitieux, ambitious</i>
<i>bel, or beau,</i>	<i>beaux, fine</i>
<i>cardinal,</i>	<i>cardinaux, cardinal</i>
<i>charmant,</i>	<i>charmans, charming</i>
<i>charmante,</i>	<i>charmantes, charming.</i>

So; *ancien*, old, or ancient; *bon*, good; *constant*, constant; *curieux*, curious; *économe*, saving; *égal*, equal; *faux*, false; *fertile*, fertile; *funeste*, fatal; *furieux*, furious; *habile*, clever; *inégal*, uneven; *jeune*, young; *lent*, slow; *mauvais*, bad; *mauvaise*, bad; *mol* or *mou*, soft; *nouvel* or *nouveau*, new; *quiet*, quiet; *royal*, royal; *spécieux*, specious; *tranquille*, tranquil; *vrai*, true.

Obs. 1. The plural of *bel* or *beau*, *mol* or *mou*, *nouvel* or *nouveau*, is always formed from the latter, viz. *beau*, *mou*, *nouveau*.

2. *Cent*, a hundred; and *tout*, all, lose the *s* in the plural; as, two hundred, *deux cents*; all men, *tous les hommes*; and the adjective *bleu*, blue, takes *s* instead of *x*, in the plural: but *cent* before a plural noun takes *s* after the *t*; as, *trois cents hommes*, three hundred men.

3. Most adjectives, in *al*, are the same in the singular and plural; as, *fatal*, fatal; *filial*, filial; *final*, final; *frugal*, frugal; *jovial*, jovial; *liberal*, liberal; *littéral*, literal; *matinal*, early; *naval*, naval; *pascal*, pascal, &c. However, we must write *les arts libéraux*, the liberal arts; *les cierges pascals*, the pascal candles; and instead of *combats navals*, write *des combats sur mer*, naval fights.

GENDER OF ADJECTIVES.

RULE I.

Those adjectives which end in *e* mute are alike in the masculine and feminine; as,

Masculine.

aimable,
agréable,
austère,
brave,

Feminine.

aimable, amiable
agréable, agreeable
austère, austere
brave, brave

So; *célèbre*, celebrated; *contraire*, contrary; *facile*, easy; *fidèle* or *fidelle*, faithful; *habile*, clever; *honnête*, honest; *jeune*, young; *modeste*, modest; *sage*, wise; *utile*, useful.

RULE II.

Adjectives or participles of the masculine gender, not ending in *e* mute, are made feminine by simply adding *e* mute; as,

Masculine.

absolu,
ainé,
amer,
antérieur,
assis,
bigot,
brun,

Feminine.

absolue, absolute
ainée, eldest
amère, bitter
antérieure, anterior
assise, seated
bigote, bigoted
brune, brown

So; *cagot*, hypocritical; *charmant*, charming; *cher*, dear; *civil*, civil; *clos*, close; *commun*, common; *complet*, complete; *confus*, confounded; *courtois*, courteous; *cru*, raw; *dur*, hard; *dévot*, devout; *égal*, equal; *ému*, moved; *enragé*, enraged; *extérieur*, exterior; *fatal*, fatal; *fécond*, fruitful; *grand*, great; *gris*, grey; *hardi*, bold; *idiot*, idiotic; *intérieur*, interior; *instruit*, informed; *joli*, pretty; *léger*, light; *meilleur*, better; *mineur*, minor; *mort*, dead; *mutin*, mutinous; *niais*, silly; *nu*, naked; *perplex*, perplexed; *préfix*, prefix; *persan*, Persian; *pervers*, perverse; *petit*, little; *plat*, flat; *plein*, full; *postérieur*, latter; *profond*,

profound; *prompt*, ready; *prudent*, prudent; *pueril*, puerile; *rond*, round; *royal*, royal; *sain*, wholesome; *second*, second; *secret*, secret; *sensé*, sensible; *seul*, only; *subtil*, subtle; *supérieur*, superior; *vénal*, venal; *vert*, green; *vrai*, true.

THE FOLLOWING ARE EXCEPTIONS TO THE PRECEDING RULES.

1. Most adjectives which end in *as*, *ais*, *el*, *et*,* *es*, *eil*, *ien*, *ol*, *on*, *ot*,* in the masculine, form the feminine by doubling the last consonant and adding *e* mute; as,

Masculine.

ancien,
annuel,
bas,
† *bel*, *beau*,

Feminine.

ancienne, ancient
annuelle, annual
basse, low
belle, fine

So; *bon*, good; *chrétien*, christian; *criminel*, criminal; *cruel*, cruel; *épais*, thick; *éternel*, eternal; *exprès*, express; † *fol* or *fou*, foolish; *gentil*, genteel; *gras*, fat; *gros*, large; *italien*, Italian; *las*, tired; *mignon*, darling; † *mol* or *mou*, soft; *mortel*, mortal; *moyen*, middling; *muet*, dumb; *mutuel*, mutual; *net*, clean; † *nouvel* or *nouveau*, new; *païen*, pagan; *pareil*, equal; *perpétuel*, perpetual; *réel*, real; *sot*, foolish; *substantiel*, substantial; *vermeil*, vermillion; † *vieil* or *vieux*, old.

2. Adjectives ending in *f* change the *f* into *ve*; as,

Masculine.

actif,
attentif,
bref,

Feminine.

active, active
attentive, attentive
brève, short

* Obs. 1. But the adjectives, *bigot*, *cagot*, *complet*, *dévo*t, *idiot*, *secret*, follow the second rule.—(Vide p. 25.)

† 2. *Bel*, *fol*, *mol*, *nouvel*, *vieil*, are put before a masculine noun beginning with a vowel; and *beau*, *fou*, *mou*, *nouveau*, *vieux*, before a noun beginning with a consonant. But the masculines plural are formed from the latter; as, *beaux*, *fous*, *moux*, *nouveaux*, *vieux*; and the feminines singular and plural are formed from the former; as, singular, *belle*, *folle*, &c.; plural, *belles*, *folles*, &c.

So ; *captif*, captive ; *chétif*, mean ; *craintif*, fearful ; *naïf*, simple ; *neuf*, new ; *oisif*, idle ; *pensif*, pensive ; *vif*, quick.

3. Adjectives in *eur*, change *x* into *se* ; as,

Masculine.

curieux,
dangereux,
délicieux,

Feminine.

curieuse, curious
dangereuse, dangerous
délicieuse, delicious

So ; *fâcheux*, grievous ; *généreux*, generous ; *glorieux*, glorious ; *gracieux*, graceful ; *heureux*, happy ; *honteux*, shameful ; *judicieux*, judicious ; *paresseux*, idle ; *studieux*, studious ; *vertueux*, virtuous ; *vicieux*, vicious.

4. Some substantival adjectives, in *eur*, change *r* into *se*, *eur* into *rice*, and also some change *ur* into *resse* ; as,

Masculine.

chanteur, singer
acteur, actor
administrateur, administrator

Feminine.

chanteuse, singer
actrice, actress
administratrice, administra-
trix

enchanteur, enchanter

enchanteresse, enchantress

So form ; 1st. In *se* ; as, *danceur*, dancer ; *parleur*, talkative or talker ; *trompeur*, deceitful or deceive.

2nd. In *rice* ; as, *accusateur*, accuser ; *ambassadeur*, ambassador ; *bienfaiteur*, benefactor ; *consolateur*, comforter ; *débiteur*, debtor ; *directeur*, director ; *exécuteur*, executor ; *inventeur*, inventor ; *lecteur*, reader ; *persecuteur*, persecutor ; *protecteur*, protector ; *testateur*, testator ; *tuteur*, guardian, &c.

3rd. In *resse* ; as, *defendeur*, defendant ; *demandeur*, plaintiff ; *pécheur*, sinner ; *vengeur*, avenger.

Obs. *Auteur*, author ; *amateur*, virtuoso ; *orateur*, orator, are masculine and feminine. *Gouverneur*, governor, makes *gouvernante*, governess ; and *empereur*, emperor, makes *imperatrice*, empress.

5. These four adjectives change *c* into *que* ; as,

Masculine.

caduc,
grec,

Feminine.

caduque, decayed
grecque, Greek

So ; *public*, public ; *turc*, Turkish.

6. The three following are made feminine by adding *he* to the masculine ; as,

Masculine.

blanc,

Feminine.

blanche, white

So ; *franc,* free ; *sec,* dry.

7. The following adjectives are quite irregular.

Masculine.

absous,

benin,

doux,

dissous,

faux,

favori,

frais,

jaloux,

long,

malin,

roux,

tiers,

Feminine.

absoute, absolved

benigne, benign

douce, sweet

dissoute, dissolved

fausse, false

favorite, favourite

fraîche, fresh or cool

jalouse, jealous

longue, long

maligne, malignant

rousse, red or reddish

tierce, a third

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparative is formed by adding *plus*, and the superlative by adding *le plus* or *la plus*, to the positive or simple state ; as,

<i>Positive.</i>	<i>Comparative.</i>	<i>Superlative.</i>
<i>grand, m. } great</i>	<i>plus grand } greater</i>	<i>le plus grand } the</i>
<i>grande, f. }</i>	<i>plus grande }</i>	<i>la plus grande } greatest</i>
<i>riche, m. or f. rich</i>	<i>plus riche, richer</i>	<i>le or la plus riche, the richest</i>
<i>beau, m. } fine</i>	<i>plus beau } finer</i>	<i>le plus beau } the</i>
<i>bel, m. }</i>	<i>plus bel }</i>	<i>plus bel } the finest</i>
<i>belle, f. }</i>	<i>plus belle }</i>	<i>la plus belle }</i>
<i>frugal, m. } frugal</i>	<i>plus frugal } more</i>	<i>le plus frugal } the most</i>
<i>frugale, f. }</i>	<i>plus frugale } frugal</i>	<i>la plus frugale } frugal</i>
<i>long, m. } long</i>	<i>plus long } longer</i>	<i>le plus long } longest</i>
<i>longue, f. }</i>	<i>plus longue }</i>	<i>la plus longue }</i>

So form, *hardi*, m. bold ; *hardie*, f. bold ; *doux*, m. sweet ; *douce*, f. sweet ; *blanc*, m. white ; *blanche*, f. white ; *facile*, m. or f. easy ; *franc*, m. sincere ; *franche*, f. sincere ; *benit*, m. holy ; *benite*, f. holy.

The adjectives *bon*, good ; *mauvais*, bad ; and *petit*, little ; form their degrees irregularly ; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>bon</i> , m. } good	<i>meilleur</i> , { better	<i>le meilleur</i> , { the best
<i>bonne</i> , f. }	<i>meilleure</i> , }	<i>la meilleure</i> , }
<i>petit</i> , m. } little	<i>moindre</i> , less	<i>le moindre</i> , { the least
<i>petite</i> , f. }		<i>la moindre</i> , }
<i>mauvais</i> , m. } bad	<i>pire</i> , worse	<i>le pire</i> , { the worst
<i>mauvaise</i> , f. }		<i>la pire</i> , }

Obs. 1. The comparative and superlative of *petit* or *petite*, and *mauvais* or *mauvaise*, may be formed by *plus* and *le* or *la plus* ; as, *plus petit* or *petite*, less ; *le plus petit* or *la plus petite*, the least ; *plus mauvais* or *mauvaise*, worse ; *le plus mauvais* or *la plus mauvaise*, the worst.

2. Pronouns have the same effect as articles in making the superlative degree ; as, *mon meilleur ami*, my best friend ; which is equal to *le meilleur de mes amis*, the best of my friends.

The adverbial particles *bien*, *mal*, *peu*, *bientôt*, *beaucoup*, form their degrees of comparison irregularly ; as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>bien</i> , well	<i>mieux</i> , better	<i>le mieux</i> , the best
<i>mal</i> , ill	<i>pis</i> or <i>plus mal</i> , worse	<i>le pis</i> or <i>le plus mal</i> , the worst
<i>peu</i> , little	<i>moins</i> , less	<i>le moins</i> , the least
<i>bientôt</i> or <i>tôt</i> , soon	<i>plutôt</i> , sooner	<i>le plutôt</i> , the soonest
<i>beaucoup</i> , much	<i>plus</i> or <i>davan- tage</i> , more	<i>le plus</i> , the most

The comparison of most adverbial particles is made by *plus* and *le plus* ; as, *sagement*, wisely ; *plus sagement*, more wisely ; *le plus sagement*, most wisely, &c.

DECLENSION OF ADJECTIVES.

In the following practice, the articles, nouns and adjectives must agree in gender and number; as, *le bon homme*, the good man; *la bonne femme*, the good woman; *les bons hommes*, the good men; *les bonnes femmes*, the good women, &c.

Obs. That *de* (not *des*) is used in all the states before an adjective for the partitive article, which, before a vowel or *h* mute, becomes *d'*; as, *de bon pain*, good bread; *d'habiles gens*, clever people.

1. Nouns of either gender, with adjectives and the definite article, are thus declined:

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Le jeune garçon</i> , the young lad	<i>Les jeunes garçons</i> , the young lads
G. <i>du jeune garçon</i> , of the young lad	<i>des jeunes garçons</i> , of the young lads
D. <i>au jeune garçon</i> , to the young lad	<i>aux jeunes garçons</i> , to the young lads

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>La jeune fille</i> , the young girl	<i>Les jeunes filles</i> , the young girls
G. <i>de la jeune fille</i> , of the young girl	<i>des jeunes filles</i> , of the young girls
D. <i>à la jeune fille</i> , to the young girl	<i>aux jeunes filles</i> , to the young girls

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>L'honnête homme</i> , the honest man	<i>Les honnêtes hommes</i> , the honest men
G. <i>de l'honnête homme</i> , of the honest man	<i>des honnêtes hommes</i> , of the honest men
D. <i>à l'honnête homme</i> , to the honest man	<i>aux honnêtes hommes</i> , to the honest men

So; *le joli oiseau*, the pretty bird; *la jolie cage*, the pretty cage; *l'heureux moment*, the happy moment; *l'heureuse occasion*, the happy opportunity.

2. Nouns of either gender, with the adjective and the indefinite and partitive articles, are thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| N. <i>Un bon livre</i> , a good book | <i>De bons livres</i> , good books |
| G. <i>d'un bon livre</i> , of a good book | <i>de bons livres</i> , of good books |
| D. <i>à un bon livre</i> , to a good book | <i>à de bons livres</i> , to good books |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| N. <i>Une bonne plume</i> , a good pen | <i>De bonnes plumes</i> , good pens |
| G. <i>d'une bonne plume</i> , of a good pen | <i>de bonnes plumes</i> , of good pens |
| D. <i>à une bonne plume</i> , to a good pen | <i>à de bonnes plumes</i> , to good pens |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| N. <i>Un habile homme</i> , a clever man | <i>D'habiles hommes</i> , clever men |
| G. <i>d'un habile homme</i> , of a clever man | <i>d'habiles hommes</i> , of clever men |
| D. <i>à un habile homme</i> , to a clever man | <i>à d'habiles hommes</i> , to clever men |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| N. <i>Une habile femme</i> , a clever woman | <i>D'habiles femmes</i> , clever women |
| G. <i>d'une habile femme</i> , of a clever woman | <i>d'habiles femmes</i> , of clever women |
| D. <i>à une habile femme</i> , to a clever woman | <i>à d'habiles femmes</i> , to clever women |

But when nouns are followed by adjectives they are thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| N. <i>Un habit rouge</i> , a red coat | <i>Des habits rouges</i> , red coats |
| G. <i>d'un habit rouge</i> , of a red coat | <i>d'habits rouges</i> , of red coats |
| D. <i>à un habit rouge</i> , to a red coat | <i>à des habits rouges</i> , to red coats |

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. *Une maison blanche*, a white house *Des maisons blanches*, white houses

G. *d'une maison blanche*, of a white house *de maisons blanches*, of white houses

D. *à une maison blanche*, to a white house *à des maisons blanches*, to white houses

So; *un petit enfant*, a little child; *une petite maison*, a small house; *un heureux moment*, a happy moment; *une heureuse occasion*, a happy opportunity; *un homme actif*, an active man; *un corps mou*, a soft body; *une table ronde*, a round table.

3. Nouns of either gender, with adjectives having a double masculine, are thus declined:

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. *Un beau paysage*, a fine landscape *De beaux paysages*, fine landscapes

G. *d'un beau paysage*, of a fine landscape *de beaux paysages*, of fine landscapes

D. *à un beau paysage*, to a fine landscape *à de beaux paysages*, to fine landscapes

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. *Un bel enfant*, a fine child *De beaux enfans*, fine children

G. *d'un bel enfant*, of a fine child *de beaux enfans*, of fine children

D. *à un bel enfant*, to a fine child *à de beaux enfans*, to fine children

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. *Un bel homme*, a fine man *De beaux hommes*, fine men

G. *d'un bel homme*, of a fine man *de beaux hommes*, of fine men

D. *à un bel homme*, to a fine man *à de beaux hommes*, to fine men

*Singular.**Plural.*

N. *Une belle femme*, a fine woman *De belles femmes*, fine women

G. *d'une belle femme*, of a fine woman *de belles femmes*, of fine women

D. *à une belle femme*, to a fine woman *à de belles femmes*, to fine women

So; *un nouveau livre*, a new book; *un nouvel acteur*, a new actor; *une nouvelle mode*, a new fashion; *un vieil habit*, an old coat; *un bel œil*, a fine eye.

4. Nouns with adjectives, in the comparative degree are thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| N. <i>Un plus joli enfant</i> , a prettier child | <i>De plus jolis enfans</i> , prettier children |
| G. <i>d'un plus joli enfant</i> , of a prettier child | <i>de plus jolis enfans</i> , of prettier children |
| D. <i>à un plus joli enfant</i> , to a prettier child | <i>à de plus jolis enfans</i> , to prettier children |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| N. <i>Une plus belle femme</i> , a finer woman | <i>De plus belles femmes</i> , finer women |
| G. <i>d'une plus belle femme</i> , of a finer woman | <i>de plus belles femmes</i> , of finer women |
| D. <i>à une plus belle femme</i> , to a finer woman | <i>à de plus belles femmes</i> , to finer women |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| N. <i>Un homme plus actif</i> , a more active man | <i>Des hommes plus actifs</i> , more active men |
| G. <i>d'un homme plus actif</i> , of a more active man | <i>d'hommes plus actifs</i> , of more active men |
| D. <i>à un homme plus actif</i> , to a more active man | <i>à des hommes plus actifs</i> , to more active men |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| N. <i>Une chose plus certaine</i> , a more certain thing | <i>Des choses plus certaines</i> , more certain things |
| G. <i>d'une chose plus certaine</i> , of a more certain thing | <i>de choses plus certaines</i> , of more certain things |
| D. <i>à une chose plus certaine</i> , to a more certain thing | <i>à des choses plus certaines</i> , to more certain things |

So; *une plus belle maison*, a finer house; *un plus bel œil*, a finer eye; *une plus habile femme*, a cleverer woman; *un ami plus fidèle*, a more faithful friend; *une voix plus harmonieuse*, a more harmonious voice.

5. Nouns with adjectives, in the superlative degree, are thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| N. <i>Le plus bel homme</i> , the finest man | <i>Les plus beaux hommes</i> , the finest men |
| G. <i>du plus bel homme</i> , of the finest man | <i>des plus beaux hommes</i> , of the finest men |
| D. <i>au plus bel homme</i> , to the finest man | <i>aux plus beaux hommes</i> , to the finest men |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| N. <i>La plus belle femme</i> , the finest woman | <i>Les plus belles femmes</i> , the finest women |
| G. <i>de la plus belle femme</i> , of the finest woman | <i>des plus belles femmes</i> , of the finest women |
| D. <i>à la plus belle femme</i> , to the finest woman | <i>aux plus belles femmes</i> , to the finest women |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| N. <i>L'homme le plus grand</i> , the greatest man | <i>Les hommes les plus grands</i> , the greatest men |
| G. <i>de l'homme le plus grand</i> , of the greatest man | <i>des hommes les plus grands</i> , of the greatest men |
| D. <i>à l'homme le plus grand</i> , to the greatest man | <i>aux hommes les plus grands</i> , to the greatest men |

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| N. <i>La pomme la plus douce</i> , the sweetest apple | <i>Les pommes les plus douces</i> , the sweetest apples |
| G. <i>de la pomme la plus douce</i> , of the sweetest apple | <i>des pommes les plus douces</i> , of the sweetest apples |
| D. <i>à la pomme la plus douce</i> , to the sweetest apple | <i>aux pommes les plus douces</i> , to the sweetest apples |

So ; *la plus habile femme*, the cleverest woman ; *la plus belle maison*, the finest house ; *la plus belle œil*, the finest eye ; *le bas le plus blanc*, the whitest stocking ; *l'herbe la plus amère*, the bitterest herb.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE.

good children
 honest men
 honest men
 honest women
 the best master
 the best mistress
 the most foolish hope
 the greatest treasure
 young horse
 young horses
 young horses
 younger mares
 the oldest castle
 the oldest castles
 the finest castle
 great events
 prettier birds
 the prettiest birds

the prettiest child
 to the youngest child
 the new world
 of a new hat
 the finest tree
 finer towns
 to finer towns
 the finest trees
 fine trees
 the best possession
 a great undertaking
 great undertakings
 the greatest undertaking
 the most delightful situation
 great buildings
 greater revolutions
 a sweet almond
 sweet almonds
 the sweetest oranges

Child, *enfant*, m.
 honest, *honnête* (*h* mute)
 man, *homme*, m.
 woman, *femme*, f.
 best, *meilleur*
 master, *maître*, m.
 mistress, *maitresse*, f.
 foolish, *fol*
 hope, *espoir*, m.
 great, *grand*
 treasure, *tresor*, m.
 young, *jeune*
 horse, *cheval*, m.
 mare, *jument*, f.
 castle, *chateau*, m.
 event, *evénement*, m.

pretty, *joli*
 bird, *oiseau*, m.
 new, *nouveau*
 world, *monde*, m.
 new, *neuf*
 hat, *chapeau*, m.
 tree, *arbre*, m.
 town, *ville*, f.
 possession, *jouissance*, f.
 undertaking, *entreprise*, f.
 delightful, *agréable*
 situation, *situation*, f.
 building, *édifice*, m.
 revolution, *révolution*, f.
 almond, *amande*, f.
 orange, *orange*, f.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON THE ADJECTIVES, TO
BE TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.

FIRST LESSON.

Un homme vertueux. Une femme vertueuse. Le bon prince. Les bons princes. La bonne princesse. Les bonnes princesses. Une femme aimable. Des enfans aimables. Le frère aîné. La sœur aînée. Les frères aînés. Les sœurs aînées. Un homme grand.* Un grand* homme. La vie humaine. Le bien public. Un agneau blanc. Un beau cheval. De beaux chevaux. Un Français poli et savant. Une Française polie et savante. Des Français polis et savans. Des Françaises polies et savantes. Un bel homme. De beaux hommes. A un Anglais aimable et généreux. D'une Anglaise aimable et généreuse. Deux Anglais aimables et généreux. Deux Anglaises aimables et généreuses. Un habit noir. Des habits noirs. Une veste blanche. L'histoire ancienne. Un livre ancien. Un auteur favori. Une chanson favorite. De plus beaux-hommes. De plus belles femmes. De bons livres. De bonnes plumes. La plus belle ville. L'homme le plus agréable. Aux plus beaux palais. Les gouffres les plus dangereux. Aux plus beaux pays. Des plus habiles gens. De plus habiles femmes. De meilleurs amis. La moindre espérance.

ainé, eldest
grand, tall
grand, great (*celebrated*)
bien, m. good
agneau, m. lamb
noir, black
blanc, white

veste, f. waistcoat
ancien, ancient, or old
auteur, m. author
gouffre, m. gulf
pays, m. country
gens, people
espérance, hope

* *Obs.* Adjectives sometimes precede and sometimes follow the noun.—(Vide *Syntax of Adjectives*.)

SECOND LESSON.

Un homme brave et généreux ne combat jamais pour une cause injuste. Les gens pauvres et misérables sont souvent plus charitables que les riches. Un enfant doux, aimable et docile est aimé de tout le monde. La vue d'un agréable paysage est une source variée et rapide de sensations délicieuses. La vie humaine n'est jamais exempte d'inquiétudes. Le bien public est préférable à l'intérêt particulier. Un père vertueux et une mère vertueuse n'ont pas toujours des enfans vertueux. Homère était peut-être un plus grand génie que Virgile; mais Virgile avait un goût plus délicat et plus raffiné. L'usage fréquent des finesses est toujours l'effet d'une grande incapacité, et la marque d'un petit esprit.

Brave, brave
ne combat jamais, never fights
pour, for; gens, people
sont, are; souvent, often
que, than
doux, mild, or gentle
docile, docile
aimé, loved; de, by
tout le monde, every body
vue, sight
agréable, pleasant
paysage, landscape
varié, varied
délicieuse, delightful
n'est jamais, is never

exempte de, free from
inquiétude, trouble
bien, good
particulier, private
n'ont pas, have not
toujours, always
Homère, Homer; était, was
peut-être, perhaps
génie, genius; que, than
mais, but; avait, had
raffiné, refined
goût, taste
finesse, artifice
petit, narrow
esprit, mind

THIRD LESSON.

Thalès dit que de tous les êtres, Dieu est le premier, comme étant Créateur de toutes choses; et que de toutes les choses qu'il a créées, la plus belle est le monde, la plus forte est la nécessité, la plus grande est l'espace, la plus sage est le tems, la plus prompte est la pensée, la plus commune est l'espérance.

La grandeur d'âme consiste dans la fermeté, la droiture et l'élévation des sentimens ; ajoutez y un esprit vaste, lumineux et profond, vous aurez un grand homme. L'amour-propre est le plus grand de tous les flatteurs. La bonne grace est au corps ce que le bon sens est à l'esprit. La grande sagesse de l'homme consiste à connaître ses folies.

<i>Thalès</i> , Thales ; <i>dit</i> , said	<i>droiture</i> , uprightness
<i>que</i> , that ; <i>tous</i> , all	<i>ajoutez y</i> , add to them
<i>les êtres</i> , beings ; <i>est</i> , is	<i>esprit</i> , understanding
<i>forte</i> , strong ; <i>l'espace</i> , space	<i>vous aurez</i> , you will have
<i>sage</i> , wise ; <i>tems</i> , time	<i>amour-propre</i> , self-love
<i>prompte</i> , quick	<i>flatteur</i> , flatterer
<i>pensée</i> , thought	<i>la bonne grace</i> , elegance
<i>l'espérance</i> , hope	<i>ce que</i> , what ; <i>sens</i> , sense
<i>grandeur</i> , greatness	<i>sagesse</i> , wisdom
<i>dans</i> , in ; <i>fermeté</i> , firmness	<i>à connaître</i> , in knowing

EXAMINATION ON THE ADJECTIVES.

Are the rules for forming the plural of nouns applicable to the adjectives ? What is the plural of *heureux*, *vigoureux*, *royal*, *constant* ? What letter do *vaste* and *véritable* take for the plural ? Is *vrais* singular or plural ? What number is *utiles* ? Are adjectives in *e* mute the same in the masculine and feminine ? How do other adjectives form their feminine ? Do any adjectives double the last letter for the feminine ? What else is added ? Form the feminine of *temporel*, *virtuel*, *universel*, *gros*, and *ancien*. What is the general ending of the feminine ? How is the feminine of adjectives in *eux* formed ? Give me the feminine of *courageux*, *vertueux*, *paresseux*. Are all adjectives in *x* formed in this manner ? In what respect do they differ ? What is the feminine of *doux* ? How are adjectives in *f* and *c* formed ? What are *actif*, *portatif*, *grec*, *blanc*, changed into for the feminine ? How do substantival adjectives in *eur* form their feminine ? Are there no exceptions ?

CHAPTER IV.

Numerals.

NUMERALS are divided into cardinal and ordinal.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

Un, m. *une*, f. one
deux, two
trois, three
quatre, four
cing, five
six, six
sept, seven
huit, eight
neuf, nine
dix, ten
onze, eleven
douze, twelve
treize, thirteen
quatorze, fourteen
quinze, fifteen
seize, sixteen
dix-sept, seventeen
dix-huit, eighteen
dix-neuf, nineteen
vingt, twenty
vingt et un, or *vingt-un*,
 twenty-one
vingt-deux, twenty-two
vingt-trois, twenty-three
vingt-quatre, twenty-four, &c.
trente, thirty
trente et un, or *trente-un*,
 thirty-one
trente-deux, thirty-two, &c.
quarante, forty
quarante et un, or *quarante-*
un, forty-one

quarante-deux, forty-two, &c.
cinquante, fifty
cinquante et un, or *cinquante-*
un, fifty-one
cinquante-deux, fifty-two, &c.
soixante, sixty
soixante et un, or *soixante-un*,
 sixty-one
soixante-deux, sixty-two, &c.
soixante-dix, seventy
soixante et onze, seventy-one
soixante-douze, seventy-two
soixante-treize, seventy-three
soixante-quatorze, seventy-
 four
soixante-quinze, seventy-five
soixante-seize, seventy-six
soixante-dix-sept, seventy-
 seven
soixante-dix-huit, seventy-
 eight
soixante-dix-neuf, seventy-
 nine
quatre-vingt, eighty
quatre-vingt-un, eighty-one
quatre-vingt-deux, eighty-
 two, &c.
quatre-vingt-dix, ninety
quatre-vingt-onze, ninety-
 one, &c.
cent, a hundred
cent-un, a hundred and one

<i>cent-deux</i> , a hundred and two	<i>deux cent deux</i> , two hundred and two, &c.
<i>cent-trois</i> , a hundred and three, &c.	<i>cing cents</i> , five hundred
<i>deux cents</i> , or <i>deux cent</i> , two hundred	<i>mille</i> , a thousand
<i>trois cents</i> , or <i>cent</i> , three hundred	<i>deux mille</i> , two thousand
<i>deux cent un</i> , two hundred and one	<i>un million</i> , a million
	<i>deux millions</i> , two millions
	<i>dix millions</i> , ten millions
	<i>un milliard</i> , a thousand millions.

ADVERBIALLY.

<i>Une fois</i> , once	<i>trois fois</i> , thrice or three times
<i>deux fois</i> , twice	<i>quatre-fois</i> , four times, &c.

Deux fois deux font quatre; twice two make four

3 fois 9 font 27; 3 times 9 make 27

4 fois 12 font 48; 4 times 12 make 48

6 fois 12 font 72; 6 times 12 make 72

Obs. 1. *Vingt* and *cent*, when immediately followed by a substantive, take an *s* in the plural; as, *quatre-vingts ans*, eighty years; *cent vingt hommes*, a hundred and twenty men; *deux cents hommes*, two hundred men. But when *vingt* or *cent* is followed by another numeral, *s* is omitted; as, *quatre-vingt-dix livres*, ninety pounds; *trois cent vingt-six soldats*, three hundred and twenty-six soldiers. *Mille*, a thousand, takes no *s* in the plural; as, *deux mille guinées*, two thousand guineas. *Mille* becomes *mil* in denoting the Christian æra; as, in the year 1828, *l'an mil huit cent vingt-six*. *Mille*, mile, takes *s* in the plural; as, *quatre milles*, four miles.

2. When two or more numbers are used together, the conjunction *et* is not put between them; as, *cent-quatre*, *cent-vingt*, not *cent et quatre*, *cent et vingt*. But the French sometimes say and write *vingt et un*, *trente et un*, &c.

3. In speaking of time, the French say *huit jours*, a week (not *une semaine*); *quinze jours*, a fortnight (not *quatorze nuits*); *trois mois*, three months; *six mois*, six months; *neuf mois*, nine months; not *un quartier*, a quarter; *un demi-an*, half a year; *trois quartiers d'un an*, three quarters of a year.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

Le, la, the
Le premier, m. } first
la première, f. }
le second, m. } second
la seconde, f. }
 le or *la troisième*, m. or f.
 third

quatrième, fourth
cinquième, fifth
sixième, sixth
septième, seventh
huitième, eighth
neuvième, ninth
dixième, tenth
onzième, eleventh
douzième, twelfth
treizième, thirteenth
quatorzième, fourteenth
quinzième, fifteenth
seizième, sixteenth
dix-septième, seventeenth
dix-huitième, eighteenth

Le, la, the
dix-neuvième, nineteenth
vingtième, twentieth
vingt et unième, twenty-first
vingt-deuxième, twenty-
 second
vingt-troisième, twenty-third,
 &c.
trentième, thirtieth
quarantième, fortieth
cinquantième, fiftieth
soixantième, sixtieth
soixante et dixième, seventieth
quatre-vingtième, eightieth
quatre-vingt dixième, nine-
 tieth
centième, a hundredth
cent-cinquantième, a hundred
 and fiftieth
deux-centième, two hundredth
millième, a thousandth
deux-millième, two thousandth

N.B. The ordinal numbers, from *troisième* to *millième*, are either masculine or feminine, according to the gender of the noun which follows; as, *le troisième jour*, the third day; *la troisième maison*, the third house, &c.

ADVERBIALLY.

Premièrement, firstly
secondement, secondly

troisièmement, thirdly
quatrièmement, fourthly, &c.

Obs. 1. The ordinal numbers admit of an *s* for the plural; as, *deux cinquièmes*, two fifths.

2. The cardinal, instead of the ordinal, numbers are used in French in mentioning the days of the month; as, *le deux*, *le trois*, *le vingt*, *le vingt et un de Janvier*, &c. the second, third, twentieth, twenty-first of January, &c. except *le premier de Janvier*, &c. never say *l'un de Janvier*, the first of January.

3. Also, in speaking of princes; as, *Henri trois*, *quatre*, *six*, *sept*, &c. Henry the third, fourth, sixth, seventh, &c.; *Louis quinze*, Lewis the fifteenth; *George quatre*, George the fourth; *Charles dix*, Charles the tenth, &c. except *premier* and *second*; as, *Henri premier*, Henry the first; *George second*, George the second.

EXERCISES ON THE NUMERALS TO BE TRANSLATED
INTO ENGLISH.

FIRST LESSON.

George quatre, roi d'Angleterre, est né le 12 Août mil sept cent soixante deux ; il fut couronné le dix-neuf Juillet, dix-huit cent vingt et un. Auguste Frédéric d'Angleterre, duc de Sussex, est un prince très savant ; il est né le 27 Janvier 1773. Henri quatre, roi de France, fut un excellent prince ; il mourut en 1610. L'Amérique fut découverte par Christophe Colomb, l'an 1492. La poudre à canon fut inventé à Cologne, par un moine, nommé Berthold Schwartz, l'an 1382. La boussole fut inventée par Jean Gola, Napolitain, l'an 1303. Pierre Hellé, à Nuremberg, inventa les montres en 1490, et Messieurs Montgolfiers inventèrent les ballons aërostatiques en 1783. La population de Londres, en 1821, était de 1,274,800 habitans. La population de Paris, en 1817, était de 717,212 habitans.

Monsieur B—— a vendu sa maison de campagne deux mille cinq cent cinquante livres sterlings. Il les tuait, par centaines, par milliers à la fois. Il y avait trois mille fantassins et six cents cavaliers. Voici deux douzaines de très-belles pêches. On fit dans la paroisse une quête qui produisit cent vingt-une guinées.

Est né, was born
Août, August
fut couronné, was crowned
très, very ; *savant*, learned
fut, was ; *mourut*, died
par, by ; *Christophe Colomb*,

Christopher Columbus
poudre à canon, gunpowder
moine, monk
boussole, mariner's compass
Napolitain, Neapolitan
Pierre, Peter
Nuremberg, Nuremberg
inventa, invented
montre, watch

inventèrent, invented
un ballon aërostatique, an
air balloon ; *était*, was
a vendu, has sold
maison de campagne, country
house (for)
il les tuait, he killed them
à la fois, at a time
il y avait, there were
fantassin, foot-soldier
cavalier, cavalry
on fit, they made
quête, collection ; *dans*, in
paroisse, parish
qui produisit, which produced

SECOND LESSON.

Un curieux a remarqué, qu'en additionnant les chiffres de l'année de naissance ou de décès des plus grands ou des meilleurs des rois de France de la troisième race, on trouvait les mêmes nombres que ceux qui distinguent leurs noms; ainsi :

Saint Louis (Louis IX) est né en 1215; additionnez les quatre chiffres de cette date, et vous aurez 9.

Charles VII. dit le sage, est né en 1402; cette date donne 7.

Louis XII. le père du peuple, est né en 1461, dont la somme est 12.

Henri IV. est mort en 1610, où l'on trouve deux fois 4:

Louis XIV. a été Roi de France en 1643, qui présente 14; il est mort en 1715, qui donne également 14; il était âgé de 77 ans, encore 14.

Enfin S. M. Louis XVIII. est né en 1755, dont le total est bien 18.—AMUSEMENTS PHILOLOGIQUES.

Curieux, virtuoso
a remarqué, has observed
qu' (for que), that; *en*, by
chiffre, cypher, or figure
année, year
de, of *the*
naissance, birth
ou, or; *décès*, decease
des rois de France, of the
 French kings
de la troisième race, of the
 Bourbon family
on trouvait, there is found
que, as; *ceux qui*, those which
distinguent, distinguish

leurs, their; *ainsi*, thus
est né, was born; *en*, in
aurez, will have
dit le sage, called the wise
dont, whose
est mort, died
où l'on trouve, in which
 there are
deux fois, twice; *a été*, was
également, also
enfin, finally
S. M. (for Sa Majesté) his
 majesty
dont, whose, or of which
bien, just, or exactly

CHAPTER V.

Pronouns.

THE pronouns are divided into personal, possessive, demonstrative, relative, interrogative, and indefinite.

PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

The personal pronouns are divided into three persons; the first person is *je*, I; plur. *nous*, we; second person, *tu*, thou; plur. *vous*, you; the third person masculine, *il*, he, or it; feminine *elle*, she, or it; plur. masculine, *ils*, feminine *elles*, they; and the indeterminate pronoun *on*, one, we, people, &c. They are declined in four cases, as follows:

FIRST PERSON.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Je</i> , I	<i>Nous</i> , we
G. <i>de moi</i> , of me	<i>de nous</i> , of us
D. <i>me</i> , à <i>moi</i> , to me	<i>nous</i> , à <i>nous</i> , to us
A. <i>me</i> , me	<i>nous</i> , us

SECOND PERSON.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Tu</i> , thou	<i>Vous</i> , you
G. <i>de toi</i> , of thee	<i>de vous</i> , of you
D. <i>te</i> , à <i>toi</i> , to thee	<i>vous</i> , à <i>vous</i> , to you
A. <i>te</i> , thee	<i>vous</i> , you

THIRD PERSON, USED WITH REFERENCE TO PERSONS.

Masculine.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Il</i> , he	<i>Ils</i> , they
G. <i>de lui</i> , of him	<i>d'eux</i> , of them
D. <i>lui</i> , à <i>lui</i> , to him	<i>leur</i> , à <i>eux</i> , to them
A. <i>le</i> , ou <i>l'</i> ,* him	<i>les</i> , them

* *Obs.* *L'* before a verb beginning with a vowel may be translated, *him*, *her*, or *it*, depending upon who or what is referred to; thus, *je l'aime*, may mean, I love *him*, I love *her*, or I love *it*. Therefore, when a sentence of this kind occurs, be sure, before you translate it, to make yourself acquainted with the subject to which the *l'* relates.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Feminine.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	<i>Elle</i> , she		<i>Elles</i> , they
G.	<i>d'elle</i> , of her		<i>d'elles</i> , of them
D.	<i>lui</i> , à <i>elle</i> , to her		<i>leur</i> , à <i>elles</i> , to them
A.	<i>la</i> , <i>l'</i> , her		<i>les</i> , them

WITH REFERENCE TO ANIMALS AND THINGS.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	<i>Il</i> , <i>elle</i> , it	<i>Ils</i> , <i>elles</i> , they
G.	<i>en</i> , of it	<i>en</i> , of them
D.	<i>y</i> , <i>lui</i> , to it	<i>y</i> , <i>leur</i> , to them
A.	<i>le</i> , <i>la</i> , <i>l'</i> , it	<i>les</i> , them

THE INDETERMINATE PRONOUN *on*.

- N. *On*, one, we, they, people, &c.
 G. *de soi*, of oneself, ourselves, himself, herself, &c.
 D. *se*, à *soi*, to oneself, himself, ourselves, themselves, &c.
 A. *se*, oneself, himself, herself, themselves, &c.

To *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, &c. is added *même*, as follows :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Moi-même</i> , myself	<i>Nous-mêmes</i> , ourselves
<i>toi-même</i> , thyself	<i>vous-mêmes</i> , yourselves
<i>lui-même</i> , himself	<i>eux-mêmes</i> , }
<i>elle-même</i> , herself	<i>elles-mêmes</i> , } themselves
<i>soi-même</i> , oneself, &c.	

These are likewise declinable with *de* and *à* ; as, *de moi-même*, of myself ; *à moi-même*, to myself, &c.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

Possessive pronouns are either conjunctive or relative.

CONJUNCTIVE POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

The conjunctive possessive pronouns are *mon*, my ; *ton*, thy ; *son*, his, her, and its ; *notre*, our ; *votre*, your ; and *leur*, their ; which vary for the gender and number, as follows :

Singular.		Plural.
Mas.	Fem.	Masc. and Fem.
<i>Mon,</i>	<i>ma,</i>	<i>mes,</i> my
<i>ton,</i>	<i>ta,</i>	<i>tes,</i> thy
<i>son,</i>	<i>sa,</i>	<i>ses,</i> his, her, its
<i>notre,</i>	<i>notre,</i>	<i>nos,</i> our
<i>votre,</i>	<i>votre,</i>	<i>vos,</i> your
<i>leur,</i>	<i>leur,</i>	<i>leurs,</i> their

The preceding pronouns are always placed before nouns, with which they must agree in gender and number ; but *mon, ton, son,* are put instead of *ma, ta, sa,* before a feminine noun beginning with a vowel or *h* mute. They are declined as follows :

Mon with the masculine noun *livre* is thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Mon livre,</i> my book	<i>Mes livres,</i> my books
G. <i>de mon livre,</i> of my book	<i>de mes livres,</i> of my books
D. <i>à mon livre,</i> to my book	<i>à mes livres,</i> to my books

Ma with the feminine noun *table* is thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Ma table,</i> my table	<i>Mes tables,</i> my tables
G. <i>de ma table,</i> of my table	<i>de mes tables,</i> of my tables
D. <i>à ma table,</i> to my table	<i>à mes tables,</i> to my tables

Mon before the feminine noun *amie,* beginning with a vowel, is thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Mon amie,</i> my friend	<i>Mes amies,</i> my friends
G. <i>de mon amie,</i> of my friend	<i>de mes amies,</i> of my friends
D. <i>à mon amie,</i> to my friend	<i>à mes amies,</i> to my friends

Mon before the feminine noun *horloge,* beginning with a mute, is thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Mon horloge,</i> my clock	<i>Mes horloges,</i> my clocks
G. <i>demon horloge,</i> of my clock	<i>de mes horloges,</i> of my clocks
D. <i>à mon horloge,</i> to my clock	<i>à mes horloges,</i> to my clocks

Votre with a masculine or feminine noun is thus declined :

Masculine.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Votre plat</i> , your dish | <i>Vos plats</i> , your dishes |
| 2. <i>de votre plat</i> , of your dish | <i>de vos plats</i> , of your dishes |
| 3. <i>à votre plat</i> , to your dish | <i>à vos plats</i> , to your dishes |

Feminine.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Votre assiette</i> , your plate | <i>Vos assiettes</i> , your plates |
| 2. <i>de votre assiette</i> , of your plate | <i>de vos assiettes</i> , of your plates |
| 3. <i>à votre assiette</i> , to your plate | <i>à vos assiettes</i> , to your plates |

So decline *mon cheval*, m. my horse ; *son chapeau*, m. er hat ; *votre fils*, m. your son ; *ma plume*, f. my pen ; *sa fille*, f. my daughter ; *sa table*, f. his table ; *son action*, his action ; *mon oiseau*, m. my bird.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS RELATIVE.

The possessive pronouns relative are, *le mien*, mine ; *le tien*, thine ; *le sien*, his, hers, its ; *le nôtre*, ours ; *le vôtre*, yours ; *le leur*, theirs, which vary for the gender and number, as follows :

Singular.

Plural.

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
<i>Le mien</i> ,	<i>La mienne</i> ,	<i>Les miens</i> ,	<i>Les miennes</i> , mine
<i>le tien</i> ,	<i>la tienne</i> ,	<i>les tiens</i> ,	<i>les tiennes</i> , thine
<i>le sien</i> ,	<i>la sienne</i> ,	<i>les siens</i> ,	<i>les siennes</i> , his, hers, its
<i>le nôtre</i> ,	<i>la nôtre</i> ,	<i>les nôtres</i> ,	<i>les nôtres</i> , ours
<i>le vôtre</i> ,	<i>la vôtre</i> ,	<i>les vôtres</i> ,	<i>les vôtres</i> , yours
<i>le leur</i> ,	<i>la leur</i> ,	<i>les leurs</i> ,	<i>les leurs</i> , theirs

These pronouns are thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
N. <i>Le mien</i> ,	<i>La mienne</i> ,	<i>Les miens</i> ,	<i>Les miennes</i> , mine
G. <i>du mien</i> ,	<i>de la mienne</i> ,	<i>des miens</i> ,	<i>des miennes</i> , of mine
D. <i>au mien</i> ,	<i>à la mienne</i> ,	<i>aux miens</i> ,	<i>aux miennes</i> , to mine

So decline *le tien*, *le sien*, &c.

These are called relative possessive pronouns, because they stand for some noun which precedes them, and with which they must agree in gender and number. They are declined, after the noun, as follows :

The masculine noun, *livre*, book, with the conjunctive possessive pronoun *mon* before, and the relative possessive pronoun *le sien* after, is thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

N. <i>Mon livre et le sien</i> , my book and his	<i>Mes livres et les siens</i> , my books and his
G. <i>de mon livre et du sien</i> , of my book and his	<i>de mes livres et des siens</i> , of my books and his
D. <i>à mon livre et au sien</i> , to my book and his	<i>à mes livres et aux siens</i> , to my books and his

The feminine noun *horloge*, clock, with the pronoun *ton* before, and *la sienne* after, is thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

N. <i>Ton horloge et la sienne</i> , thy clock and his	<i>Tes horloges et les siennes</i> , thy clocks and his
G. <i>de ton horloge et de la sienne</i> , of thy clock and his	<i>de tes horloges et des siennes</i> , of thy clocks and his
D. <i>à ton horloge et à la sienne</i> , to thy clock and his	<i>à tes horloges et aux siennes</i> , to thy clocks and his

So decline *mon père et le vôtre*, my father and yours; *votre chapeau et le mien*, your hat and mine; *sa mère et la mienne*, his mother and mine; *son horloge et la sienne*, her clock and his; *mon oiseau et le sien*, my bird and hers.

EXERCISE.

Votre livre et le mien. Votre lettre et la mienne. Ma montre et la sienne. Mon cheval et le vôtre. Ses souliers et les miens. Ses brebis et les miennes. De mon oiseau et du sien. De ma musique et de la sienne. A mon chien et au vôtre. A ma grammaire et à la tienne. De mes ardoises et des vôtres. De ses frères et des miens. A ses brebis et aux miennes. De mes cousins et des vôtres. A

ma cousine et à la leur. Vos crayons et les nôtres. A nos bas et aux siens. Notre pays et le vôtre. De votre laquais et du nôtre. A votre armée et à la leur. De vos armées et des nôtres. Leur jardin et le tien. De leur maison et de la mienne. A leurs amis et aux nôtres.

Montre, watch
 soulier, shoe
 brebis, sheep
 musique, music
 chien, dog

ardoise, slate
 cousin, cousin
 crayon, pencil
 laquais, footman
 armée, army

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

The demonstrative pronouns are *ce* (or *cet* before a vowel or *h* mute) this or that, *celui*, he; *celui-ci*, this; *celui-là*, that; *ceci*, this; and *cela*, that. The four first admit of the following changes :

Singular.

Masculine.

Ce,* or *cet*, this, or that
celui, he, or that
celui-ci,† this
celui-là, that

Feminine.

Cette, this, or that
celle, she, or that
celle-ci, this
celle-là, that

Plural.

Masculine.

Ces, these, or those
ceux, those
ceux-ci, they, or these
ceux-là, they, or those

Feminine.

Ces, these, or those
celles, they, or those
celles-ci, they, or these
celles-là, they, or those

The first is a pronoun adjective, and all the rest pronoun substantives; they are declined with *de* and *d*, as follows :

* *Obs.* 1. *Ce* is sometimes used before *que*, and corresponds to the English *that which*, or *what*; as, *ce que vous dites est vrai*, *that which*, or *what* you say is true.

† *Ci* means *here*, and *là*, *there*, so that the literal meaning of *celui-ci*, is, *this here*, and of *celui-là*, is, *that there*.

1. *Ce*, before a masculine noun, is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Ce livre</i> , this or that book	<i>Ces livres</i> , these or those books
G. <i>de ce livre</i> , of this book	<i>de ces livres</i> , of these books
D. <i>à ce livre</i> , to this book	<i>à ces livres</i> , to these books

Ce before a noun, beginning with *h* mute, is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Cet homme</i> , this man	<i>Ces hommes</i> , these men
G. <i>de cet homme</i> , of this man	<i>de ces hommes</i> , of these men
D. <i>à cet homme</i> , to this man	<i>à ces hommes</i> , to these men

Ce before a noun, beginning with a vowel, is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Cet oiseau</i> , this bird	<i>Ces oiseaux</i> , these birds
G. <i>de cet oiseau</i> , of this bird	<i>de ces oiseaux</i> , of these birds
D. <i>à cet oiseau</i> , to this bird	<i>à ces oiseaux</i> , to these birds

Ce before a feminine noun is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>Cette femme</i> , this woman	<i>Ces femmes</i> , these women
G. <i>de cette femme</i> , of this woman	<i>de ces femmes</i> , of these women
D. <i>à cette femme</i> , to this woman	<i>à ces femmes</i> , to these women

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>cette étoile</i> , that star	<i>Ces étoiles</i> , those stars
G. <i>de cette étoile</i> , of that star	<i>de ces étoiles</i> , of those stars
D. <i>à cette étoile</i> , to that star	<i>à ces étoiles</i> , to those stars

So decline *ce*, &c. with the following nouns : *mal*, m. evil ; *animal*, m. animal ; *honneur*, m. honor ; *table*, f. table ; *vie*, f. life ; *âme*, f. soul.

When we wish to point out any person, or thing, particularly, *là* is put after the noun ; thus,

Ce-là with a masculine noun is thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| N. <i>Ce cheval-là</i> , that horse | <i>Ces chevaux-là</i> , those horses |
| G. <i>de ce cheval-là</i> , of that horse | <i>de ces chevaux-là</i> , of those horses |
| D. <i>à ce cheval-là</i> , to that horse | <i>à ces chevaux-là</i> , to those horses |

Ce-là with a masculine noun, beginning with a vowel or *h* mute, is thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| N. <i>Cet homme-là</i> , that man | <i>Ces hommes-là</i> , those men |
| G. <i>de cet homme-là</i> , of that man | <i>de ces hommes-là</i> , of those men |
| D. <i>à cet homme-là</i> , to that man | <i>à ces hommes-là</i> , to those men |

Ce-là with a feminine noun is thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| N. <i>Cette église-là</i> , that church | <i>Ces églises-là</i> , those churches |
| G. <i>de cette église-là</i> , of that church | <i>de ces églises-là</i> , of those churches |
| D. <i>à cette église-là</i> , to that church | <i>à ces églises-là</i> , to those churches |

So decline *ce-là* with the following nouns : *chien*, m. dog; *hôpital*, m. (*h* mute) hospital; *maison*, f. house; *étoile*, f. star.

2. The pronoun substantive *celui* is thus declined :

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| N. <i>Celui</i> , he | <i>Ceux</i> , they, or those |
| G. <i>de celui</i> , of him | <i>de ceux</i> , of them or those |
| D. <i>à celui</i> , to him | <i>à ceux</i> , to them or those |

So decline *celle*, she, &c.

Obs. *Ceci*, this; and *cela*, that, are masculine, and have no plural. *Ceci* designates the object which is nearest to us, and *cela* the object which is most distant; as, *ceci est bon, mais cela est meilleur*, *this is good, but that is better.*

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

The relative pronouns are, *qui*, who ; *lequel*, which ; and *quoi*, what ; which are declined as follow :

Qui, who, or which, relates to persons and things, and is of both genders and numbers.

N. *Qui*, who, which, or that

G. *dont*, whose, of whom, or of which, *de qui*, of or from whom

D. *à qui*, to whom, or to which

A. *qui*, *que*, whom, which, or that

Lequel, which

Singular.

Plural.

Masc.

Fem.

Masc.

Fem.

N. *Lequel*, *Laquelle*, *Lesquels*, *Lesquelles*, which

G. *duquel*, *de laquelle*, *desquels*, *desquelles* or *dont*, of or from which

D. *auquel*, *à laquelle*, *auxquels*, *auxquelles*, to which

A. *lequel*, *laquelle*, *lesquels*, *lesquelles*, which

Quoi, what

N. *Quoi*, what

G. *de quoi*, of what

D. *à quoi*, to what

A. *quoi*, what

} for both numbers and genders

INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

The interrogatives are, *lequel*? which? *qui*? who? *que*? *quoi*? and *quel*? what? *Lequel*? is declined like the relative *lequel*. *Qui*? *que*? *quoi*? are substantives ; *quel*? a pronoun adjective.

Qui? who? is thus declined :

N. *Qui*? or *qui est-ce qui*? who?

G. *de qui*? whose, of or from whom?

D. *à qui*? or *à qui est-ce que*? to whom? whose?

A. *qui*? or *qui est-ce que*? whom?

} for both numbers and genders

Que? quoi? what? are thus declined :

N. <i>Que? quoi?</i> what?	} for both genders and numbers
G. <i>de quoi?</i> of what?	
D. <i>à quoi?</i> to what?	
A. <i>que? quoi?</i> what?	

Quel? what? before a masculine substantive is thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

N. <i>Quel homme?</i> what man?	<i>Quels hommes?</i> what men?
G. <i>de quel homme?</i> of what man?	<i>de quels hommes?</i> of what men?
D. <i>à quel homme?</i> to what man?	<i>à quels hommes?</i> to what men?
A. <i>quel homme?</i> what man?	<i>quels hommes?</i> what men?

Quel? before a feminine noun is thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

N. <i>Quelle plume?</i> what pen?	<i>quelles plumes?</i> what pens?
G. <i>de quelle plume?</i> of what pen?	<i>de quelles plumes?</i> of what pens?
D. <i>à quelle plume?</i> to what pen?	<i>à quelles plumes?</i> to what pens?
A. <i>quelle plume?</i> what pen?	<i>quelles plumes?</i> what pens?

So decline *quel livre?* what book? *quel chapeau?* what hat? *quelle femme?* what woman? *quelle table?* what table?

INDETERMINATE OR INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

1. Those which are used adjectively :

Chaque, every, each
quelque, some, any

quelconque, whatever

2. The following are sometimes used as substantives, and sometimes as adjectives :

<i>Aucun</i> , no one, none, not one, not any	<i>le même</i> , the same
<i>autre</i> , other, any other	<i>nul</i> , no, none, not one
<i>l'un et l'autre</i> , both	<i>tel</i> , such
<i>l'un ou l'autre</i> , either	<i>tout</i> , all, every, every thing
<i>ni l'un ni l'autre</i> , neither	<i>pas un</i> , not one, no one
	<i>plusieurs</i> , several, many

3. The following are used as pronoun substantives :

<i>Autrui</i> , others	<i>personne</i> , nobody, no one,
<i>chacun</i> , each, every one,	none, any one, any body
every body	<i>rien</i> , nothing
<i>l'un l'autre</i> , one another	<i>quelqu'un</i> , some one
<i>on</i> , one, people, they, &c.	<i>quiconque</i> , whoever, any body

The following are changeable for the gender and number, except *quelque* and *même*, which only change for the number, and *chacun*, *pas un*, *aucun*, and *nul*, only change for the gender.

Singular.		Plural.	
Masc.	Fem.	Masc.	Fem.
<i>Quelque</i> ,	<i>Quelque</i> ,	<i>Quelques</i> ,	<i>Quelques</i>
<i>même</i> ,	<i>même</i> ,	<i>mêmes</i> ,	<i>mêmes</i>
<i>quelqu'un</i> ,	<i>quelqu'une</i> ,	<i>quelques-uns</i> ,	<i>quelques-unes</i>
<i>chacun</i> ,	<i>chacune</i> ,	(no pl.)	
<i>pas un</i> ,	<i>pas une</i> ,	(no pl. except when used for	
<i>aucun</i> ,	<i>aucune</i> ,	<i>quelques-uns</i>)	
<i>nul</i> ,	<i>nulle</i> ,	(no pl.)	
<i>tout</i> ,	<i>toute</i> ,	<i>tous</i> ,	<i>toutes</i>
<i>tel</i> ,	<i>telle</i> ,	<i>tels</i> ,	<i>telles</i>

The others are unchangeable.

All these pronouns may be declined with the prepositions *de* and *à*, after the following models :

Quelque with a substantive is thus declined :

Singular.	Plural.
N. <i>Quelque livre</i> , some book	<i>Quelques livres</i> , some books
G. <i>de quelque livre</i> , of some book	<i>de quelques livres</i> , of some books
D. <i>à quelque livre</i> , to some book	<i>à quelques livres</i> , to some books

Tel with a masculine substantive is thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| N. <i>Un tel homme</i> , such a man | <i>De tels hommes</i> , such men |
| G. <i>d'un tel homme</i> , of such a man | <i>de tels hommes</i> , of such men |
| D. <i>à un tel homme</i> , to such a man | <i>à de tels hommes</i> , to such men |

Tout with a masculine substantive is thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| N. <i>Tout homme</i> , every man | <i>Tous les hommes</i> , all men |
| G. <i>de tout homme</i> , of every man | <i>de tous les hommes</i> , of all men |
| D. <i>à tout homme</i> , to every man | <i>à tous les hommes</i> , to all men |

Tout with a feminine noun is thus declined :

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| N. <i>Toute heure</i> , every hour | <i>toutes les heures</i> , all hours |
| D. <i>de toute heure</i> , of every hour | <i>de toutes les heures</i> , of all hours |
| G. <i>à toute heure</i> , to every hour | <i>à toutes les heures</i> , to all hours |

Singular (only) Masc.

- | |
|--|
| N. <i>Tout le monde</i> , every body |
| G. <i>de tout le monde</i> , of every body |
| D. <i>à tout le monde</i> , to every body |

Singular : Fem.

- | |
|--|
| N. <i>Toute la nation</i> , the whole nation |
| G. <i>de toute la nation</i> , of the whole nation |
| D. <i>à toute la nation</i> , to the whole nation |

Plural.

- | |
|--|
| N. <i>Toutes les nations</i> , all nations |
| G. <i>de toutes les nations</i> , of all nations |
| D. <i>à toutes les nations</i> , to all nations |

So decline *quelque femme*, some woman ; *une telle femme*, such a woman ; *tout enfant*, every child ; *toute femme*, every woman ; *toute maison*, every house ; *tout le bœuf*, the whole

ox ; *le même auteur*, the same author ; *aucune raison*, no reason ; *un tel héros*, such a hero ; *une telle conduite*, such conduct.

The pronoun substantive *quelqu'un* is thus declined :

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	<i>Quelqu'un</i> , some one		<i>Quelques-uns</i> , some persons
G.	<i>de quelqu'un</i> , of some one		<i>de quelques-uns</i> , of some, &c.
D.	<i>à quelqu'un</i> , to some one		<i>à quelques-uns</i> , to some persons

The other pronouns substantive are also declinable in the singular ; but *l'un l'autre*, one another ; *l'un et l'autre*, both ; *l'un ou l'autre*, either ; *ni l'un ni l'autre*, neither, somewhat vary in their form, as follows :

Masculine.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	<i>L'un l'autre</i> , one another		<i>Les uns les autres</i> , one another
G.	<i>l'un de l'autre</i> , of one, &c.		<i>les uns des autres</i> , of one, &c.
D.	<i>l'un à l'autre</i> , to one, &c.		<i>les uns aux autres</i> , to one, &c.

So ; the feminine *l'une l'autre*, one another.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	<i>L'un et l'autre</i> , both		<i>Les uns et les autres</i> , both
G.	<i>de l'un et de l'autre</i> , of both		<i>des uns et des autres</i> , of both
D.	<i>à l'un et à l'autre</i> , to both		<i>aux uns et aux autres</i> , to both

So ; the feminine *l'une et l'autre*, both.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	<i>L'un ou l'autre</i> , either		<i>Les uns ou les autres</i> , either
G.	<i>de l'un ou de l'autre</i> , of either		<i>des uns ou des autres</i> , of either
D.	<i>à l'un ou à l'autre</i> , to either		<i>aux uns ou aux autres</i> , to, &c.

So ; the feminine *l'une ou l'autre*, either.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
N.	<i>Ni l'un ni l'autre</i> , neither		<i>Ni les uns ni les autres</i> , neither
G.	<i>ni de l'un ni de l'autre</i> , of neither		<i>ni des uns ni des autres</i> , of neither
D.	<i>ni à l'un ni à l'autre</i> , to neither		<i>ni aux uns ni aux autres</i> , to neither

So ; the feminine *ni l'une ni l'autre*, neither.

RECAPITULATORY EXERCISE ON THE PRONOUNS.

My pens, <i>plume</i> , f.	To her hostess, <i>hôtesse</i> , f.
Your brothers, <i>frère</i> , m.	To your hostess and his
Of some books, <i>livre</i> , m.	Of his friend, <i>ami</i> , m.
To my father and hers	Of his friend, <i>amie</i> , f.
To his mother and mine	To their friend and hers,
Of what cause, <i>cause</i> , f.	<i>ami</i> , m.
Of his house, <i>maison</i> , f.	To your friend and hers,
Of my house and his	<i>amie</i> , f.
To their houses and mine	To that hospital, <i>hôpital</i> , m.
To whom. To whom?	(<i>h</i> mute)
Of what child, <i>enfant</i> , m.	To her affection, <i>affection</i> , f.
To what children	To his affection and mine
Of which. Of which?	Of their enemies, <i>ennemi</i> , m.
To which (<i>plural</i>)	Of their enemies and yours
What means? <i>moyen</i> , m.	To your enemies and his
To what persons? <i>personne</i> , f.	To thy hope, <i>espérance</i> , f.
To those persons	Of my hope and hers
Of him. Of that man	Of such a hero, <i>héros</i> , m.
To this house, <i>maison</i> , f.	To such heroes
To those animals, <i>animal</i> , m.	Of both. Of either
Those clocks, <i>horloge</i> , f.	Of neither. To both, pl.
Of their clocks and mine	Of some one. Some per-
To some (ones)	sons
To none. To neither, f.	Of no one. Of neither, f.
To nobody. Of either, f.	pl.
No condition, <i>état</i> , m.	Of no body. To neither,
His tulips and thine, <i>tulipe</i> , f.	m. pl.
Your cousins and ours,	To either, pl. f. To both,
<i>cousin</i> , m.	pl. f.

EXAMINATION ON THE PRONOUNS.

What is the first person *I* in French? Is *me* the same?
 What is *to me*? What does *il* signify besides *he*? Does *elle*
she signify the same? What is *to us* in French? Is the
 French for *to you* the same as that for *you*? Is *ils* always the
 French for *they*? If in speaking of books, what is *they*?
 But if we speak of *ladies*, what is *they*? If we speak of

pens ought we to use *ils* or *elles* for they? Is there any thing in the third person accusative like the article? Does the general rule for forming the plural of nouns apply to all the pronouns? What is the plural of *mon*? What is the plural of *votre*? And what is the plural of *vôtre*? Do the masculine pronouns in *t* form their feminine like masculine adjectives in *t*? Do masculine pronouns in *l* form their feminine like adjectives in *l*? How do masculine pronouns in *ien* form their feminine? How do the possessive pronouns *mon*, &c. change *on* for the feminine? What does *ton* make for the feminine? What does *son* make for the feminine? Is *votre* the same for both genders? What is the feminine of *l'un ou l'autre*? What is the French for the pronoun *some*?

EXERCISES ON THE PRONOUNS.

FIRST LESSON.

Si nous voulons être heureux, nous ne devons pas nous écarter du sentiers de la vertu. Ne jugez jamais sur les apparences, elles sont souvent trompeuses. Les femmes doivent être très-circonspectes, car une simple apparence de delit leur est quelquefois plus préjudiciable qu'une faute réelle. Excuser en soi les sottises qu'on ne peut excuser dans autrui, c'est aimer mieux être sot soi-même, que de voir les autres tels. C'est le goût qui choisit les expressions, qui les combine, les arrange et les varie de manière à ce qu'elles produisent le plus grand effet. Les hommes passent comme des fleurs qui s'épanouissent le matin, et qui le soir sont flétries et foulées aux pieds.

Si, if
voulons être, desire to be
ne devons pas, must not
écarter, deviate
sentier, path
ne jugez jamais, never judge
sur, from; *souvent*, often
trompeuse, deceitful
doivent, ought; *être*, to be

très, very; *car*, for
simple, mere; *delit*, crime
quelquefois, sometimes
préjudiciable, prejudicial
faute, fault; *réel*, real
excuser, to excuse
sottises, follies
qu'on ne peut, which one
 cannot; *dans*, in

<i>autrui</i> , others ; <i>c'est</i> , is	<i>effet</i> , effect
<i>aimer mieux être</i> , choosing	<i>les hommes</i> , men
rather to be ; <i>sot</i> , a fool	<i>passent</i> , pass away
<i>au lieu de voir</i> , than to see	<i>comme</i> , like ; <i>fleurs</i> , flowers
<i>et les autres</i> , others ; <i>tels</i> , so	<i>s'épanouissent</i> , open
<i>à son goût</i> , taste ; <i>qui</i> , which	<i>le matin</i> , in the morning
<i>il choisit</i> , selects	<i>le soir</i> , at night
<i>il combine</i> , combines ; <i>les</i> , them	<i>flétries</i> , withered
<i>de manière à ce qu'elles produisent</i> , so as to produce	<i>foulées aux pieds</i> , trodden under foot.

SECOND LESSON.

Le monde n'est qu'une grande famille, dont Dieu est le père. Tout dans l'univers s'altère et périt ; mais les écrits que le génie a dictés seront immortels. Les Alpes, sur le sommet desquelles l'œil étonné découvre des neiges et des glaces éternelles, présentent, au soleil couchant, le spectacle le plus imposant et le plus magnifique. Le bien que nous désirons se montre à nous et disparaît comme un vain songe qui s'évanouit à notre réveil, pour nous apprendre que les choses mêmes que nous croyons tenir dans nos mains peuvent nous échapper dans un instant. Ceux qui semblent être heureux ne le sont pas toujours. Chacun a ses défauts. La charité se rejouit du bonheur d'autrui.

<i>N'est que</i> , is but	<i>disparaît</i> , disappears
<i>famille</i> , family	<i>vain</i> , empty ; <i>songe</i> , dream
<i>tout</i> , every thing ; <i>dans</i> , in	<i>s'évanouit</i> , vanishes
<i>s'altère</i> , alters	<i>à notre réveil</i> , when we awake
<i>périt</i> , perishes ; <i>mais</i> , but	<i>pour apprendre (enseigner)</i> , to teach
<i>écrits</i> , writings ; <i>génie</i> , genius	<i>choses mêmes</i> , very things
<i>a dictés</i> , has dictated	<i>croyons</i> , think
<i>seront</i> , will be ; <i>sur</i> , on	<i>tenir</i> , we hold fast
<i>sommet</i> , summit ; <i>œil</i> , eye	<i>dans</i> , in ; <i>main</i> , f. hand
<i>étonné</i> , astonished	<i>peuvent nous échapper</i> , may slip away
<i>découvre</i> , discovers	<i>semblent</i> , appear
<i>neige</i> , snow ; <i>glaces</i> , ice	<i>être</i> , to be
<i>éternel</i> , perpetual	<i>ne le sont pas</i> , are not so
<i>présentent</i> , present	<i>défaut</i> , faults
<i>au soleil couchant</i> , at sun set	<i>se réjouit du</i> , rejoices in the
<i>bien</i> , good ; <i>désirons</i> , hope for	
<i>se montre</i> , presents itself	

THIRD LESSON.

La terre a deux mouvemens, l'un annuel, c'est celui par lequel elle décrit son orbite autour du soleil dans l'espace d'un an; alors sa vitesse, dans cette orbite, est de 68217 milles par heure, ou 1137 milles par minute; l'autre diurne, c'est le mouvement de sa rotation journalière sur elle-même; sa vitesse, dans ce mouvement, pour un point de sa surface à l'équateur, sera de 1042 milles par heure, ou 25020 milles par 24 heures.

La révolution diurne du ciel n'est qu'une illusion produite par la rotation de la terre; il est naturel de penser que la révolution annuelle du soleil emportant avec lui toutes les planètes, n'est pareillement qu'une illusion due au mouvement de la translation de la terre autour du soleil.—LAPLACE.

<i>A</i> , has ;	<i>mouvemens</i> , motions	<i>n'est que</i> , is only
<i>décrit</i> , describes		<i>produite</i> , produced
<i>autour</i> , round ;	<i>dans</i> , in	<i>de penser</i> , to think
<i>an</i> , year ;	<i>alors</i> , hence	<i>emportant</i> , carrying
<i>vitesse</i> , velocity ;	<i>ou</i> , or	<i>avec</i> , with ;
<i>diurne</i> , diurnal		<i>toutes</i> , all
<i>journalière</i> , daily		<i>planète</i> , planet
<i>sur elle-même</i> , upon its own		<i>n'est pareillement que</i> , is in
<i>axis</i>		<i>like manner only</i>
		<i>due</i> , owing

FOURTH LESSON.

On ne doit pas être juge dans sa propre cause. On se flatte souvent plus qu'on ne devrait. Quiconque a étudié les principes d'un art, sait que ce n'est qu'à la longue et par de profondes réflexions qu'il peut parvenir à se le rendre propre. Chacun devrait, pour son propre bonheur, n'écouter que la voix de la raison et de la vérité. Ne faites pas à autrui ce que vous ne voudriez pas qu'on vous fit. Je doute que rien ne soit plus propre à élever l'âme que

la contemplation des merveilles de la nature. Quelques talens que vous possédiez, quelques avantages que vous teniez de la nature et de l'éducation, de quelques perfections que vous soyez doués, ne vous attendez qu'aux suffrages d'un petit nombre d'hommes. Quelque génie qu'on ait, on ne peut sans application exceller en quoi que ce soit. Les magistrats doivent rendre la justice à tout le monde, même à leurs ennemis.

Ne doit pas, ought not
être, to be
propre, own
on se flatte souvent, we often
 flatter ourselves
devrait, ought, or should
a étudié, has studied
principes, principles
de, of; *sait*, knows
ce n'est que, it is only
à la longue, by length of time
par, by; *peut*, can
parvenir, succeed
à se le rendre propre, in
 attaining it
chacun, every one
devrait, should; *pour*, for
propre bonheur, own happiness
n'écouter que, listen only to
raison, reason
vérité, truth
ne faites pas, do not
ce que, what
ne voudriez pas, would not
 wish

qu'on fît, to be done
je doute, I doubt
que rien soit, whether any
 thing be
plus propre, better calculated
à élever, to exalt; *que*, than
merveilles, wonders
de la, of
quelques, whatever
possédiez, may possess
teniez de, may have received
 from
de quelques, with whatever
soyez doués, may be endowed
ne vous attendez qu'aux suf-
 frages, expect the appro-
 bation but
d'un petit nombre d'hommes,
 of few
génie, genius
qu'on ait, we may have
on ne peut, we cannot
quoi que ce soit, any thing
doivent, ought
rendre, to render
même, even

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>		<i>Comp. of the Present.</i>	
<i>Que, that</i>		<i>Que, that</i>	
Singular	1. <i>J'aie</i> , I may have	<i>J'aie eu</i> , I may have had	
	2. <i>tu aies</i> , thou mayst have	<i>tu aies eu</i> , thou mayst have had	
	3. <i>il ait</i> , he may have	<i>il ait eu</i> , he may have had	
Plural	1. <i>Nous ayons</i> , we may have	<i>Nous ayons eu</i> , we may have had	
	2. <i>vous ayez</i> , you may have	<i>vous ayez eu</i> , you may have had	
	3. <i>ils aient</i> , they may have	<i>ils aient eu</i> , they may have had	
<i>Preterite.</i>		<i>Comp. of the Preterite.</i>	
Singular	1. <i>J'eusse</i> , I might have	<i>J'eusse eu</i> , I might have had	
	2. <i>tu eusses</i> , thou mightest have	<i>tu eusses eu</i> , thou mightest have had	
	3. <i>il eût</i> , he might have	<i>il eût eu</i> , he might have had	
Plural	1. <i>Nous eussions</i> , we might have	<i>Nous eussions eu</i> , we might have had	
	2. <i>vous eussiez</i> , you might have	<i>vous eussiez eu</i> , you might have had	
	3. <i>ils eussent</i> , they might have	<i>ils eussent eu</i> , they might have had	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1.	<i>Ayons</i> , let us have
2. <i>aie</i> , have, or have thou	<i>ayez</i> , have, or have you
3. { <i>qu'il ait</i> , let him have	<i>qu'ils</i> , ou <i>qu'elles aient</i> , let
{ <i>qu'elle ait</i> , let her have	them have

* *Note.* Properly speaking, all verbs in the imperative mood are of the second person; although grammarians have generally introduced three persons.

Conjugation of the Auxiliary Verb ÊTRE, TO BE.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Præterite.</i>
<i>Être, to be</i>	<i>Avoir été, to have been</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Compound.</i>
<i>Étant, being</i>	<i>Été, been</i>	<i>Ayant été, having been</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Comp. of the Present.</i>
<i>Singular</i> 1. <i>Je suis, I am</i> 2. <i>tu es, thou art</i> 3. <i>il, ou elle est, he or she is</i>	<i>J'ai été, I have been</i> <i>tu as été, thou hast been</i> <i>il, ou elle a été, he or she has been</i>
<i>Plural</i> 1. <i>Nous sommes, we are</i> 2. <i>vous êtes, you are</i> 3. <i>ils, ou elles sont, they are</i>	<i>Nous avons été, we have been</i> <i>vous avez été, you have been</i> <i>ils ont été, they have been</i>

<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Comp. of the Imp.</i>
<i>Singular</i> 1. <i>J'étais, I was</i> 2. <i>tu étais, thou wast</i> 3. <i>il était, he was</i>	<i>J'avais été, I had been</i> <i>tu avais été, thou hadst been</i> <i>il avait été, he had been</i>
<i>Plural</i> 1. <i>Nous étions, we were</i> 2. <i>vous étiez, you were</i> 3. <i>ils étaient, they were</i>	<i>Nous avions été, we had been</i> <i>vous aviez été, you had been</i> <i>ils avaient été, they had been</i>

<i>Præterite.</i>	<i>Comp. of the Pret.</i>
<i>Singular</i> 1. <i>Je fus, I was</i> 2. <i>tu fus, thou wast</i> 3. <i>il fut, he was</i>	<i>J'eus été, I had been</i> <i>tu eus été, thou hadst been</i> <i>il eut été, he had been</i>
<i>Plural</i> 1. <i>Nous fûmes, we were</i> 2. <i>vous fûtes, you were</i> 3. <i>ils furent, they were</i>	<i>Nous eûmes été, we had been</i> <i>vous eûtes été, you had been</i> <i>ils eurent été, they had been</i>

Future.

- Singular*
1. *Je serai*, I shall be
 2. *tu seras*, thou wilt be
 3. *il sera*, he will be
- Plural*
1. *Nous serons*, we shall be
 2. *vous serez*, you will be
 3. *ils seront*, they will be

Comp. of the Future.

- J'aurai été*, I shall have been
- tu auras été*, thou wilt have been
- il aura été*, he will have been
- Nous aurons été*, we shall have been
- vous aurez été*, you will have been
- ils auront été*, they will have been

Conditional.

- Singular*
1. *Je serais*, I should be
 2. *tu serais*, thou wouldst be
 3. *il serait*, he would be
- Plural*
1. *Nous serions*, we should be
 2. *vous seriez*, you would be
 3. *ils seraient*, they would be

Comp. of the Condit.

- J'aurais été*, I should have been
- tu aurais été*, thou wouldst have been
- il aurait été*, he would have been
- Nous aurions été*, we should have been
- vous auriez été*, you would have been
- ils auraient été*, they would have been

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

- Que, that*
- Singular*
1. *Je sois*, I may be
 2. *tu sois*, thou mayest be
 3. *il soit*, he may be
- Plural*
1. *Nous soyons*, we may be
 2. *vous soyez*, you may be
 3. *ils soient*, they may be

Comp. of the Pres.

- Que, that*
- J'aie été*, I may have been
- tu aies été*, thou mayest have been
- il ait été*, he may have been
- Nous ayons été*, we may have been
- vous ayez été*, you may have been
- ils aient été*, they may have been

Preterite.

Comp. of the Pret.

	<i>Que, that</i>	<i>Que, that</i>
Singular	1. <i>Je fusse</i> , I might be	<i>J'eusse été</i> , I might have been
	2. <i>tu fusses</i> , thou mightest be	<i>tu eusses été</i> , thou mightest have been
	3. <i>il fût</i> , he might be	<i>il eût été</i> , he might have been
Plural	1. <i>Nous fussions</i> , we might be	<i>Nous eussions été</i> , we might have been
	2. <i>vous fussiez</i> , you might be	<i>vous eussiez été</i> , you might have been
	3. <i>ils fussent</i> , they might be	<i>ils eussent été</i> , they might have been

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Plural.

1.	<i>Soyons</i> , let us be
2. <i>Sois</i> , be, or be <i>thou</i>	<i>soyez</i> , be (you), or do you be
3. { <i>qu'il soit</i> , let him be	<i>qu'ils</i> or <i>qu'elles soient</i> , let them be
{ <i>qu'elle soit</i> , let her be	

The auxiliaries may be conjugated in three other forms ; viz. interrogatively, negatively, and interrogatively negatively ; as,

<i>Interrogatively.</i>	<i>Negatively.</i>	<i>Interrog. Neg.</i>
<i>Avoir</i> , to have		
<i> Ai-je ?</i> have I ?	<i>Je n'ai pas</i> , I have not	<i>N'ai-je pas ?</i> have I not ?
<i>avais-je ?</i> had I ?	<i>je n'avais pas</i> , I had not	<i>n'avais-je pas ?</i> had I not ?
<i>eus-je ?</i> had I ?	<i>je n'eus pas</i> , I had not	<i>n'eus-je pas ?</i> had I not ?
<i>aurai-je ?</i> shall I have ?	<i>je n'aurai pas</i> , I shall not have	<i>n'aurai-je pas ?</i> shall I not have ?
<i>aurais-je ?</i> should I have ?	<i>je n'aurais pas</i> , I should not have	<i>n'aurais-je pas ?</i> should I not have ?

<i>Interrogatively.</i>	<i>Negatively.</i>	<i>Interrog. Neg.</i>
<i>Être</i> , to be		
<i>Suis-je ?</i> am I ?	<i>Je ne suis pas</i> , I am not	* <i>Nesuis-je pas ?</i> am I not ?
<i>étais-je ?</i> was I ?	<i>je n'étais pas</i> , I was not	<i>n'étais-je pas ?</i> was I not ?
<i>fus-je ?</i> was I ?	<i>je ne fus pas</i> , I was not	<i>ne fus-je pas ?</i> was I not ?
<i>serai-je ?</i> shall I be ?	<i>je ne serai pas</i> , I shall not be	<i>ne serai-je pas ?</i> shall I not be ?
<i>serais-je ?</i> should I be ?	<i>je ne serais pas</i> , I should not be	<i>ne serais-je pas ?</i> should I not be ?

So conjugate all the other persons, moods and tenses, simple and compound, except the infinitive, participles, subjunctive, and imperative, which do not admit of the interrogative form.

The hyphen (-) is always placed between the verb and the pronoun in the interrogative form ; and when the verb ends with a vowel, a (-t-) is placed between the verb and the pronoun of the third person singular ; as, *a-t-elle ?* has she ? *n'a-t-elle pas été ?* has she not been ? *sera-t-il ?* will he be ? *n'aura-t-il pas eu ?* will he not have had ?

Practice on Avoir.

Pres. Ind. Have I ? Have I not ? I have not. Hast thou not ? He has not. We have not. Have you ? They have. Have they not ?

Imp. I had. Had I not ? Hadst thou not ? He had not. We had not. Had you not ? They had not. Had they not ?

Pres. Had I ? I had not. Hadst thou not ? He had. He had not. Had he not ? We had. Had you ? Had they not ?

* *Obs.* 1. *Ne* and *pas* correspond to the English word *not*, the *ne*, or *n'* before a vowel, is generally put before the verb, and *pas* after.

† 2. In asking questions, *est-ce que* (is that that) is frequently used ; as, *est-ce que je fus ?* was I ? (not *fus-je ?*) but we can say with propriety, either *fus-il ?* was he ? or *est-ce qu'il fut ?* was he ?

Fut. I shall have. Shall I have? Wilt thou have? Thou wilt have. Wilt thou not have? He will have. Will she have? We shall have. You will have. They will have.

Condit. I should have. Should I have? Should I not have. I should not have. Would she not have? He would have. Would he have? We should not have. Would you not have? They would not have.

Pres. Subj. I may have. He may have. She may not have. We may have. You may have. They may not have.

Pret. I might have. He might have. We might not have. You might not have. They might not have.

Imper. Have (thou)? Let us not have. Have (you). Let them have. Let them not have.

Practice on the Compound Tenses of Avoir.

Pres. Ind. Have I not had (some) old friends? Has she not had (some) old friends? Have they had (some) money?

Imperf. I had not had the finest houses. Had they not had the happiest moments? We had had (some) happy opportunities. They had not had (some) prettier birds.

Pret. She had had (some) fine eyes. He had had (some) great ancestors. Had they not had (some) good pens?

Fut. Will he not have had an old coat? She will not have had (some) jewels. You will not have had (some) nuts. Will they not have had (some) old fashions?

Cond. Should I not have had (some) large curtains? We should not have had (some) fine carpets. Should we not have had the last place? Would they not have had (some) genteel manners?

Pres. Subj. I may have had (some) horses. She may have had the prettiest hat. They may have had (some) false news. They may not have had (some) little children.

Pret. I might not have had a more delightful situation. She might have had a foolish hope. They might have had (some) new hats.

Obs. The words in French must follow each other, in the order as they stand underneath :

Old, <i>ancien</i> ; friend, <i>ami</i> , m.	large, <i>grand</i>
money, <i>argent</i> , m.	curtain, <i>rideau</i> , m.
fine, <i>beau</i> ; house, <i>maison</i> , f.	fine, <i>beau</i> ; carpet, <i>tapis</i> , m.
happy, <i>heureux</i>	last, <i>dernier</i> ; place, <i>place</i> , f.
moment, <i>moment</i> , m.	manner, <i>manière</i> , f.
opportunity, <i>occasion</i> , f.	genteel, <i>galant</i>
pretty, <i>joli</i> ; bird, <i>oiseau</i> , m.	horse, <i>cheval</i> , m.
fine, <i>bel</i> ; eye, <i>œil</i> , m.	pretty, <i>joli</i> ; hat, <i>chapeau</i> , m.
great, <i>grand</i>	false, <i>faux</i>
ancestor, <i>aïeul</i> , m.	news, <i>nouvelles</i> , f.
good, <i>bon</i> ; pen, <i>plume</i> , f.	little, <i>petit</i> ; child, <i>enfant</i> , m.
old, <i>vieil</i> ; coat, <i>habit</i> , m.	delightful, <i>agréable</i>
jewel, <i>bijou</i> , m.	situation, <i>situation</i> , f.
nut, <i>noix</i> , f.	foolish, <i>fol</i> ; hope, <i>espoir</i> , m.
old, <i>vieil</i> ; fashion, <i>mode</i> , f.	new, <i>neuf</i> .

EXERCISES ON AVOIR.

FIRST LESSON.

J'ai une bonne plume. Tu as de bons amis. Elle a des maisons. A-t-il de beaux tableaux ? N'a-t-il pas un chien ? N'avez-vous pas une épingle ? Nous n'avons pas des oranges. Vous n'avez pas un bon canif. Elles ont de l'argent. Il n'a pas* d'argent. Elle n'a point* d'argent. Ont-ils de l'argent ? J'avais des poires et des oranges. N'avait-il pas beaucoup d'amis ? Nous n'avons pas eu de prudence. N'avez-vous pas eu de bons livres ? Ils ont eu

* The negatives *pas* and *point*, are not always used indifferently, the one for the other. The first, in some instances, denies only in part, and the latter denies absolutely. Hence we should say, je n'ai *pas* de l'argent sur moi, I have *not any money* about me ; and je n'ai *point* d'argent du tout, I have *no money* at all. *Pas* originally meant a *step*, and *point*, a *point*. Je n'irai *point*, I will not go, signifies je ne feral un *pas* pour y aller ; je ne m'avancerai d'un *point*, I will not make a *step* to go there ; I will not advance from a *point*. Je ne veux *pas*, ou *point*, I will not, that is, je ne veux cela même de la longueur d'un *pas*, ni de la grosseur d'un *point*, I will not even take the length of a *step*, nor the magnitude of a *point* [*Vide Gram. par Du Marsais, tome second, p. 18*].

du plaisir. Vous n'aviez pas eu de l'argent comptant. J'eus de bonnes maisons. Vous n'eûtes point d'or. N'eûtes-nous pas un chien? N'aviez-vous pas eu une récompense? N'eurent-ils pas de l'or. Elles n'eurent pas eu de jolis ciseaux. N'avaient-ils pas eu de meilleures chaises?

<i>Chien</i> , m. dog; <i>épingle</i> , f. pin	<i>plaisir</i> , m. pleasure
<i>canif</i> , m. pen-knife	<i>argent comptant</i> , ready money
<i>poire</i> , f. pear; <i>de</i> , any	<i>jolis ciseaux</i> , m. pretty scissors
<i>beaucoup</i> , many	<i>chaise</i> , f. chair

SECOND LESSON.

Aurai-je des gants? Tu n'auras pas des souliers. J'aurais de belles gravures. Elles n'auraient pas eu de jolies maisons. J'aurais eu plus de plaisir. Tu aurais eu beaucoup d'avantage sur lui. Ils auraient eu bien des ennemis. Aie du courage et de la fermeté. N'aurions-nous pas eu bien des amis. Ayez des mœurs et de la conduite. Qu'il ait de la complaisance et de la politesse. Qu'elle n'ait pas eu de beaux yeux. Ayons de belles prairies et des bosquets délicieux. Qu'elles aient des manières plus prévenantes. Que j'eusse des domestiques zélés et fidèles. Que tu n'eusses pas eu des bijoux précieux. Qu'il eût eu de la grandeur d'âme. Que nous ayons eu des juges éclairés. Que nous n'eussions pas eu une épée, un fusil et des pistolets.

<i>Gant</i> , m. glove	<i>prairie</i> , f. meadow
<i>soulier</i> , m. shoe	<i>bosquet</i> , m. grove
<i>gravure</i> , f. engraving	<i>manière</i> , f. manner
<i>beaucoup de</i> , much	<i>prévenant</i> , prepossessing
<i>sur</i> , over	<i>zélu</i> , zealous; <i>fidèle</i> , faithful
<i>bien des</i> , many	<i>juge</i> , m. judge
<i>fermeté</i> , f. firmness	<i>éclairé</i> , enlightened
<i>mœurs</i> , f. manners	<i>épée</i> , f. sword
<i>conduite</i> , conduct	<i>fusil</i> , m. musket
<i>politesse</i> , politeness	<i>pistolet</i> , m. pistol

Practice on Etre.

Pr. Ind. Am I? I am not. Thou art not. Is he not? We are. Are you not? Are they? They are not. She is not.

Imp. Was I? Was I not? Thou wast not. Was he not? Were we not? You were not. Were they not? They were.

Pret. I was. Was I not? Thou wast not. He was not. Was he not? Were we not? You were not. Were they?

Fut. I shall not be. Shall I not be? We shall be. Shall we not be? She will not be. Will they not be?

Cond. I should not be. Wouldst thou not be? He would be. Would she not be? We should not be. Should we be?

Pr. Subj. I may be. Thou may'st not be. He may be. We may not be. You may not be. They may be.

Pret. I might be. She might not be. He might be. You might not be. We might not be. They might not be.

Imper. Be (*thou*). Let us be. Be (*you*). Let her be. Let them not be.

Practice on the Compound Tenses of Être.

Obs. Although we have given the masculine adjectives in the following practice, yet, they must always agree with the nouns or pronouns preceding the verbs, in gender and number; thus, he is good, *il est bon*; she is good, *elle est bonne*; they are good, *ils sont bons*; they are good, *elles sont bonnes*; he is active, *il est actif*; she is active, *elle est active*; he has been happy, *il a été heureux*; she has been happy, *elle a été heureuse*.

Pres. Ind. I, *m.* have been prudent, *prudent*. I, *f.* have been prudent, *prudent*. They, *f.* have been honest, *honnête*. These trees, *m.* have not been large, *grand*. The horses, *m.* have not been fine, *beau*. These apples, *f.* have been good, *bon*.

Imperf. Had I, *m.* not been happy, *heureux*? I, *f.* had not been good, *bon*. She had been vicious, *vicieux*. Had she not been jealous, *jalous*? It, *f.* had not been benign,

bénin. We, *f.* had not been idle, *oisif*. You, *f.* had not been quick, *vif*. Had you, *m.* not been pensive, *pensif*? They, *f.* had not been short, *bref*. Had they not been active, *actif*?

Pret. Had I, *f.* not been attentive, *attentif*? Thou, *m.* hadst been flattering, *flatteur*. It, *f.* had been dangerous, *dangereux*. Had it, *f.* not been long, *long*? She had been virtuous, *vertueux*. We, *m.* had not been curious, *curieux*. Had you, *m.* been quarrelsome, *querelleur*? Had they, *f.* not been foolish, *sot*? They, *m.* had been soft, *mol*.

Fut. Shall I, *f.* not have been generous, *généreux*? Thou, *m.* wilt not have been idle, *paresseux*. Will it, *f.* not have been uneven, *inégal*? You, *f.* will have been amiable, *aimable*. Will they *m.* not have been young, *jeune*

Condit. Should I, *f.* not have been mortal, *mortel*? Wouldest thou, *m.* have been criminal, *criminel*? It, *f.* would have been thick, *épais*. Would it, *f.* have been mutual, *mutuel*? Should we, *m.* not have been ingenious, *ingénieux*? Would they, *f.* have been false, *faux*?

Pres. Subj. I, *f.* may have been ready, *prêt*? Thou, *f.* mayest not have been prudent, *prudent*. She may have been ugly, *laid*. He may not have been ungrateful, *ingrat*. We, *f.* may have been diligent, *diligent*. They may, *m.* not have been brown, *brun*.

Pret. I, *f.* might have been sincere, *sincère*. Thou, *f.* mightest have been public, *public*. She might not have been false. It, *f.* might have been fresh, *frais*. We, *f.* might have been frugal, *économe*. They, *m.* might have been vigorous, *vigoureux*.

Obs. The pronouns may be masculine or feminine, depending upon whom or what they refer to; for example, a male person would say, *je suis heureux*, I am happy; and a female would say, *je suis heureuse*, I am happy. Also, if we speak of books and say, *they are good*, we must say in French, *ils sont bons*; but if we speak of pens and say *they are good*, we must say, *elles sont bonnes*.

EXERCISES ON ÊTRE.

FIRST LESSON.

Je suis bien aise de vous voir. Elle est réellement aimable. Ces arbres sont très beaux. Ces framboises ne sont pas belles. Ne sommes-nous pas constans ? Elles sont constantes. Ne sont-ils pas complaisantes ? N'êtes-vous pas studieux ? N'était-elle pas studieuse ? Etiez-vous très-insouciant ? Elles étaient vaines et frivoles. Je fus trop occupé. Ne fut-elle pas jalouse ? Ne fûmes-nous pas très-malheureux. Ils ne furent pas suffisamment appliqués. Fûtes-vous imprudentes ? Ne furent-elles pas jolies ? Je serai chez nous jusqu'à midi. Mon père sera chez lui ce soir. Ne serez-vous pas chez vous demain ? Ils seront chez Monsieur

Bien aise, very glad ; *de*, to
voir, see
réellement, really
très, very
framboises, f. raspberries
complaisant, condescending
insouciant, indifferent
frivole, frivolous
trop, too ; *occupé*, busy
malheureux, unhappy

suffisamment, sufficiently
appliqués, attentive
chez nous, at home
jusqu'à midi, till twelve
o'clock, or till noon
chez lui, at home
soir, evening
chez vous, at home
demain, to-morrow
chez Monsieur, at Mr.

SECOND LESSON.

Tu ne serais pas si téméraire. Ne sera-t-il pas plus désintéressé ? Elle ne serait pas trop généreuse. Vous ne seriez pas fantastiques. Ne serions-nous pas sages ? Ils ne seraient pas malhonnêtes. Sois libéral, mais avec discrétion. Soyons économes et sobres. Soyez équitables, humains et prudents. J'espère que je serai plus prudent à l'avenir. Que nous soyons plus habiles. Que vous soyez moins entêtés. Qu'il soit plus raisonnable. Qu'elles

soient belles. Que nous fussions humains et généreux. Que vous fussiez humaines et généreuses. Que nous fussions plus circonspects. Qu'elle ne fût pas craintive. Qu'elles fussent plus attentives à leur devoir. Qu'ils ne fussent pas victorieux.

Si, so; *téméraire*, rash
plus, more
désintéressé, disinterested
trop, too
fantastique, whimsical
malhonnêtes, uncivil
mais, but; *avec*, with
économe, saving

sobre, temperate
à l'avenir, for the future
habile, skilful; *moins*, less
entêté, conceited
circonspect, circumspect
craintive, fearful
à leur devoir, to their duty
victorieux, victorious

REGULAR VERBS.

There are four conjugations of regular verbs known by the terminations of their infinitives; as,

1. er; as, *parler*, to speak
2. ir . . . *bâtir*, to build
3. oir . . . *recevoir*, to receive
4. re . . . *vendre*, to sell

MODEL OF THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Parler, to speak.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Preterite.

Parler, to speak

Avoir parlé, to have spoken.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

Past.

Compound.

Parlant, speaking *Parlé*, spoken *Ayant parlé*, having spoken

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Comp. of the Present.*

- | | | |
|----------|--|---|
| Singular | 1. <i>Je parle</i> , I speak, I do speak, or I am speaking | <i>J'ai parlé</i> , I have spoken |
| | 2. <i>tu parles</i> , thou speakest, dost speak, or art speaking | <i>tu as parlé</i> , thou hast spoken |
| | 3. <i>il, ou elle parle</i> , he or she speaks, does speak, or is speaking | <i>il a parlé</i> , he has spoken
<i>elle a parlé</i> , she has spoken |
| Plural | 1. <i>Nous parlons</i> , we speak, do speak, or are speaking | <i>Nous avons parlé</i> , we have spoken |
| | 2. <i>vous parlez</i> , you speak, do speak, or are speaking | <i>vous avez parlé</i> , you have spoken |
| | 3. <i>ils, ou elles parlent</i> , they speak, do speak, or are speaking | <i>ils, ou elles ont parlé</i> , they have spoken |

*Imperfect.**Comp. of the Imp.*

- | | | |
|----------|--|--|
| Singular | 1. <i>Je parlais</i> , I spoke, did speak, or was speaking | <i>J'avais parlé</i> , I had spoken |
| | 2. <i>tu parlais</i> , thou spokest, didst speak, or wast speaking | <i>tu avais parlé</i> , thou hadst spoken |
| | 3. <i>il parlait</i> , he spoke, did speak, or was speaking | <i>il avait parlé</i> , he had spoken |
| Plural | 1. <i>Nous parlions</i> , we spoke, did speak, or were speaking | <i>Nous avions parlé</i> , we had spoken |
| | 2. <i>vous parliez</i> , you spoke, did speak, or werespeaking | <i>vous aviez parlé</i> , you had spoken |
| | 3. <i>ils parlaient</i> , they spoke, did speak, or were speaking | <i>ils avaient parlé</i> , they had spoken |

	<i>Preterite.</i>	<i>Comp. of the Pret.</i>
Singular	1. <i>Je parlai</i> , I spoke, or did speak	<i>J'eus parlé</i> , I had spoken
	2. <i>tu parlas</i> , thou spokest, or didst speak	<i>tu eus parlé</i> , thou hadst spoken
	3. <i>il parla</i> , he spoke, or did speak	<i>il eut parlé</i> , he had spoken
Plural	1. <i>Nous parlâmes</i> , we spoke, or did speak	<i>Nous eûmes parlé</i> , we had spoken
	2. <i>vous parlâtes</i> , you spoke, or did speak	<i>vous eûtes parlé</i> , you had spoken
	3. <i>ils parlèrent</i> , they spoke, or did speak	<i>ils eurent parlé</i> , they had spoken
	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Comp. of the Future.</i>
Singular	1. <i>Je parlerai</i> , I shall speak	<i>J'aurai parlé</i> , I shall have spoken
	2. <i>tu parleras</i> , thou wilt speak	<i>tu auras parlé</i> , thou wilt have spoken
	3. <i>il parlera</i> , he will speak	<i>il aura parlé</i> , he will have spoken
Plural	1. <i>Nous parlerons</i> , we shall speak	<i>Nous aurons parlé</i> , we shall have spoken
	2. <i>vous parlerez</i> , you will speak	<i>vous aurez parlé</i> , you will have spoken
	3. <i>ils parleront</i> , they will speak	<i>ils auront parlé</i> , they will have spoken
	<i>Conditional.</i>	<i>Comp. of the Conditional.</i>
Singular	1. <i>Je parlerais</i> , I should speak	<i>J'aurais parlé</i> , I should have spoken
	2. <i>tu parlerais</i> , thou wouldst speak	<i>tu aurais parlé</i> , thou wouldst have spoken
	3. <i>il parlerait</i> , he would speak	<i>il aurait parlé</i> , he would have spoken
Plural	1. <i>Nous parlerions</i> , we should speak	<i>Nous aurions parlé</i> , we should have spoken
	2. <i>vous parleriez</i> , you would speak	<i>vous auriez parlé</i> , you would have spoken
	3. <i>ils parleraient</i> , they would speak	<i>ils auraient parlé</i> , they would have spoken

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que, that

- Singular
1. *Je parle*, I may speak
 2. *tu parles*, thou mayest or mayst speak
 3. *il parle*, he may speak

- Plural
1. *Nous parlions*, we may speak
 2. *vous parliez*, you may speak
 3. *ils parlent*, they may speak

Comp. of the Present.

Que, that

- Singular
1. *J'ai parlé*, I may have spoken
 2. *tu as parlé*, thou mayest have spoken
 3. *il ait parlé*, he may have spoken

- Plural
1. *Nous ayons parlé*, we may have spoken
 2. *vous avez parlé*, you may have spoken
 3. *ils aient parlé*, they may have spoken

Preterite.

- Singular
1. *Je parlasse*, I might or should speak
 2. *tu parlasses*, thou mightest or mightst speak
 3. *il parlât*, he might speak

- Plural
1. *Nous parlussions*, we might speak
 2. *vous parlassiez*, you might speak
 3. *ils parlassent*, they might speak

Comp. of the Pret.

- Singular
1. *J'eusse parlé*, I might have spoken
 2. *tu eusses parlé*, thou mightest have spoken
 3. *il eût parlé*, he might have spoken

- Plural
1. *Nous eussions parlé*, we might have spoken
 2. *vous eussiez parlé*, you might have spoken
 3. *ils eussent parlé*, they might have spoken

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

1.
2. *Parle*, speak, or speak thou
3. { *qu'il parle*, let him speak
qu'elle parle, let her speak

Plural.

1. *Parlons*, let us speak
2. *parlez*, speak, or do you speak
3. *qu'ils ou qu'elles parlent*, let them speak

So conjugate *donner*, to give; *aimer*, to love; *éviter*, to avoid; *cacher*, to conceal, &c. There are more than 2700 verbs in *er* conjugated after this model.

MODEL OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Bâtir, to build.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterite.</i>
<i>Bâtir</i> , to build	<i>Avoir bâti</i> , to have built.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Compound.</i>
<i>Bâtant</i> , building	<i>Bâti</i> , built	<i>Ayant bâti</i> , having built.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Je bâtis</i> , I build	<i>Nous bâtissons</i> , we build
2. <i>tu bâtis</i> , thou buildest	<i>vous bâtissez</i> , you build
3. <i>il bâtit</i> , he builds	<i>ils bâtissent</i> , they build

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Je bâtissais</i> , I did build	<i>Nous bâtissions</i> , we did build
2. <i>tu bâtissais</i> , thou didst build	<i>vous bâtissiez</i> , you did build
3. <i>il bâtissait</i> , he did build	<i>ils bâtissaient</i> , they did build

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Je bâtis</i> , I built	<i>Nous bâtîmes</i> , we built
2. <i>tu bâtis</i> , thou builtest	<i>vous bâtîtes</i> , you built
3. <i>il bâtit</i> , he built	<i>ils bâtirent</i> , they built

Future.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1. <i>Je bâtirai</i> , I shall build	<i>Nous bâtirons</i> , we shall build
2. <i>tu bâtiras</i> , thou wilt build	<i>vous bâtirez</i> , you will build
3. <i>il bâtitra</i> , he will build	<i>ils bâtiront</i> , they will build

Conditional.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. <i>Je bâtirais</i> , I should or
would build | <i>Nous bâtirions</i> , we should or
would build |
| 2. <i>tu bâtirais</i> , thou wouldst
build | <i>vous bâtiriez</i> , you would
build |
| 3. <i>il bâtirait</i> , he would build | <i>ils bâtiraient</i> , they would build |

COMPOUND TENSES.

Comp. of the Pres. *J'ai bâti*, I have builtComp. of the Imp. *J'avais bâti*, I had builtComp. of the Pret. *J'eus bâti*, I had builtComp. of the Fut. *J'aurai bâti*, I shall have builtComp. of the Cond. *J'aurais bâti*, I should have built

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

Que, that

- | | |
|--|---------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Je bâtisse</i> , I may build | <i>Nous bâtissions</i> , we may build |
| 2. <i>tu bâtisses</i> , thou mayest
build | <i>vous bâtissiez</i> , you may build |
| 3. <i>il bâtisse</i> , he may build | <i>ils bâtissent</i> , they may build |

Preterite.

Singular.

Plural.

Que, that

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Je bâtisse</i> , I might build | <i>Nous bâtissions</i> , we might
build |
| 2. <i>tu bâtisses</i> , thou mightest
build | <i>vous bâtissiez</i> , you might
build |
| 3. <i>il bâtisse</i> , he might build | <i>ils bâtissent</i> , they might build |

COMPOUND TENSES.

Comp. of the Pres. *Que j'aie bâti*, that I may have builtComp. of the Pret. *Que j'eusse bâti*, that I might have built

IMPERATIVE . MOOD.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. | <i>Bâtissons</i> , let us build |
| 2. <i>Bâtis</i> , build (<i>thou</i>) | <i>bâtissez</i> , build (<i>you</i>) |
| 3. { <i>qu'il bâtisse</i> , let him build | <i>qu'ils, ou qu'elles bâtissent</i> , let |
| { <i>qu'elle bâtisse</i> , let her build | them build |

So conjugate *punir*, to punish ; *agir*, to act ; *abolir*, to abolish, &c. There are about 200 verbs of this conjugation in *nir, gir, cir, &c.*

MODEL OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Recevoir, to receive.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Preterite.

Recevoir,* to receive *Avoir reçu*, to have received.

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

Past.

Compound.

Recevant, receiving *Reçu*, received *Ayant reçu*, having received.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Je reçois</i> , I receive | <i>Nous recevons</i> , we receive |
| 2. <i>tu reçois</i> , thou receivest | <i>vous recevez</i> , you receive |
| 3. <i>il reçoit</i> , he receives | <i>ils reçoivent</i> , they receive |

Imperfect.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Je recevais</i> , I did receive | <i>Nous recevions</i> , we did receive |
| 2. <i>tu recevais</i> , thou didst receive | <i>vous receviez</i> , you did receive |
| 3. <i>il recevait</i> , he did receive | <i>ils recevaient</i> , they did receive |

* *Obs.* The *cedilla* is not put under the *c* when it is immediately followed by *e* mute.

*Preterite.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Je reçus</i> , I received | <i>Nous reçûmes</i> , we received |
| 2. <i>tu reçus</i> , thou receivedst | <i>vous reçûtes</i> , you received |
| 3. <i>il reçut</i> , he received | <i>ils reçurent</i> , they received |

*Future.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Je recevrai</i> , I shall receive | <i>Nous recevrons</i> , we shall receive |
| 2. <i>tu recevras</i> , thou wilt receive | <i>vous recevrez</i> , you will receive |
| 3. <i>il recevra</i> , he will receive | <i>ils recevront</i> , they will receive |

*Conditional.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| 1. <i>Je recevrais</i> , I should or would receive | <i>Nous recevriions</i> , we should or would receive |
| 2. <i>tu recevrais</i> , thou wouldst receive | <i>vous recevriez</i> , you would receive |
| 3. <i>il recevrait</i> , he would receive | <i>ils recevraient</i> , they would receive |

COMPOUND TENSES.

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| Comp. of the Pres. | <i>J'ai reçu</i> , I have received |
| Comp. of the Imp. | <i>J'avais reçu</i> , I had received |
| Comp. of the Pret. | <i>J'eus reçu</i> , I had received |
| Comp. of the Fut. | <i>J'aurai reçu</i> , I shall have received |
| Comp. of the Cond. | <i>J'aurais reçu</i> , I should have received |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|---|---|
| <i>Que, that</i> | |
| 1. <i>Je reçoive</i> , I may receive | <i>Nous recevions</i> , we may receive |
| 2. <i>tu reçoives</i> , thou mayest receive | <i>vous receviez</i> , you may receive |
| 3. <i>il reçoive</i> , he may receive | <i>ils reçoivent</i> , they may receive |

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Preterite.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1.	<i>Je reçusse</i> , I might receive	<i>Nous reçussions</i> , we might receive	
2.	<i>tu reçusses</i> , thou mightest receive	<i>vous reçussiez</i> , you might receive	
3.	<i>il reçût</i> , he might receive	<i>ils reçussent</i> , they might receive	

COMPOUND TENSES.

Comp. of the Pres. *Que j'aie reçu*, that I may have received

Comp. of the Pret. *Que j'eusse reçu*, that I might have received

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
1.	. . . . .	<i>Recevons</i> , let us receive
2.	<i>Reçois</i> , receive (<i>thou</i>)	<i>recevez</i> , receive (<i>you</i>)
3.	<i>qu'il</i> , ou <i>qu'elle</i> <i>reçoive</i> , let him or her receive	<i>qu'ils</i> , ou <i>qu'elles</i> <i>reçoivent</i> , let them receive

So conjugate *concevoir*, to conceive ; *devoir*, to owe, &c.
There are only seven regular verbs of this conjugation.

MODEL OF THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Vendre, to sell.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Preterite.</i>
<i>Vendre</i> , to sell	<i>Avoir vendu</i> , to have sold.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present.</i>	<i>Past.</i>	<i>Compound.</i>
<i>Vendant</i> , selling	<i>Vendu</i> , sold	<i>Ayant vendu</i> , having sold.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Singular.*

1. *Je vends*, I sell
2. *tu vends*, thou sellest
3. *il vend*, he sells

Plural.

- Nous vendons*, we sell
- vous vendez*, you sell
- ils vendent*, they sell

*Imperfect.**Singular.*

1. *Je vendais*, I did sell
2. *tu vendais*, thou didst sell
3. *il vendait*, he did sell

Plural.

- Nous vendions*, we did sell
- vous vendiez*, you did sell
- ils vendaient*, they did sell

*Preterite.**Singular.*

1. *Je vendis*, I sold
2. *tu vendis*, thou soldest
3. *il vendit*, he sold

Plural.

- Nous vendîmes*, we sold
- vous vendîtes*, you sold
- ils vendirent*, they sold

*Future.**Singular.*

1. *Je vendrai*, I shall sell
2. *tu vendras*, thou wilt sell
3. *il vendra*, he will sell

Plural.

- Nous vendrons*, we shall sell
- vous vendrez*, you will sell
- ils vendront*, they will sell

*Conditional.**Singular.*

1. *Je vendrais*, I should or
would sell
2. *tu vendrais*, thou wouldest
sell
3. *il vendrait*, he would sell

Plural.

- Nous vendrions*, we should or
would sell
- vous vendriez*, you would sell
- ils vendraient*, they would sell

COMPOUND TENSES.

Comp. of the Pres. *J'ai vendu*, I have sold

Comp. of the Imp. *J'avais vendu*, I had sold

Comp. of the Pret. *J'eus vendu*, I had sold

Comp. of the Fut. *J'aurai vendu*, I shall have sold

Comp. of the Cond. *J'aurais vendu*, I should have sold

CONJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Singular.

Plural.

Que, that

- | | |
|--|------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Je vende</i> , I may sell | <i>Nous vendions</i> , we may sell |
| 2. <i>tu vendes</i> , thou mayest sell | <i>vous vendiez</i> , you may sell |
| 3. <i>il vende</i> , he may sell | <i>ils vendent</i> , they may sell |

Præterite.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---|---|
| 1. <i>Je vendisse</i> , I might sell | <i>Nous vendissions</i> , we might sell |
| 2. <i>tu vendisses</i> , thou mightest sell | <i>vous vendissiez</i> , you might sell |
| 3. <i>il vendît</i> , he might sell | <i>ils vendissent</i> , they might sell |

COMPOUND TENSES.

Comp. of the Pres. *Que j'aie vendu*, that I may have sold

Comp. of the Pret. *Que j'eusse vendu*, that I might have sold

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. | <i>Vendons</i> , let us sell |
| 2. <i>Vends</i> , sell, thou | <i>vendez</i> , sell (you) |
| 3. { <i>qu'il vende</i> , let him sell | <i>qu'ils or qu'elles vendent</i> , let |
| { <i>qu'elle vende</i> , let her sell | them sell |

So conjugate *rendre*, to render; *répondre*, to answer; *perdre*, to lose; &c. There are about thirty-five regular verbs conjugated according to this model.

All verbs, like the auxiliaries, may be conjugated interrogatively, negatively, and interrogatively negatively; as,

Interrogatively.

- | | |
|---|-------------------------------------|
| <i>Donné-je?</i> or, <i>est-ce que je</i> | <i>Ai-je donné?</i> have I given? |
| <i>donne?</i> do I give? or am | <i>avez-vous parlé?</i> have you |
| I giving? | spoken? or did you speak? |
| <i>édifiait-il?</i> did he build? | <i>avait-il bâti?</i> had he built? |

<i>reçûmes-nous?</i> did we receive?	<i>eûtes-vous reçu?</i> had you received?
<i>recevra-t-elle?</i> will she receive?	<i>aura-t-il reçu?</i> will he have received?
<i>rendraient-ils?</i> would they render?	<i>auraient-elles vendu?</i> would they have sold?

Negatively.

<i>Tu ne donnes pas,</i> thou dost not give, or thou art not giving	<i>Il n'a pas donné,</i> he has not given
<i>vous ne bâtissiez pas,</i> you did not build	<i>nous n'avions pas bâti,</i> we had not built
<i>il ne reçut pas,</i> he did not receive	<i>elles n'eut pas reçu,</i> they had not received
<i>nous ne recevrons pas,</i> we shall not receive	<i>ils n'auront pas reçu,</i> they will not have received
<i>je ne rendrais pas,</i> I should not render	<i>je n'aurais pas rendu,</i> I should not have rendered

Interrogatively Negatively.

<i>Ne donne-t-il pas?</i> is he not giving? or does he not give?	<i>N'avez-vous pas donné?</i> have you not given?
<i>ne bâtissions-nous pas?</i> did we not build?	<i>n'a-t-il pas bâti?</i> has he not built?
<i>ne reçurent-ils pas?</i> did they not receive?	<i>n'eûmes-nous pas reçu?</i> had we not received?
<i>ne rendrez-vous pas?</i> will you not render?	<i>n'aurons-nous pas rendu?</i> shall we not have rendered?
<i>ne rendrions-nous pas?</i> should we not render?	<i>n'auriez-vous pas rendu?</i> would you not have rendered?

Be careful not to give a literal translation of English sentences similar to the following: am I speaking? *parlé-je?* *ou, est-ce que je parle?* (not *suis-je parlant*). I am not receiving, *je ne reçois pas* (not *je ne suis pas recevant*). He does not punish, *il ne punit pas* (not *il ne fait pas punir*). I am going to London, *je vais à Londres* (not *je suis allant à Londres*). Are you going to Paris? *allez-vous à Paris* (not

êtes-vous allant à Paris). Are you building a house?
faites-vous bâtir une maison, ou bâtissez-vous une maison?*
 (not *êtes-vous bâtissant une maison*). Is she not listening?
n'écoute-t-elle pas? (not *n'est-elle pas écoutant*).

PRACTICE ON THE FIRST CONJUGATION.

Present Indicative.

Do I not give? <i>donner</i>	We are seeking, <i>chercher</i>
art thou speaking? <i>parler</i>	are you not seeking?
do I not speak?	do you limit? <i>limiter</i>
does he not propose? <i>pro-</i> <i>poser</i>	are they not dancing? <i>dancer</i>
is she singing? <i>chanter</i>	they do not observe? <i>observer</i>

Imperfect.

Did he comfort? <i>consoler</i>	We blamed, <i>blâmer</i>
thou didst not protect, <i>pro-</i> <i>téger</i>	did you not begin? <i>com-</i> <i>mencer</i>
he did not cultivate, <i>cultiver</i>	they did not ask, <i>demander</i>
he was cultivating	were they not asking?

Preterite.

I proved, <i>éprouver</i>	We explained, <i>expliquer</i>
didst thou not publish? <i>pub-</i> <i>lier</i>	did you study? <i>étudier</i>
did she not forgive? <i>par-</i> <i>donner</i>	they listened, <i>écouter</i>

* *Obs.* The verb *faire*, to do, or to make, is often used to express the cause of an action or event; Ex. when we say *faites-vous bâtir une maison?* we do not mean that the person whom we address is in the act of performing the manual labour; but we suppose him to be the proprietor who causes the house to be built. If we ask a man who is at work, whether he is building a house or a church, we say, *bâtissez-vous une maison ou une église?*

Future.

I shall celebrate, *célébrer*
 wilt thou carry? *porter*
 will he not yield? *céder*
 will she not assist? *assister*

Shall we not order? *ordonner*
 you will appease, *apaiser*
 they will augment, *augmenter*
 will they not augment?

Conditional.

I should curl, *friser*
 thou wouldest not kill, *tuer*
 he would not abandon, *aban-*
donner

We should not avoid, *éviter*
 would you burn? *brûler*
 would they drive? *chasser*

Present Subjunctive.

I may forget, *oublier*
 thou mayst lend, *prêter*
 she may not lend
 he may preserve, *conserver*

We may prepare, *préparer*
 you may congratulate, *fé-*
citer
 they may reward, *récompenser*

Preterite.

I might leave, *laisser*
 thou mightest repair, *réparer*
 he might spare, *épargner*

We might empty, *vider*
 you might wake, *éveiller*
 they might exhort, *exhorter*

Imperative.

Fly, *thou, voler*
 let him play, *jouer*
 let us dance, *danser*

Sign, or do you sign, *signer*
 let them roll, *rouler*
 let them not speak, *parler*

On the Compounds of the same Verbs.

Pres. Ind. Have I not given the book to your brother?
 Have I not spoken the truth? Thou hast not proposed a
 good question. She has sung that song. Have we not
 sought our happiness? Have you limited his power? They
 have not observed your actions and mine.

Imp. He had comforted his mother. Hadst thou not

protected the oppressed? He had cultivated the liberal arts. She had blamed his conduct and theirs. Had we not begun the new game? Had they not asked a great favor?

Pret. I had proved the truth of the christian religion. Thou hadst not published the new edition. She had forgiven that offence. We had explained the rules. Had you not studied the first principles of his art? They had not listened.

Fut. Shall I not have celebrated the victory? Wilt thou not have carried some books? He will not have yielded to their entreaties. We shall have ordered the assault. Will you not have appeased his anger? They will not have augmented their riches.

Cond. Should I not have curled his hair? Thou wouldst not have killed thy adversary. She would not have abandoned her friend. We should have avoided the dangers. Would you not have burnt the paper? Would they not have driven the enemy?

Pres. Sub. I may have forgotten this insult. Thou mayst have lent money. He may have preserved his clothes. We may have prepared our supper. You may have congratulated your friends. They may have rewarded the men.

Pret. I might have left my child. Thou mightest have repaired thy house. She might have spared her money. We might have emptied the bottle. You might have waked our companions. They might have exhorted their friends.

Obs. The words in the following vocabulary must be taken in the same order as they are given, and the participles may be known by referring to the infinitive of the corresponding simple tenses.

book, <i>livre</i> , m.	action, <i>action</i> , f.
brother, <i>frère</i> , m.	mother, <i>mère</i> , f.
truth, <i>vérité</i> , f.	oppressed, <i>opprimé</i> , m.
good; bon; question, <i>question</i> , f.	art, <i>art</i> , m. liberal, <i>liberal</i>
song, <i>chanson</i> , f.	conduct, <i>conduite</i> , f.
happiness, <i>bonheur</i> , m.	new, <i>nouveau</i>
power, <i>pouvoir</i> , m.	game, <i>jeu</i> , m.
	great, <i>grand</i> ; favor, <i>faveur</i> , f.

PRACTICE ON THE CONJUGATIONS.

religion, <i>religion</i> , f.	friend, <i>ami</i> , f.
christian, <i>chrétien</i>	danger, <i>danger</i> , m.
edition, <i>édition</i> , f.	paper, <i>papier</i> , m.
offence, <i>offense</i> , f.	enemy, <i>ennemi</i> , m.
rule, <i>règle</i> , f.	insult, <i>insulte</i> , f.
first, <i>premier</i> ; principle, <i>principe</i>	money, <i>argent</i> , m.
victory, <i>victoire</i> , f.	clothes, <i>habits</i> , m.
entreaty, <i>instance</i> , f.	supper, <i>souper</i> , m.
assault, <i>assaut</i> , m.	friend, <i>ami</i> , m.
anger, <i>colère</i> , f.	men, <i>homme</i> , m.
riches, <i>richesse</i> , f.	child, <i>enfant</i> , m.
his, <i>ses</i> ; hair, <i>cheveux</i> , m.	house, <i>maison</i> , f.
adversary, <i>adversaire</i> , m.	bottle, <i>bouteille</i> , f.
	companion, <i>compagnon</i> , m.

PRACTICE ON THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

Present Indicative.

Do I finish? <i>finir</i>	We do not fill, <i>remplir</i>
dost thou not choose? <i>choisir</i>	are we not filling? <i></i>
art thou not chosen? <i></i>	you banish, <i>exiler</i>
does it not impoverish? <i>appauvrir</i>	do they enslave? <i>asservir</i>
is it not impoverishing? <i></i>	are they not enslaved? <i></i>

Imperfect.

Did I not soften? <i>adoucir</i>	We demolished, <i>démolir</i>
didst thou not embellish? <i>embellir</i>	you disunited, <i>désunir</i>
he did not warn, <i>avertir</i>	they weakened, <i>affaiblir</i>
did she divert? <i>dévertir</i>	did they not weaken? <i></i>

Preterite.

Did I not define? <i>définir</i>	We did not invade, <i>envahir</i>
thou didst not shorten, <i>accourcir</i>	did you thicken? <i>épaissir</i>
she softened, <i>amollir</i>	they did not end, <i>finir</i>

Future.

Shall I not furnish? <i>fournir</i>	We shall not betray, <i>trahir</i>
will he build? <i>bâtir</i>	you will roast, <i>rôtir</i>
will she not cure? <i>guérir</i>	they will not stun, <i>étourdir</i>

Conditional.

Should I not stuff? <i>farcir</i>	We should free, <i>affranchir</i>
wouldst thou whiten? <i>blanchir</i>	you would restore, <i>rétablir</i>
she would not dirty, <i>salir</i>	they would not build, <i>bâtir</i>

Present Subjunctive.

I may refresh, <i>rafraîchir</i>	We may soften, <i>attendrir</i>
he may warrant, <i>garantir</i>	you may fulfil, <i>accomplir</i>
she may enrich, <i>enrichir</i>	they may not fulfil

Preterite.

I might establish, <i>établir</i>	We might feed, <i>nourrir</i>
he might enlarge, <i>agrandir</i>	you might blacken, <i>noircir</i>
she might not soften, <i>fléchir</i>	they might not blacken

Imperative.

Refresh, <i>thou, rafraîchir</i>	Let us divide, <i>répartir</i>
let him punish, <i>punir</i>	divide, or do you divide
let her bear or suffer, <i>pâtir</i>	let them reunite, <i>réunir</i>

Practice on the Compounds of the same Verbs.

Com. Pres. I have not finished the embroidery. Hast thou not chosen these stockings? Has it not impoverished the wealthiest families? We have not filled our pockets. You have not banished the knaves. They have not enslaved the hearts.

Imp. I had softened the answer. Thou hadst embellished the fable. Had he not warned his friends? Had she diverted the children? We had demolished the old houses.

You had disunited the princes. They had weakened the enemy.

Pret. I had not defined the places. Hadst thou not shortened these strings? She had not softened the wax. Had we invaded their estates? You had not thickened the ink. They had ended the debate.

Fut. I shall not have furnished my house. Will he not have built his pavilion? Will she not have cured his disorder? Shall we have betrayed his interest? You will have roasted the meat. Will they not have stunned the neighbourhood?

Cond. I should not have stuffed the turkey. Thou wouldst have whitened the complexion. Would she not have dirtied the parlour? We should have freed the negroes. You would have restored the ancient discipline. Would they have built large houses?

Pres. Sub. I may have refreshed the young plants. He may have warranted the truth. We may have enriched our relations. You may have softened the heart of the tyrant. They may have fulfilled their vows.

Comp. Pret. I might have established my fortune. He might have enlarged his garden. We might have softened his wrath. You might have fed the chickens. They might have blackened their shoes.

embroidery, *broderie*, f.
 stocking, *bas*, m.
 family, *famille*, f.
 wealthy, *opulent*
 pocket, *poche*, f.
 knave, *coquin*, m.
 heart, *cœur*, m.
 answer, *réponse*, f.
 fable, *fable*, f.
 old, *vieil*; house, *maison*, f.
 prince, *prince*, m.
 enemy, *ennemi*, m.
 place, *lieu*, m.
 string, *cordon*, m.

wax, *cire*, f.
 estate, *terre*, f.
 ink, *encre*, f.
 debate, *débat*, m.
 pavilion, *pavillon*, m.
 disorder, *maladie*, f.
 interest, *intérêt*, m.
 meat, *viande*, f.
 neighbourhood, *voisinage*, m.
 turkey, *dindon*, m.
 complexion, *teint*, m.
 parlour, *salle*, f.
 negro, *négre*, m.
 ancient, *ancien*,

discipline, *discipline*, f.large, *grand*.young, *jeune*; plant, *plante*, f.truth, *vérité*, f.elation, *parent*, m.tyrant, *tyran*, m.vow, *vow*, m.fortune, *fortune*, f.garden, *jardin*, m.wrath, *courroux*, m.chicken, *poulet*, m.shoe, *soulier*, m.

PRACTICE ON THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

*Present Indicative.*Do I receive? *recevoir*

I am not receiving

thou owest, *devoir*

art thou not owing?

does he perceive? *appercevoir*We conceive, *concevoir*do you not perceive? *appercevoir*

are you perceiving?

they do not owe again, *redes-
voir*

Imp. I did not receive. Didst thou not owe? Did he perceive? We conceived. Did you conceive? They did not perceive. Were they not receiving?

Pret. Did I not receive? Did he not perceive? We did not conceive. Did you conceive?

Fut. I shall receive. Will he not perceive? Shall we owe? You will not conceive. They will not owe again.

Cond. Should I not receive? She would not perceive. Should we not conceive? Would you owe? They would not owe again.

Pres. Sub. I may receive. He may perceive. We may conceive. They may owe.

Pret. I might receive. He might perceive. We might conceive. They might receive.

Imperat. Receive thou. Let us perceive. Let them conceive.

Practice on the Compounds of the same Verbs.

Pres. Ind. Has he not received that favor? He has not received the favor. Have you perceived the project? They have not received his friendship?

Imp. We had not perceived the enemy. Had you conceived a new project? They had not perceived the thieves. Had they not received the sheep.

Pret. She had not perceived the thief. Had we not received letters? They had conceived great hopes. Had they not received the pictures.

Put. Will she have received the books? Will he have conceived the aversion? We shall have perceived the artifice. You will have received our kindness.

Cond. Would they have perceived the man? Would he have conceived such a design? Thou wouldst have perceived something. Would he have received our homage?

Pres. Sub. I may have received (some) money. She may not have perceived the knave. He may not have owed money. We may have perceived the rascal.

Pret. I might not have received his pardon. He might have owed money again. You might not have perceived the men. They might have received the news.

Friendship, *amitié*, f.
project, *projet*, m.
thief, *voleur*, m.
sheep, *brebis*, f.
hope, *espérance*, f.
aversion, *aversion*, f.
artifice, *finesse*, f.
kindness, *amitié*, f.
such a, *un tel*

design, *dessein*, m.
some, *quelque*; thing, *chose*, f.
homage, *hommage*, m.
money, *argent*
owed, *du*
rascal, *coquin*
pardon, *pardon*, m.
owed again, *redu*
news, *nouvelle ou nouvelles*, f.

PRACTICE ON THE FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present Indicative.

do not scatter, <i>répandre</i>	Are we not selling? <i>vendre</i>
am I confounding? <i>confondre</i>	you are not rendering, <i>rendre</i>
does she not hear? <i>entendre</i>	they are laying, <i>tendre</i>
does he spread? <i>étendre</i>	do they not answer? <i>répondre</i>

Imperfect.

melted, <i>fondre</i>	We confounded, <i>confondre</i>
did she lay? <i>pondre</i>	did you shear? <i>tondre</i>
did he answer? <i>répondre</i>	they did not remould, <i>refondre</i>
did he not spill? <i>répandre</i>	did they lose? <i>perdre</i>

Preterite.

I lost, <i>perdre</i>	We did not stretch, <i>tendre</i>
did it bite? <i>mordre</i>	you hanged or hung, <i>pendre</i>
did she wait? <i>attendre</i>	they took down, <i>descendre</i>

Fut. Shall I not scatter? I shall not confound. Will she not hear? Will he spread? We shall not sell. You will not render. They will lay.

Cond. Should I not shear? Would he not remould? We should not lose. You would not bite. They would not wait.

Pres. Subj. I may melt. It may lay. We may answer. You may spill. They may not confound.

Pret. I might stretch. He might hang. We might take down. We might not scatter. You might hear. They might spread.

Imper. Sell thou. Let him render. Let her lay. Let us melt. Do you answer. Let them lose.

Practice on the Compounds of the same Verbs.

Pres. Ind. Have I not scattered my favors? Has he not heard my voice? Has she not spread the linen?

Imp. Had they not sold their houses? Had you not sold the horses?

Prot. Had I not rendered the service? Had he not laid a snare? Had they not melted their gold?

Fut. Will she have laid fine eggs? Will it have answered (to) your expectations? Will he have spilled blood? We shall have confounded his pride. They will have shorn their flocks.

Cond. Should I not have waited for the fine season? Would he have stretched his arms? Would they not have hung all those knaves? They would not have taken down the pictures.

Pres. Sub. He may have remoulded his work. We may have lost our time. They may have bitten at the hook.

Pret. I might not have scattered money. He might have heard the witnesses. We might have spread those maxims. You might not have sold your fine horses. They might have rendered their accounts.

Favor, *faveur*, f.

voice, *voix*, f.

linen, *linge*, m.

service, *service*, m.

blood, *sang*, m.

pride, *orgueil*, m.

flock, *troupeau*, m.

fine, *beau*; season, *saison*, f.

his, *les*; arm, *bras*, m.

knave, *coquin*, m.

picture, *tableau*, m.

work, *ouvrage*, m.

snare, *piège*, m.

gold, *or*, m.

fine, *beau*; egg, *œuf*, m.

to, *à*; expectation, *attente*, f.

time, *tems*, m.

at, *à*; hook, *hameçon*, m. (*à* mute)

money, *argent*, m.

witness, *témoin*, m.

maxim, *maxime*, f.

horse, *cheval*, m.

account, *compte*, m.

The following table exhibits the terminations of all the verbs, regular and irregular

INFINITIVE PRESENT.

er, ir, oir, re; as $\left\{ \begin{array}{lll} \textit{parler, (er) fuir, (ir) savoir, (oir) rendre, (re)} \\ \text{to speak, to fly, to know, to render.} \end{array} \right\}$

ALL PARTICIPLES PRESENT

end in *ant*, as, $\left\{ \begin{array}{lll} \textit{parlant, fuyant, sachant,} \\ \text{speaking, flying, knowing.} \end{array} \right\}$ &c.

PARTICIPLES PAST.

é, i, u, t, s; as, $\left\{ \begin{array}{lll} \textit{parlé, fui, eu, mort, mis,} \\ \text{spoken, flown, known, dead, put,} \end{array} \right\}$ &c.

Obs. When past participles are made feminine, they terminate in *e* mute; as, *donnée*, given; *fuie*, flown; *morte*, dead; &c.

INDICATIVE.

Present.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
1st. Per.	2nd.	3rd.	1st. Per.	2nd.	3rd.
Je,	tu,	il,	nous,	vous,	ils
.. <i>e,</i>	<i>es,</i>	<i>e,</i>	<i>... ons ... ez ... ent;</i>	<i>as,</i>	<i>Je parle, es, e.</i> <i>... fais, s, t.</i> <i>... rends, s, d.</i> <i>... veux, x, t.</i>
.. <i>s,</i>	<i>s,</i>	<i>t,</i>			
.. <i>s,</i>	<i>s,</i>	<i>d,</i>			
.. <i>x,</i>	<i>x,</i>	<i>t,</i>			

Imperfect.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>ais,</i>	<i>ais,</i>	<i>ait,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{ions, iez, aient}; \\ \textit{ions, iez, aient}; \end{array} \right.$	as,	<i>parlais,</i>
<i>ou ois,</i>	<i>ois,</i>	<i>oit,</i>			

Preterite.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{ai, as, a,} \\ \textit{is, is, it,} \\ \textit{us, us, ut,} \\ \textit{ins, ins, int,} \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{âmes, âtes, èrent}; \\ \textit{îmes, îtes, irent}; \\ \textit{âmes, âtes, urent}; \\ \textit{îmes, îtes, inrent}; \end{array} \right.$			$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as, parlai, allai.} \\ \text{as, bâtis, fis.} \\ \text{as, reçus, fus.} \\ \text{as, tins, vins.} \end{array} \right.$	

Future.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>rai,</i>	<i>ras,</i>	<i>ra,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{rons, rez, ront}; \end{array} \right.$	as, parlerai,	

Conditional.

<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>rais,</i>	<i>rais,</i>	<i>rait,</i>	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \textit{rions, riez, raient}; \\ \textit{rions, riez, raient}; \end{array} \right.$	$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{as, parlerais.} \\ \text{as, parlerois.} \end{array} \right.$	
<i>ou rois,</i>	<i>rois,</i>	<i>roit,</i>			

SUBJUNCTIVE.

*Present.**Singular.* *Plural.*e, es, e, || iona, iez, ent; *as*, Que je parle, que tu parles, &c.*Preterite.**Singular.**Plural.*

asse,	asses,	ât,	||	assions,	assiez,	assent;	<i>as</i> ,	parlasse.
isse,	isses,	ît,	||	issions,	issiez,	issent;	<i>as</i> ,	mentisse.
usse,	usses,	ût,	||	ussions,	ussiez,	ussent;	<i>as</i> ,	reçusse.
insse,	inssees,	înt,	||	inssions,	inssiez,	inssent;	<i>as</i> ,	tinasse.

*Imperative.**Singular.**Plural.*

2nd Per.	3rd.		2nd Per.	3rd.
e,	e,	||	1st,	2nd,
s,	. . .	||	ons,	ez,
			3rd;	<i>as</i> , parle, qu'il parle.
			ent;	<i>as</i> , lis, qu'il lise.

CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS,

ALPHABETICALLY ARRANGED.

The irregularities are, principally, in the present and preterite indicative. In the following list, the present is given at full length, and the other tenses also, where any irregularity exists, otherwise, we have only given the first person.

Absoudre (active and defective verb*), to absolve.

Absoudre, to absolve; *absolvant*, *absous*, *ou absout*, *m. absoute*, *f.*

Pres. Ind. *Absou-s, s, t**Absolv-ons, ez, ent*Im. *absolvais*—(no pret.)F. *absoudrai*—C *absoudrais*Pr. Sub. *absol-ve, ves, ve rions, viez, vent*(no pret.)—Imper. *abs-ous, olve, olvons, olvez, olvent*

* *Obs.* 1. Defective verbs are those which want some of their moods, tenses, persons, or participles.

2. *Pres.* or *Pr. Ind.* stands for present indicative; *Im.* imperfect; *P.* or *Pret.* preterite; *F.* future; *C.* conditional; *Pr. Sub.* present subjunctive; *Imper.* imperative.

Accourir (neut. *) to run to, like *courir*.

Acquérir (act.) to acquire; *acquérant*, *acquis*, m. *acquise*, f.

res. *Acquier-s*, s, t

n. *acquérais*—P. *acquis*

r. Sub. *acquière-e*, es, e

ret. *acqu-isse*, isses, *ît*,
issions, issiez, issent

Acqu-érons, érez, *aient*

F. *acquerrai*—C. *acquerrais*

acqu-érons, ériez, *aient*

Imper. *acqu-ers*, *ière*, érons,
érez, *aient*

Aller (neut.) to go; *allant*, *allé*, m. *allée*, f.

r. Ind. *Vais* ou *vas*, *vas*, *va*

n. *allais*—P. *allai*

r. Sub. *aïlle*, es, e

ret. *allasse*, *asses*, *allât*

nper. *va*, *aïlle*

Allons, *allez*, *vont*

F. *irai*—C. *irais*

allions, *alliez*, *aillent*

allassions, *assiez*, *assent*

allons, *allez*, *aillent*

S'asseoir (act.) to sit down; *s'asseyant*, *assis*, m. *assise*, f.

res. Ind. *Je m'assieds*, *tu t'assieds*, *il s'assied*

l. *nous nous asseyons*, *vous vous asseyez*, *ils s'asseyent*

m. *m'asseyais*—P. *m'assis*

F. *m'assiérai*, ou *m'asseyerai*

C. *m'assiérais*, or *m'asseyerais*

r. Sub. *m'asseye*, *t'asseyes*,
s'asseye

nous nous asseyions, *vous*
vous asseyiez, *ils s'asseyent*

ret. *m'assisse*, *t'assisses*,
s'assît

Imper. *assieds-toi*, *s'asseye*,
asseyons-nous, &c.

Astréindre (act.) to restrain, like *ceindre*.

Battre (act.) to beat; *battant*, *battu*, m. *battue*, f.

Pr. Ind. *Ba-ts*, ts, t

Im. *battais*—P. *battis*

Pr. Sub. *batte*—P. *battisse*

Batt-ons, ez, ent

F. *battrai*—C. *battrais*

Imper. *bat-s*, e, *batt-ons*, ez, ent

Boire (act.) to drink; *buvant*, *bu*, m. *bue*, f.

Pr. Ind. *Boi-s*, s, t

Im. *buvais*—P. *bûs*

Pr. Sub. *boi-ve*, ves, ve

Pret. *busse*, *busses*, *bût*

Buvons, *buvez*, *boivent*

F. *boirai*—C. *boirais*

buvions, *buviez*, *boivent*

Imper. *boi-s*, ve, *buv-ons*, ez,
boivent

* Obs. 1. Most compound verbs are conjugated like the simple verbs.

2. Act. stands for active verb, neut. for neuter verb, ref. for reflexive verb, and def. for defective.

100 CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Bouillir (*neut.*) to boil; *bouillant, bouilli, m. bouillie, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>bou-s, s, t</i>	<i>Bou-illons, illez, illent</i>
Im. <i>bouillais</i> —P. <i>bouillis</i>	F. <i>bouillirai</i> —C. <i>bouillirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>bouille</i> —P. <i>bouillisse</i>	Imper. <i>bou-s, ille, bouill-ons, ez, ent</i>

This verb is often used with *faire*; as, *faire bouillir de l'eau*, to make water boil.

Ceindre (*act.*) to enclose; *ceignant, ceint, m. ceinte, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Cein-s, s, t</i>	<i>Ceign-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>ceignais</i> —P. <i>ceignis</i>	F. <i>ceindrai</i> —C. <i>ceindrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>ceigne</i> —P. <i>ceignisse</i>	Imper. <i>cei-ns, gne, ceig-nons, ez, ent</i>

Conclure (*act.*) to conclude; *concluant, conclu, m. conclue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Conclu-s, s, t, ou d</i>	<i>Conclu-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>concluais</i> —P. <i>conclus</i>	F. <i>conclurai</i> —C. <i>conclurais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>conclus</i> —P. <i>con-</i> <i>clusse</i>	Imper. <i>conclu-s, e, ons, ez, ent</i>

Conduire (*act.*) to conduct; *conduisant, conduit, m. conduite, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Condui-s, s, t</i>	<i>Condui-sons, sez, sent</i>
Im. <i>conduisais</i> —P. <i>conduisis</i>	F. <i>conduirai</i> —C. <i>conduirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>conduise</i> —P. <i>con-</i> <i>duisise</i>	Imper. <i>condui-s, se, sons, ez, ent</i>

Connaître (*act.*) to know; *connaissant, connu, m. connue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Conn-ais, ais, aît</i>	<i>Connai-ssons, ssez, ssent</i>
Im. <i>connaissais</i> —P. <i>connus</i>	F. <i>connaîtrai</i> —C. <i>connaîtrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>connaisse</i> —P. <i>con-</i> <i>nusse</i>	Imper. <i>connai-s, sse, ssons, ssez, ssent</i>

Construire (*act.*) to construct, like *conduire*.

Contraindre (*act.*) to constrain, like *craindre*.

Coudre (*act.*) to sew; *cousant, cousu, m. cousue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Cou-ds, ds, d</i>	<i>Cou-sons, sez, sent</i>
Im. <i>cousais</i> —P. <i>cousis</i>	F. <i>coudrai</i> —C. <i>coudrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>couse</i> —P. <i>cousisse</i>	Imper. <i>cou-ds, se, sons, sez, sent</i>

Courir (neut.) to run; *courant*, *couru*, m. *courue*, f.

Pr. Ind. Cour-s, s, t	Cour-ons, ez, ent
m. courais—P. courus	F. courrai—C. courrais
Pr. Sub. coure—P. courasse	Imper. cour-s, e, ons, ez, ent

Craindre (act.) to fear; *craignant*, *craint*, m. *crainte*, f.

Pr. Ind. Crain-s, s, t	Craign-ons, ez, ent
m. craignais—P. craignis	F. craindrai—C. craindrais
Pr. Sub. craign-e, es, e	P. craign-isse, isses, it
Imper. crains, craigne	Pl. craign-ons, ez, ent

Croire (act.) to believe; *croyant*, *cru*, m. *crue*, f.

Pr. Ind. Cro-is, is, it	Croyons, croyez, croient
m. croyais—P. crus	F. croirai—C. croirais
Pr. Sub. croi-e, es, e	croyions, croyiez, croient
Pr. Sub. crusse, crusses, crût	Imper. crois, eroie, croyons,
cruss-ions, iez, ent	croyez, croient

Croître (neut.) to grow; *croissant*, *cru*, m. *crue*, f.

Pr. Ind. Cro-is, is, it	Croi-ssons, ssez, ssent
Im. croissais—P. crus	F. croîtrai—C. croîtrais
Pr. Sub. crois-e, es, e	Imper. croi-s, sse, ssons, ssez,
	ssent

Cueillir (act.) to gather; *cueillant*, *cueilli*, m. *cueillie*, f.

Pr. Ind. Cueill-e, es, e	Cueill-ons, ez, ent
Im. cueillais—P. cueillis	F. cueillerai—C. cueillerais
Pr. Sub. cueille—P. cueillisse	Imper. cueill-e, e, ons, ez, ent

Détruire (act.) like *conduire*.

Dire (act.) to say; *disant*, *dit*, m. *dite*, f.

Pr. Ind. Di-s, s, t	Disons, dites, disent
Im. disais—P. dis	F. dirai—C. dirais
Pr. Sub. dise—P. disse	Imper. di-s, se, sons, tes, sent

Dormir (neut.) to sleep; *dormant*, *dormi*, m. *dormie*, f.

Pr. Ind. Dor-s, s, t	Dor-mons, mez, ment
Im. dormais—P. dormis	F. dormirai—C. dormirais
Pr. Sub. dorme—P. dormisse	Imper. dor-s, me, mons, mez,
	ment

Écrire (act.) to write; *écrivait, écrit, m. écrite, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Écri-s, s, t</i>	<i>Écri-vons, vez, vent</i>
Im. <i>écrivais</i> —P. <i>écrivis</i>	F. <i>écrirai</i> —C. <i>écrirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>écrive</i> —P. <i>écrivisse</i>	Imper. <i>écris, ve, vons, vez, vent</i>

Employer (act.) to employ; *employant, employé, m. employée, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>emploi-e, es, e</i>	<i>Employ-ons, ez, emploient</i>
Im. <i>employais</i> —P. <i>employai</i>	F. <i>emploierai</i> —C. <i>emploierais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>emploi-e, es, e</i>	<i>employ-ions, iez, emploient</i>
Pret. <i>employ-asse, asses, dt</i>	Imper. <i>emploi-e, e, employons, employez, emploient</i>

Enfreindre (act.) to infringe, like *ceindre*.

Envoyer (act.) to send—Fut. *enverrai*: C. *enverrais*: the other tenses are like *employer*.

Faire (act.) to do; *faisant, ou fesant, fait, m. faite, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Fai-s, s, t</i>	<i>Faisons, ou fesons, faites, font</i>
Im. <i>faisais, ou fesais</i> —P. <i>fis</i>	F. <i>ferai</i> —C. <i>ferais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>fasse</i> —P. <i>fiss-e, es, fit</i>	Imper. <i>fais, fasse, faisons, ou fesons, faites, fassent</i>
<i>fiss-ions, iez, ent</i>	

Feindre (act. and neut.) to feign, like *ceindre*.

Fuir (act. and neut.) to fly, or flee; *fuyant, fui, m. fuie, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Fu-is, is, it</i>	<i>Fu-yons, yez, ient</i>
Im. <i>fuyais</i> —P. <i>fûis</i>	F. <i>fuirai</i> —C. <i>fuirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>fui-e, es, e</i>	<i>fuy-ions, iez, fuient</i>
P. <i>fuiiss-e, es, fût</i>	Imper. <i>fu-is, ie, yons, yez, ient</i>

Fuir (act.) signifies *éviter*, to avoid; *fuir le danger*,

Fuir (neut.) signifies *to run from danger*.

Hair (act.) to hate; *haïssant, haï, m. haïe, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Hai-s, s, t</i>	<i>Haïss-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>haïssais</i> —P. (not used)	F. <i>hairai</i> —C. <i>hairais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>haïsse</i> —P. (not used)	Imper. <i>ha-is, isse, issons, issez, issent</i>

Joindre (act.) to join, like *ceindre*.

Lire (act.) to read; *lisant, lu, m. lue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>L-is, is, it</i>	<i>Lis-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>lisais</i> —P. <i>lus</i>	F. <i>lirai</i> —C. <i>lirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>lise</i> —P. <i>lusse</i>	Imper. <i>li-s, se, sons, sez, sent</i>

Luire (*neut. and def.*) to shine ; *luisant, lui, m. (no fem.)*

Pr. Ind. <i>Lui-s, s, t</i>	<i>Luis-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>luisais</i> —(no pret.)	F. <i>luirai</i> —C. <i>luirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>luise</i> —(no pret.)	Imper. <i>lui-s, se, sons, sez, sent</i>

Mentir (*neut.*) to lie ; *mentant, menti, m. mentie, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Men-s, s, t</i>	<i>Ment-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>mentais</i> —P. <i>mentis</i>	F. <i>mentirai</i> —C. <i>mentirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>mente</i> —P. <i>mentisse</i>	Imper. <i>men-s, te, tons, tez, tent</i>

Mettre (*act.*) to put ; *mettant, mis, m. mise, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Me-ts, ts, t</i>	<i>Met-tons, tez, tent</i>
Im. <i>mettais</i> —P. <i>mis</i>	F. <i>mettrai</i> —C. <i>mettrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>mette</i> —P. <i>misse</i>	Imper. <i>met-s, te, tons, tez, tent</i>

Moudre (*act.*) to grind ; *moulant, moulu, m. moulue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Mou-ds, ds, d</i>	<i>Moul-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>moulais</i> —P. <i>moulus</i>	F. <i>moudrai</i> —C. <i>moudrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>moule</i> —P. <i>moulusse</i>	Imper. <i>mou-ds, le, lons, lez, lent</i>

Mourir (*neut.*) to die ; *mourant, mort, m. morte, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Meur-s, s, t</i>	<i>Mour-ons, ez, meurent</i>
Im. <i>mourais</i> —P. <i>mourus</i>	F. <i>mourrai</i> —C. <i>mourrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>meur-e, es, e</i>	<i>mour-ions, iez, meurent</i>
P. <i>mour-usse, usses, út</i>	Imp. <i>meur-s, e, mour-ons, ez, meurent</i>

Mouvoir (*act.*) to move ; *mouvant, mu, m. mue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Meu-s, s, t</i>	<i>Mouv-ons, ez, meuvent</i>
Im. <i>mouvais</i> —P. <i>mus</i>	F. <i>mouvrai</i> —C. <i>mouvrais</i>
P. Sub. <i>meuv-e, es, e</i>	<i>mouv-ions, iez, meuvent</i>
Pret. <i>musse, musses, mût</i>	Imp. <i>meu-s, ve, mouv-ons, ez, meuvent</i>

Naître (*neut.*) to be born ; *naissant, né, m. née, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Nais, nais, naît</i>	<i>Naiss-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>naissais</i> —P. <i>naquis</i>	F. <i>naîtrai</i> —C. <i>naîtrais</i>
P. Sub. <i>naisse</i> —P. <i>naquisse</i>	Imper. <i>nai-s, sse, ssons, ssez, ssent</i>

104 CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Nuire (neut. and def.) to hurt ; nuisant, nuis, m. (no fem.)

Pr. Ind. Nui-s, s, t	Nuis-ons, es, ont
Im. nuisais—P. nuisis	F. nuirai—C. nuirais
Pr. Sub. nuise—P. nuisisse	Imper. nuis, se, ssons, sez, sent

Offrir (act.) to offer ; offrant, offert, m. offerte, f.

Pr. Ind. Off-re, res, re	Off-rons, rez, rent
Im. offrais—P. offris	F. offrirai—C. offrirais
Pr. Sub. offre—P. offrisse	Imper. off-re, re, rons, rez, rent

Ouvrir (act. and neut.) to open, like offrir.

Pâître (act. and def.) to feed ; paissant, pu, (no fem.)

Pr. Ind. Pa-is, is, it	Pais-ons, ez, ent
Im. paissais—(no pret)	F. paîtrai—C. paîtrais
Pr. Sub. paise—(no pret.)	Imper. pai-s, sse, ssons, ssez, ssent

Paraître (neut.) to appear, like connaître.

Partir (neut.) to set out, like mentir.

Plaire (neut.) to please ; plaisant, plu, m. plue, f.

Pr. Ind. Pla-is, is, it	Plai-sons, sez, sent
Im. plaisais—P. plus	F. plairai—C. plairais
Pr. Sub. plaise—P. plusse	Imper. plai-s, se, sons, sez, sent

Peindre (act.) to paint, like ceindre.

Plaindre (act.) to complain, like craindre.

Pouvoir (neut. and def.) to be able ; pouvant, pu, (no fem.)

Pr. Ind. Puis, ou peu-x, x, t	Pouv-ons, ez, peuvent
Im. pouvais—P. pus	F. pourrai—C. pourrais
Pr. Sub. puisse—P. pusse	(No imper.)

Prendre (act.) to take ; prenant, pris, m. prise, f.

Pr. Ind. Pren-ds, ds, d	Pren-ons, ez, nent
Im. prenais—P. pris	F. prendrai—C. prendrais
Pr. Sub. pren-ne, nés, ne	pren-ions, iez, nent
Pret. pr-is-se, isses, it	Imper. pren-ds, ne, ons, ez, nent

Résoudre (act.) to resolve; *résolvant, résolu*, m. *résolue*, f.

r. Ind. <i>Réso-u-s, s, t</i>	<i>Réso-lv-ons, ez, ent</i>
n. <i>résolvais</i> —P. <i>résolus</i>	F. <i>résoudrai</i> —C. <i>résoudrais</i>
r. Sub. <i>résolve</i> —P. <i>résolusse</i>	Imper. <i>réso-us, lve, lvoins, &c.</i>

Restreindre (act.) to restrain, like *ceindre*.

Revêtir (act.) to clothe, or invest, like *vêtir*.

Rire (neut. and def.) to laugh; *riant, ri*, (no fem.)

r. Ind. <i>Ri-s, s, t</i>	<i>Ri-ons, ez, ent</i>
n. <i>riaais</i> —P. <i>ris</i>	F. <i>rirai</i> —C. <i>rirais</i>
r. Sub. <i>rie</i> —P. <i>risse</i>	Imp. <i>ri-s, e, rions, ez, ent</i>

Saillir (neut. and act.) to project, like *cueillir*.

Savoir (act.) to know; *sachant, su*, m. *sue*, f.

r. Ind. <i>Sai-s, s, t</i>	<i>Sav-ons, ez, ent</i>
m. <i>savais</i> —P. <i>sus</i>	F. <i>saurai</i> —C. <i>saurais</i> *
Pr. Sub. <i>sache</i> —P. <i>susse</i>	Imper. <i>sach-e, e, ons, ez, ent</i>

Sentir (act.) to feel, like *mentir*.

Servir (act.) to serve; *servant, servi*, m. *servie*, f.

Pr. Ind. <i>Ser-s, s, t</i>	<i>Serv-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>servais</i> —P. <i>servis</i>	F. <i>servirai</i> —C. <i>servirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>serve</i> —P. <i>servisse</i>	Imper. <i>ser-s, ve, vons, vez, vent</i>

Sortir (neut.) to go out; *sortant, sorti*, m. *sortie*, f.

Pr. Ind. <i>Sor-s, s, t</i>	<i>Sort-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>sortais</i> —P. <i>sortis</i>	F. <i>sortirai</i> —C. <i>sortirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>sorte</i> —P. <i>sortisse</i>	Imper. <i>sor-s, te, tons, tez, tent</i>

Souffrir (act. and neut.) to suffer, like *offrir*.

Suffire (neut. and def.) to suffice; *suffisant, suffi*, m. (no fem.)

Pr. Ind. <i>Suffi-s, s, t</i>	<i>Suffis-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>suffisais</i> —P. <i>suffis</i>	F. <i>suffirai</i> —C. <i>suffirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>suffise</i> —P. <i>suffisse</i>	Imper. <i>suffi-s, se, sons, sez, sent</i>

* *Je ne saurais*, I cannot, is often used for *je ne puis*, I cannot; but *savoir* must not be used for *pouvoir* without a negation. Thus, do not say *je saurais* for *je puis*.

106 CONJUGATION OF IRREGULAR VERBS.

Suivre (act.) to follow; *suisant, suivi, m. suivie, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Sui-s, s, t</i>	<i>Suiv-ons, ez, ont</i>
Im. <i>suisais</i> —P. <i>suivis</i>	F. <i>suirai</i> —C. <i>suirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>suive</i> —P. <i>suivisse</i>	Imper. <i>sui-s, ve, vous, vez, vent</i>

Tenir (act.) to hold; *tenant, tenu, m. tenue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Tien-s, s, t</i>	<i>Ten-ons, ez, tiennent</i>
Im. <i>tenais. P. tins. Pl. tîmes</i>	F. <i>tiendrai</i> —C. <i>tiendrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>tienn-e, es, e</i>	<i>teni-ons, ez, tiennent</i>
Pret. <i>tinsse, tinsses, tint</i>	Imper. <i>tien-s, ne, tenons, tenez, tiennent</i>
<i>tin-ssions, &c.</i>	

Faire (neut.) to be silent, like *plaire*.

Teindre (act.) to die, or color, like *ceindre*.

Traire (act. and def.) to milk; *trayant, trait, m. traite, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Trai-s, s, t</i>	<i>Tra-yons, yez, ient, ou yent</i>
Im. <i>trayais</i> —(no pret.)	F. <i>trairai</i> —C. <i>trairais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>trai-e, es, e</i>	Imp. <i>trai-s, e, yons, yez, ient</i>
Pl. <i>trayions</i> —(no pret.)	

Vaincre (act. and def.) to conquer; *vaincant, vaincu, m. vaincue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Vain-cs, cs, c</i>	<i>Vainq-uons, uez, uent</i>
Imp. <i>vainquais</i> —P. <i>vainquis</i>	F. <i>vaincrai</i> —C. <i>vaincrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>vainque</i> —P. <i>vainquisse</i>	Imper. (no 2nd per. sing.) <i>vainqu-e, ons, ez, ent</i>

Valoir (act. and def.) to be worth; *valant, valu, (no fem.)*

Pr. Ind. <i>Vau-x, x, t</i>	<i>Val-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>valais</i> —P. <i>valus</i>	F. <i>vaudrai</i> —C. <i>vaudrais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>vaille</i> —P. <i>valusse</i>	Imper. <i>va-uz, vaille, valons, valusses, valût</i>
	<i>valez, voillent</i>

Venir (neut.) to come, like *tenir*.

Vêtir (act.) to clothe; *vêtant, vêtu, m. vêtue, f.*

Pr. Ind. <i>Vê-ts, ts, t</i>	<i>Vêt-ons, ez, ent</i>
Im. <i>vétais</i> —P. <i>vêtis</i>	F. <i>vêtirai</i> —C. <i>vêtirais</i>
Pr. Sub. <i>vête</i> —P. <i>vétisse</i>	Imper. <i>vêt-s, e, ons, ez, ent</i>

vivre (neut. and def.) to live; *vivant, vécu*, m. (no fem.)

r. Ind. *Vi-s, s, t*

Viv-ôns, ez, ent

n. *vivais*—P. *vécus*

F. *vivrai*—C. *vivrais*

r. Sub. *viv-e, es, e*

Imper. *vi-s, ve*

vécusse, vécusses, vécût

Pl. *vi-vons, ez, ent*

Veir (act. and neut.) to see; *voyant, vu*, m. *vue*, f.

r. Ind. *Voi-s, s, t*

Voyons, voyez, voient

n. *voyais*—P. *vis*

F. *verrai*—C. *verrais*

r. Sub. *voi-e, es, e*

voyions, voyiez, voient

visse, visses, vît

Imper. *voi-s, e, voy-ons, ez, voient*

vouloir (act. and def.) to be willing; *voulant, voulu*, m. *voulue*, f.

r. Ind. *Veu-x, x, t*

Voul-ôns, ez, veulent

m. *voulais*—P. *voulus*

F. *voudrai*—C. *voudrais*

r. Sub. *veuil-e, es, e*

P. *voulusse*—(no imper. except *veuillez*)

vouions, vouliez, veuillent

PRACTICE ON THE IRREGULARS.

Present Indicative.

I open, *ouvrir*

Does she become? *devenir*

is it opening?

does she sleep? *dormir*

do I acquire? *acquérir*

are you not sleeping?

I do not clothe, *revêtir*

we fetch out, *aveindre*

do I not see? *voir*

do we pity? *plaindre*

thou knowest, *savoir*

we do not paint, *peindre*

dost thou make? *faire*

you are not painting

thou art not worth, *valoir*

do we not feign? *feindre*

dost thou not satisfy? *satis-*

you fear, *craindre*

faire

do you join? *joindre*

he runs, *courir*

you do not put out, *éteindre*

is he not running?

do you not compel? *con-*

he does not resent, *ressentir*

traindre

she contradicts, *démentir*

they know, *connaître*

she does not take away, *des-*

do they recognise? *recon-*

servir

naître

does he keep? *tenir*

they do not grow, *croître*

does he not go? *aller*

are they growing?

he is not going

do they not appear? *paraître*

Imperfect.

I increased, <i>accroître</i>	she did not conduct, <i>conduire</i>
did I not acknowledge? <i>re-</i> <i>connaître</i>	he was not destroying, <i>dé-</i> <i>truire</i>
thou knewest again, <i>recon-</i> <i>naître</i>	it did not produce, <i>produire</i>
he was reconnoitering, <i>re-</i> <i>connaître</i>	we introduced, <i>introduire</i>
did he discover? <i>reconnaître</i>	did we reduce? <i>réduire</i>
she instructed, <i>instruire</i>	you translated, <i>traduire</i>
	did they not see? <i>voir</i>
	they did not see

Preterite.

I wrote, <i>écrire</i>	did we not preserve? <i>con-</i> <i>servir</i>
did I describe? <i>décrire</i>	you told, <i>dire</i>
did I not prescribe? <i>prescrire</i>	did you not do? <i>faire</i>
thou didst subscribe, <i>souscrire</i>	you did not please? <i>plaire</i>
did he transcribe? <i>transcrire</i>	did you read? <i>lire</i>
did she die? <i>mourir</i>	they drank, <i>boire</i>
did he not say again? <i>redire</i>	did they think? <i>croire</i>
we did not read again, <i>relire</i>	they did not live, <i>vivre</i>
we contradicted, <i>contredire</i>	they did not wish, <i>vouloir</i>

Future.

I shall wish, <i>vouloir</i>	she will not support, <i>souten-</i> <i>ir</i>
shall I see? <i>voir</i>	we shall attain, <i>parvenir</i>
I shall not know, <i>savoir</i>	shall we not relieve? <i>subveni-</i> <i>re</i>
shall I not be able? <i>pouvoir</i>	will you not retain? <i>retenir</i>
will it be worth? <i>valoir</i>	they will not obtain, <i>obtenir</i>
will she prevent? <i>prévenir</i>	will they not obtain?

Conditional.

I should undo, <i>défaire</i>	we should rout, <i>défaire</i>
should I do? <i>faire</i>	would you not prevent? <i>pré-</i> <i>venir</i>
I should not come back, <i>re-</i> <i>venir</i>	you would not detain, <i>détenir</i>
would he counterfeit? <i>con-</i> <i>trefaire</i>	they would not maintain <i>maintenir</i>

Present Subjunctive.

may wish, <i>vouloir</i>	we may contravene, <i>contre-</i>
may not attain, <i>parvenir</i>	<i>venir</i>
thou mayest see, <i>voir</i>	you may counterfeit, <i>contre-</i>
he may hold, <i>tenir</i>	<i>faire</i>
he may sustain, <i>soutenir</i>	they may do, <i>faire</i>

Preterite.

might take, <i>prendre</i>	we might relieve, <i>secourir</i>
might not resolve, <i>résoudre</i>	we might not detain, <i>détenir</i>
thou mightest sew again, <i>recoudre</i>	you might maintain, <i>maintenir</i>
thou mightest not grind, <i>moudre</i>	you might not keep up, <i>entretenir</i>
he might satisfy, <i>satisfaire</i>	they might convince, <i>convaincre</i>
it might not increase, <i>accroître</i>	they might not learn, <i>apprendre</i>
she might acquire, <i>acquérir</i>	
she might not conceal, <i>couvrir</i>	

Imperative.

Remit thou, <i>remettre</i>	let us not corrupt, <i>corrompre</i>
do not fight, <i>combattre</i>	say, or do (you) say? <i>dire</i>
let him do, <i>faire</i>	do (you) not do? <i>faire</i>
let him not undo, <i>défaire</i>	let them, <i>m.</i> know, <i>savoir</i>
let her acquire, <i>acquérir</i>	let them, <i>f.</i> not know
let her not resolve, <i>résoudre</i>	let them, <i>m.</i> not be worth, <i>valoir</i>
let us understand, <i>comprendre</i>	let them, <i>f.</i> not see, <i>voir</i>
let us go out, <i>sortir</i>	

On the Compounds of the same Verbs.

Pres. I have written a letter. He has opened his heart.
 Have I acquired a friend? Have I not clothed the poor?
 I have not seen his fine garden. Hast thou known the
 news? Thou hast not made all thy efforts. Thou hast not
 been worth. Hast thou not satisfied thy ambition? He has

run to my assistance. Has he not resented the affront? She has not forfeited her reputation. She has taken away the meat. He has kept his word. Has she slept two hours? We have fetched out our coats. Have we not pitied his fate? Have we feigned (*a*) sickness? Have you feared his anger? You have not joined your companions. Have you not put out the candles? You have not compelled the men to fight. They have known his temper. Have they recognised their horses? Have they not appeared discontented?

Imp. I had not increased my income. Had I not acknowledged my fault? I had known my book again. Had I reconnoitered the country? Thou hadst discovered his perfidy. She had instructed her children. He had not conducted the works. He had not destroyed the fortress. Had it not produced fine fruit? We had introduced this custom. Had we reduced the talker to silence? You had translated a page. They had not seen their relations.

Pret. I had written a book. Had I not described my situation? Thou hadst subscribed ten guineas. Had he transcribed the letter? Had he not said his lesson again? We had not read his works again. Had we not contradicted that sentiment? We had not preserved apricots. You had told the truth. Had you done a great injustice? You had not pleased (*to*) your master. Had you not read his letters? They had drunk a bottle. They had thought the affair at an end. Had they not lived? They had not wished to come.

Fut. I shall have wished him happiness. Shall I not have seen his books? I shall not have known what is said. Shall I not have been able to resist? Will it have been worth more? Will she not have prevented this misfortune? She will have supported her mother. We shall have relieved (*to*) your wants. Will you not have retained your servant? They will not have obtained his favor.

Cond. I should have undone their schemes. Should I have done that injustice? I should not have come back satisfied. Would he have counterfeited the book? We should have routed their armies. Would you not have

prevented that error? You would not have detained his goods. They would not have maintained their rights.

Pr. Sub. I may have wished to go. I may not have attained to that end. Thou mayest have seen the house. He may have held the end of the cloth. She may have supported her disgrace. We may have contravened (to) your orders. You may have counterfeited his voice. They may have done twenty lines.

Pret. I might have taken my own measures. I might not have resolved his ruin. Thou mightest have sewed the ruffles again. Thou mightest not have ground beans. He might have satisfied his father. He might not have increased his glory. She might have acquired much reputation. She might not have concealed her design. We might have relieved your brother. We might not have detained the courier. You might have maintained the opinion. You might not have kept up your family. They might have convinced their auditory. They might not have learnt the fable.

Heart, *cœur*, m.
 friend, *ami*, m.
 poor, *pauvres*, m. pl.
 fine, *beau*; garden, *jardin*, m.
 news, *nouvelles*, f. pl.
 effort, *effort*, m.
 ambition, *ambition*, f.
 assistance, *secours*, m.
 affront, *affront*, m.
 reputation, *réputation*, f.
 word, *parole*, f.
 coat, *habit*, m.
 fate, *sort*, m.
 sickness, *maladie*, f.
 anger, *colère*, f.
 companion, *compagnon*, m.
 candle, *chandelle*, f.
 to *à*; fight, *combattre*
 temper, *humeur*, f. (*h* mute)
 discontented, *mécontent*, m.

income, *revenu*, m.
 fault, *faute*, f.
 country, *pays*, m.
 perfidy, *perfidie*, f.
 work, *travail*, m.
 fortress, *forteresse*, f.
 fruit, *fruit*, m.
 custom, *coutume*, f.
 talker, *parleur*, m.
 silence, *silence*, m.
 page, *page*, f.
 relation, *parente*, f.
 situation, *situation*, f.
 ten, *dix*; guinea, *guinée*
 letter, *lettre*, f.
 lesson, *leçon*, f.
 work, *œuvre*, m.
 sentiment, *sentiment*, m.
 apricot, *abricot*, m.
 truth, *vérité*, f.

great, <i>grand</i>	house, <i>maison</i> , f.
injustice, <i>injustice</i> , f.	end, <i>bout</i> , m.
master, <i>maître</i> , m.	cloth, <i>toile</i> , f.
bottle, <i>bouteille</i> , f.	disgrace, <i>disgrace</i> , f.
affair, <i>affaire</i> , f.	order, <i>ordre</i>
at an end, <i>fini</i>	voice, <i>voir</i> , f.
him, in <i>Fr.</i> his, <i>son</i>	twenty, <i>vingt</i>
happiness, <i>bonheur</i> , m.	line, <i>ligne</i> , f.
what is said, <i>ce qu'on dit</i>	my own, <i>mes</i>
to resist, <i>résister</i>	measures, <i>parti</i> , m. sing.
more, <i>plus</i>	ruin, <i>perte</i> , f.
misfortune, <i>malheur</i> , m.	ruffle, <i>manchette</i> , f.
want, <i>besoin</i> , m.	bean, <i>fève</i> , f.
servant, <i>domestique</i> , m.	glory, <i>gloire</i> , f.
favor, <i>faveur</i> , f.	much, <i>beaucoup de</i>
scheme, <i>projet</i> , m.	reputation, <i>réputation</i> , f.
satisfied, <i>satisfait</i>	design, <i>dessain</i> , m.
army, <i>armée</i> , f.	brother, <i>frère</i> , m.
error, <i>erreur</i> , f.	courier, <i>courier</i> , m.
goods, <i>effets</i> , m. pl.	opinion, <i>opinion</i> , f.
right, <i>droit</i> , m.	family, <i>famille</i> , f.
to go, <i>aller</i>	auditory, <i>auditoire</i> , m.
end, <i>but</i>	fable, <i>fable</i> , f.

Passive Verbs.

PASSIVE VERBS are conjugated, in French as in English, by the help of the auxiliary *être*, to be; as,

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Preterite.

<i>Être loué</i> , ou <i>louée</i> , to be praised	<i>Avoir été loué</i> , ou <i>louée</i> , to have been praised
---	---

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

Past.

Compound.

<i>Étant loué</i> , ou <i>louée</i> , being praised	<i>Été loué</i> , m. ou <i>louée</i> , f. been praised	<i>Ayant été loué</i> , ou <i>louée</i> , having been praised
--	--	---

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|---|--|
| 1. <i>Je suis loué, m. ou louée, f.</i> | <i>Nous sommes loués, m. ou louées, f.</i> |
| I am praised | we are praised |
| 2. <i>tu es loué, m. ou louée, f.</i> | <i>vous êtes loués, m. ou louées, f.</i> |
| thou art praised | you are praised |
| 3. <i>il est loué, ou elle est louée,</i> | <i>ils sont loués, ou elles sont louées,</i> |
| he, she, or it is praised | they are praised |

Imperfect.

Preterite.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| <i>J'étais loué, ou louée, I was</i> | <i>Je fus loué, ou louée, I was</i> |
| praised | praised |

Future.

Conditional.

- | | |
|---|------------------------------------|
| <i>Je serai loué, ou louée, I shall</i> | <i>Je serais loué, ou louée, I</i> |
| be praised | should be praised |

COMPOUND TENSES.

- | | |
|-------|--|
| Pres. | <i>J'ai été loué, ou louée, I have been praised</i> |
| Imp. | <i>J'avais été loué, ou louée, I had been praised</i> |
| Pret. | <i>J'eus été loué, ou louée, I had been praised</i> |
| Fut. | <i>J'aurai été loué, ou louée, I shall have been praised</i> |
| Cond. | <i>J'aurais été loué, ou louée, I should have been praised</i> |

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Preterite.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| <i>Que,</i> | |
| <i>Je sois loué, ou louée, I may</i> | <i>Je fusse loué, ou louée, I might</i> |
| be praised | be praised |

COMPOUND TENSES.

- | | |
|--------------------|---|
| Comp. of the Pres. | <i>Que j'aie été loué, ou louée, that I may have been praised</i> |
| Comp. of the Pret. | <i>Que j'eusse été loué, ou louée, that I might have been praised</i> |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

.	<i>Soyons loués, ou louées, let us</i> be praised
<i>Sois loué, ou louée, be thou</i> praised	<i>soyez loués, ou louées, be (you)</i> praised
<i>qu'il soit loué, let him be</i> praised	<i>qu'ils soient loués, let them</i> be praised
<i>qu'elle soit louée, let her be</i> praised	<i>qu'elles soient louées, let them</i> be praised

Obs. The participle in the preceding conjugation is of the same gender and number as the preceding pronoun, and must, in like manner, be made to agree with the noun or pronoun going before, in the following practice :

PRACTICE ON THE PASSIVE VERBS.

*Simple and Compound.**Present Indicative.*

Am I, <i>f.</i> loved ? <i>aimer</i>	It, <i>f.</i> is given, <i>donner</i>
I, <i>m.</i> am blamed, <i>blamer</i>	we, <i>m.</i> are protected, <i>pro-</i> <i>téger</i>
is he not encouraged ? <i>en-</i> <i>courager</i>	have we, <i>f.</i> been protected ?
has he been encouraged ?	they, <i>m.</i> are consoled, <i>con-</i> <i>soler</i>
she has been condemned, <i>condamner</i>	have they, <i>f.</i> been consoled ?

Imperfect.

Was it, <i>f.</i> applauded ? <i>ap-</i> <i>plaudir</i>	We, <i>m.</i> were not banished, <i>bannir</i>
was she not warned ? <i>avertir</i>	they, <i>f.</i> were punished, <i>punir</i>
he had not been warned	

Preterite.

The letter was received, <i>re-</i> <i>cevoir</i>	The blood was spilt, <i>ré-</i> <i>pandre</i>
had it, <i>f.</i> been received ?	had we, <i>m.</i> been perceived ?
we, <i>f.</i> were perceived, <i>apper-</i> <i>cevoir</i>	had they, <i>m.</i> been spread ? <i>tendre</i>

Future.

Will it, <i>f.</i> be restored? <i>rendre</i>	Will she be abandoned? <i>abandonner</i>
he will not be lost, <i>perdre</i>	they, <i>f.</i> will be abolished, <i>abolir</i>
will it, <i>f.</i> not be lost?	will they, <i>m.</i> not have been abolished?
it, <i>f.</i> will not be lost	

Conditional.

I, <i>f.</i> should be compelled, <i>contraindre (ir)</i>	They, <i>f.</i> would be acknowledged, <i>reconnoître (ir)</i>
would she not have been compelled?	would they, <i>m.</i> not have been acknowledged?
she would not have been protected	they, <i>f.</i> would not have been consoled

Present Subjunctive.

I, <i>f.</i> may be chosen, <i>choisir</i>	He may be seduced, <i>séduire (ir)</i>
I, <i>m.</i> may not have been chosen	they, <i>f.</i> may have been destroyed
it, <i>f.</i> may be destroyed, <i>détruire (ir)</i>	they, <i>m.</i> may not have been destroyed
it, <i>m.</i> may not have been destroyed	

Preterite.

I, <i>f.</i> might be convinced, <i>convaincre (ir)</i>	It, <i>f.</i> might be written, <i>écrire (ir)</i>
I, <i>m.</i> might not have been convinced	it might not have been written
she might not have been blamed	they, <i>f.</i> might not have been written

Imperative.

Be (<i>you, f.</i>) convinced	Let them, <i>f.</i> be constrained, <i>contraindre</i>
let them, <i>m.</i> be warned	let them, <i>m.</i> not be constrained
let them, <i>f.</i> be banished	

Neuter Verbs.

NEUTER VERBS, both in French and English, form their compound tenses by *avoir* and *être*, as the sense requires; but there are several verbs which take *être* in French and *have* in English; as,

Tomber, to fall.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

- | | |
|---|---|
| <p>1. <i>Je suis tombé, ou tombée,</i>
I have fallen</p> <p>2. <i>tu es tombé, ou tombée,</i>
thou hast fallen</p> <p>3. <i>il est tombé, ou elle est</i>
<i>tombée, he, she, or it has</i>
<i>fallen</i></p> | <p><i>Nous sommes tombés, ou</i>
<i>tombées, we have fallen</i></p> <p><i>vous êtes tombés, ou tombés,</i>
<i>you have fallen</i></p> <p><i>ils sont tombés, ou elles sont</i>
<i>tombées, they have fallen</i></p> |
|---|---|

Imperfect.

J'étais tombé, I had fallen

Preterite.

Je fus tombé, I had fallen

Future.

Je serai tombé, I shall have
fallen

Conditional.

Je serais tombé, I should have
fallen

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

Que je sois tombé, ou tombée,
that I may have fallen

Preterite.

Que je fusse tombé, ou tombée,
that I might have fallen

And so on through the other persons, &c.

The following is a list of verbs which form their compound tenses with *être*; instead of *avoir*.

Aller, to go
arriver, to arrive
décéder, to die
échoir, to expire
déchoir, to decay
entrer, to go in
mourir, to die
naître, to be born

partir, to set out
rentrer, to go in again
retourner, to return
retomber, to fall again
rester, to remain, or stay
tomber, to fall
venir, to come

Ex. *Il est allé*, he is gone. *Je, f. suis arrivée*, I have arrived.

The following compounds of *venir* also take *être*.

<i>Convenir</i> , to agree	<i>parvenir</i> , to attain
<i>devenir</i> , to become	<i>revenir</i> , to come back, or again
<i>disconvenir</i> , to disagree	<i>survenir</i> , to happen, or befall
<i>intervenir</i> , to interpose	
<i>provenir</i> , to proceed from	

The following compounds of *venir* take *avoir*.

<i>Circonvenir</i> , to circumvent	<i>prévenir</i> , to prevent
<i>contrevenir</i> , to contravene	<i>survenir</i> , to relieve, or assist

The following verbs take, indifferently, *avoir* or *être*.

<i>Aborder</i> , to land	<i>décroître</i> , to decrease
<i>accourir</i> , to run to	<i>dépérir</i> , to decay
<i>accroître</i> , to increase	<i>dérober</i> , to deprive
<i>apparaître</i> , ou <i>comparaître</i> , to appear	<i>disparaître</i> , to disappear
<i>croître</i> , to grow up, or to grow tall	<i>périr</i> , to perish
	<i>tisser</i> , to weave

The following verbs take *avoir* in one signification, and *être*, in another [vide p. 118.]

<i>Cesser</i>	<i>monter</i>
<i>convenir</i>	<i>passer</i>
<i>courir</i>	<i>repartir</i>
<i>demeurer</i>	<i>sortir</i>
<i>descendre</i>	

Cesser used as an active verb takes *avoir* ; as,
 Vous avez cessé votre travail, you *have* left off your work.

Cesser used as a neuter verb takes indifferently *avoir* or *être* ; as,

La pluie a cessé, ou *est* cessée, the rain *is* over, or *has* ceased.

Convenir takes *avoir* when it signifies *to suit* ; as,
 Cette maison lui *aurait* convenu, this house *would have* suited him, or her.

Convenir, *to be agreed on*, or *about*, or *to confess*, takes *être* ; as,

Nous *sommes* convenus du prix, we *have* agreed on the price. Elle *est* convenue du fait, she *has* confessed the fact, or deed.

Courir, to run, takes *avoir* ; as,

Il a couru toute la journée, he *has* run all day.

Courir takes *être*, when it means that something is very much followed, or sought after, or is fashionable ; as,

Ce prédicateur *est* fort couru, that preacher *is* very much followed. Cette couleur a été fort courue, that color *has* been very much in fashion.

Demeurer, when it signifies, *to live in*, takes *avoir* ; as,

Il a demeuré à Paris, he *has* lived in Paris.

Demeurer, *to remain*, or *continue*, takes *être* ; as,

Ils *sont* demeurés inébranlable, they *have* remained immovable. Il *est* demeuré muet, he *has* continued speechless.

Descendre, when used as an active verb, takes *avoir* ; as,

Il a descendu l'escalier, he *is* or *has* gone down stairs.

Descendre, used as a neuter verb, takes *être* ; as,

Elle *est* descendue d'une bonne famille, she *is* descended from a good family.

Monter also takes *avoir*, when used actively; as,

Vous avez monté la colline, we *have* ascended the hill.
Avez-vous monté la montre? *have* you wound up the watch?

Monter, used as a neuter verb, takes *être*; as,

Cet officier *est* monté par degrés aux charges militaires,
 that officer *has* risen by degrees to military employments.

Passer, when used as an active verb, takes *avoir*; as,

Les soldats *ont* passé les Alpes, the soldiers *have* passed the Alps. Charles dix *a* passé par la France, Charles the tenth *has* passed through France.

When *passer* is used as a neuter verb, it takes *être*; as,

La procession *est* passée, the procession *is* gone by. Cette mode *est* passée, that fashion *is* out.

But *passer*, although used as a neuter verb, when it signifies *to be received*, takes *avoir*; as,

Ce mot *a* passé, that word *is* received, or admitted.

Repartir, *to reply*, takes *avoir*; as,

Il *a* reparti avec esprit, he *has* replied with spirit.

Repartir, *to set out again*, takes *être*; as,

Votre sœur *est* repartie ce matin, your sister went away again this morning.

Sortir takes *avoir* and *être*, this however depends upon the nature of the sentence; Ex.

Mon frère *a* sorti ce matin, my brother *has* been out this morning; this means, he *has* been out and *has* returned.

Mon frère *est* sorti ce matin, my brother *is* gone out this morning, this means, he *is* gone out and *has* not returned.

Obs. The participle always takes *avoir* when used actively, and *être* when a simple state of existence is implied.

When *être* is used in the following practice, the participle must agree with the noun or pronoun which precedes, in gender and number.

PRACTICE ON THE NEUTER VERBS,

*which take être in French.**Present Indicative.*

He is gone to France. I, *f.* am come from Germany.
 I, *f.* have landed in England. They, *m.* are gone out.
 Have they, *f.* arrived from Spain? Is she dead? Is he not dead?

Imperfect.

He had arrived before me. Had she already arrived?
 You, *m.* had not set out. My sister had set out. My
 brothers had returned. They, *f.* had gone into the room
 again. She was dead.

Preterite.

I, *f.* had been born. He had died. Had she set out?
 Had you, *f.* fallen? Had they, *m.* not returned? We, *f.* had
 not come.

Future.

Shall I, *f.* have returned? She will not have fallen. Will
 they, *f.* not have expired? You, *m.* will have set out.

Conditional.

I, *f.* should have intervened. Would he have attained?
 She would have come back. Should we, *m.* have become?

Present Subjunctive.

We, *f.* may not have agreed. You, *m.* may have disagreed.
 They, *f.* may have become. We may have interposed.

Preterite.

I, *f.* might have perished. She might not have gone. It, *f.*
 might have happened. They, *f.* might not have arrived.

To France, <i>en France</i>	from Spain, <i>d'Espagne</i>
from Germany, <i>d'Allemagne</i>	before me, <i>avant moi</i> ; already,
in England, <i>en Angleterre</i>	<i>déjà</i> ; room <i>chambre</i> , <i>f.</i>

* *Note.* The verbs, from which the participles are derived, are given at p. 117.

Reflective Verbs.

A VERB is called reflective when its subject and object are the same, these verbs are formed in French, with the pronouns *me, te, se, nous, vous, se*, answering to the English *myself, thyself, &c.*; as, *Je me flatte*, I flatter myself. Their compound tenses always take *être*. Many verbs are reflective in French, though not in English; as, *se lever*, to rise, &c.

MODEL OF A REFLECTIVE VERB CONJUGATED.

Se lever, to rise.

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Preterite.

Se lever, to rise

S'être levé, ou levée, to have risen

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

Past.

Compound.

Se levant, rising

Levé, m. levée, f.
risen

S'étant levé, ou levée,
having risen

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

1. *Je me lève*, I rise, am rising, or do rise

Nous nous levons, we rise, are rising, or do rise

2. *tu te lèves*, thou risest, art rising; or dost rise

vous vous levez, you rise, are rising, or do rise

3. *il se lève*, he rises, is rising, or does rise

ils se lèvent, they rise, are rising, or do rise

Imperfect.

Je me levais, I did rise

Tu te levais, thou didst rise,
&c.

*Preterite.**Je me levai*, I rose*Tu te lèvas*, thou rosest, &c.*Future.**Je me lèverai*, I shall rise*Tu te lèveras*, thou wilt rise,
&c.*Conditional.**Je me lèverais*, I should rise*Tu te lèverais*, thou wouldst
rise, &c.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*Present.**Singular.**Plural.*1. *Je me suis levé*, m. *levée*, f.
I have risen*Nous nous sommes levés*, m.
levées, f. we have risen2. *tu t'es levé*, m. *levée*, f.
thou hast risen*vous vous êtes levés*, m. *levées*,
f. you have risen3. *il s'est levé*, *elle s'est levée*,
he or she has risen*ils se sont levés*, ou *elles se*
sont levées, they have risenImp. *Je m'étais levé*, m. *levée*, f. I had risenPret. *Je me fus levé*, m. *levée*, f. I had risenFut. *Je me serai levé*, m. *levée*, f. I shall or will have risenCond. *Je me serais levé*, m. *levée*, f. I should have risen

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present.**Que je me lève*, that I may
rise*Que tu te lèves*, that thou
mayest rise, &c.*Preterite.**Que je me levasse*, that I
might rise*Que tu te levasses*, that thou
mightest rise, &c.

COMPOUND TENSES.

*Present.**Que je me sois levé*, ou *levée*,
that I may have risen*Que tu te sois levé*, ou *levée*,
that thou mayest have
risen, &c.

Preterite.

Que je me fusse levé, ou levée, that I might have risen
Que tu te fusses levé, ou levée, that thou mightest have risen, &c.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Singular.

Plural

. *Levons-nous, let us rise*
 . Lève-toi, do thou rise *levez-vous, do you rise*
 . qu'il ou qu'elle se lève, let *qu'ils se lèvent, ou qu'elles se*
 him or her rise *lèvent, let them rise*

Some reflexive verbs have *en* annexed to *me, te, se, &c.* and are conjugated as follows :

***S'en aller*, to go away.**

INFINITIVE MOOD.

Present.

Preterite.

S'en aller, to go away *S'en être allé*, to have gone away

PARTICIPLES.

Present.

Past.

Compound.

<i>En allant, going</i>	<i>Allé, m. allée, f.</i>	<i>S'en étant allé, having</i>
<i>away</i>	<i>gone</i>	<i>gone away</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Plural.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|---------------------------------|
| 1. Je m'en vais, I go away | Nous nous en allons, we go away |
| 2. tu t'en vas, thou goest away | vous vous en allez, you go away |
| 3. il s'en va, he goes away | ils s'en vont, they go away |

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

*Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|--|---|
| 1. | <i>Allons-nous-en</i> , let us go away |
| 2. <i>Va-t-en</i> , go away | <i>allez-vous-en</i> , do you go away |
| 3. <i>qu'il</i> , ou <i>qu'elle s'en aille</i> ,
let him or her go away | <i>qu'ils</i> , ou <i>qu'elles s'en aillent</i> ,
let them go away |

These verbs are conjugated interrogatively, &c. in the following manner :

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Interrogatively.**Se lever,**S'en aller.**Present Tense.**Singular.*

- | | |
|--|--|
| <i>Me lève-je?</i> or better, <i>est ce que je me lève?</i> do I rise? | <i>M'en vais-je?</i> do I go away? |
| <i>te lèves-tu?</i> dost thou rise? | <i>t'en vas-tu?</i> dost thou go away? |
| <i>se lève-t-il?</i> does he rise? | <i>s'en va-t-il?</i> does he go away? |
| <i>se lève-t-elle?</i> does she rise? | <i>s'en va-t-elle?</i> does she go away? |

Plural.

- | | |
|---|--|
| <i>Nous levons-nous?</i> do we rise? | <i>Nous en allons-nous?</i> do we go away? |
| <i>vous levez-vous?</i> do you rise? | <i>vous en allez-vous?</i> do you go away? |
| <i>se lèvent-ils, ou se lèvent-elles?</i> do they rise? | <i>s'en vont-ils? ou s'en vont elles?</i> do they go away? |
| Imp. <i>Me levais-je?</i> did I rise? | <i>M'en allais-je?</i> did I go away? |
| Pret. <i>Me levai-je?</i> did I rise? | <i>M'en allai-je?</i> did I go away? |
| Fut. <i>Me lèverai-je?</i> shall I rise? | <i>M'en irai-je?</i> shall I go away? |
| Cond. <i>Me lèverais-je?</i> should I rise? | <i>M'en irais-je?</i> should I go away? |

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres. <i>Me suis-je levé?</i> have I risen? &c.	<i>M'en suis-je allé?</i> have I gone away? have I been gone away?
Imp. <i>M'étais-je levé?</i> had I risen?	<i>M'en étais-je allé?</i> had I gone away?
Pret. <i>Me fus-je levé?</i> or better, <i>est-ce que je me fus levé?</i> had I risen?	<i>M'en fus-je allé?</i> or <i>est-ce que je m'en fus allé?</i> had I gone away?
F. <i>Me serai-je levé?</i> shall I have risen?	<i>M'en serai-je allé?</i> shall I have gone away?
C. <i>Me serais-je levé?</i> should I have risen?	<i>M'en serais-je allé?</i> should I have gone away?

Obs. The imperative and subjunctive never admit of the interrogative form.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Negatively.

Present Tense.

Singular.

<i>Je ne me lève pas</i> , I do not rise	<i>Je ne m'en vais pas</i> , I do not go away
<i>tu ne te lèves pas</i> , thou dost not rise	<i>tu ne t'en vas pas</i> , thou dost not go away
<i>il ne se lève pas</i> , he does not rise	<i>il ne s'en va pas</i> , he does not go away
<i>elle ne se lève pas</i> , she does not rise	<i>elle ne s'en va pas</i> , she does not go away

Plural.

<i>Nous ne nous levons pas</i> , we do not rise	<i>Nous ne nous en allons pas</i> , we do not go away
<i>vous ne vous levez pas</i> , you do not rise	<i>vous ne vous en allez pas</i> , you do not go away
<i>ils ne se lèvent pas</i> , they do not rise	<i>ils ne s'en vont pas</i> , they do not go away
<i>elles ne se lèvent pas</i> , they do not rise	<i>elles ne s'en vont pas</i> , they do not go away

Imp. <i>Je ne me levais pas</i> , I did not rise	<i>Je ne m'en allais pas</i> , I did not go away
Pr. <i>Je ne me levai pas</i> , I did not rise	<i>Je ne m'en allai pas</i> , I did not go away
Fut. <i>Je ne me lèverai pas</i> , I shall not rise	<i>Je ne m'en irai pas</i> , I shall not go away
Cond. <i>Je ne me lèverais pas</i> , I should not rise	<i>Je ne m'en irais pas</i> , I should not go away

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres. <i>Je ne me suis pas levé</i> , m. levée, f. I have not risen	<i>Je ne m'en suis pas allé</i> , m. allée, f. I have not gone away
Imp. <i>Je ne m'étais pas levé</i> , m. levée, f. I had not risen	<i>Je ne m'en étais pas allé</i> , m. allée, f. I had not gone away
Pret. <i>Je ne me fus pas levé</i> , m. levée, f. I had not risen	<i>Je ne me fus pas allé</i> , m. allée, f. I had not gone away
Fut. <i>Je ne me serai pas levé</i> , m. levée f. I shall not have risen	<i>Je ne m'en serai pas allé</i> , m. allée, f. I shall not have gone away
Cond. <i>Je ne me serais pas levé</i> , m. levée, f. I should not have risen	<i>Je ne m'en serais pas allé</i> , m. allée, f. I should not have gone away

And so on with the subjunctive, and the remaining persons of the indicative.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. <i>Ne te lève pas</i> , do not rise	<i>Ne t'en va pas</i> , do not go away
3. <i>qu'il ne se lève pas</i> , let him not rise	<i>qu'il ne s'en aille pas</i> , let him not go away
<i>qu'elle ne se lève pas</i> , let her not rise	<i>qu'elle ne s'en aille pas</i> , let her not go away

Singular

- | | | |
|--------|--|--|
| | 1. <i>Ne nous levons pas, let us not rise</i> | <i>Ne nous en allons pas, let us not go away</i> |
| Plural | 2. <i>ne vous levez pas, do you not rise</i> | <i>ne vous en allez pas, do you not go away</i> |
| | 3. <i>qu'ils ne se lèvent pas, ou qu'elles ne se lèvent pas, let them not rise</i> | <i>qu'ils ne s'en aillent pas, ou qu'elles ne s'en aillent pas, let them not go away</i> |

INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Interrogatively Negatively.**Present Tense.*

- | | | |
|----------|---|---|
| | 1. <i>Ne me lève-je pas ? ou est-ce que je ne me lève pas ? do I not rise ?</i> | <i>Ne m'en vais-je pas ? do I not go away ?</i> |
| Singular | 2. <i>ne te lèves-tu pas ? dost thou not rise ?</i> | <i>ne t'en vas-tu pas ? dost thou not go away ?</i> |
| | 3. { <i>ne se lève-t-il pas ? does he not rise ?</i> | <i>ne s'en va-t-il pas ? does he not go away ?</i> |
| | | <i>ne se lève-t-elle pas ? does she not rise ?</i> | ne s'en va-t-elle pas ? does she not go away ? |
| | 1. <i>Ne nous levons-nous pas ? do we not rise ?</i> | <i>Ne nous en allons-nous pas ? do we not go away ?</i> |
| Plural | 2. <i>ne vous levez-vous pas ? do you not rise ?</i> | <i>ne vous en allez-vous pas ? do you not go away ?</i> |
| | 3. <i>ne se lèvent-ils pas ? ou ne se lèvent-elles pas ? do they not rise ?</i> | <i>ne s'en vont-ils pas ? ou ne s'en vont-elles pas ? do they not go away ?</i> |
| Imp. | <i>Ne me levais-je pas ? did I not rise ?</i> | <i>Ne m'en allais-je pas ? did I not go away ?</i> |
| Pret. | <i>Ne me levai-je pas ? did I not rise ?</i> | <i>Ne m'en allai-je pas ? did I not go away ?</i> |
| Fut. | <i>Ne me lèverai-je pas ? shall I not rise ?</i> | <i>Ne m'en irai-je pas ? shall I not go away ?</i> |
| Cond. | <i>Ne me lèverais-je pas ? should I not rise ?</i> | <i>Ne m'en irais-je pas ? should I not go away ?</i> |

COMPOUND TENSES.

Pres. <i>Ne me suis-je pas levé ou levée?</i> have I not risen?	<i>Ne m'en suis-je pas allé ou allée?</i> have I not gone away?
Imp. <i>Ne m'étais-je pas levé?</i> had I not risen?	<i>Ne m'en étais-je pas allé?</i> had I not gone away?
Pret. <i>Ne me fus-je pas levé?</i> had I not risen?	<i>Ne m'en fus-je pas allé?</i> had I not gone away?
Fut. <i>Ne me serai-je pas levé?</i> shall I not have risen?	<i>Ne m'en serai-je pas allé?</i> shall I not have gone away?
Cond. <i>Ne me serais-je pas levé,</i> should I not have risen?	<i>Ne m'en serais-je pas allé?</i> should I not have gone away? &c.

Obs. The imperative and subjunctive do not admit of the interrogative form.

Reciprocal Verbs.

RECIPROCAL VERBS are formed by annexing *entre*, or *entr'* before a vowel, to the reflective pronouns *nous*, *vous*, and *se*; as, *s'entre battre*, to beat one another; *s'entr'aimer*, to love one another; they are conjugated in the plural only, but otherwise precisely the same as the reflective verb *s'en aller*; as,

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

Nous nous entr'aimons, we love one another
Vous vous entr'aimez, you love one another
Ils ou elles s'entr'aiment, they love one another

Compound Present.

Nous nous sommes entr'aimés, we have loved one another
Vous vous êtes entr'aimés, you have loved one another
Ils se sont entr'aimés, they have loved one another

And so on through the other moods and tenses.

Impersonal Verbs.

A VERB is called impersonal when the agent or nominative is unknown, or considered as such. This unknown agent or nominative is expressed in English, by the word *it*, and in French by *il*; as,

<i>Il pleut</i> , it rains	<i>il éclaire</i> , it lightens
<i>il neige</i> , it snows	<i>il faut</i> , it is necessary
<i>il grêle</i> , it hails	<i>il arrive</i> , it happens
<i>il bruine</i> , it drizzles	<i>il importe</i> , it concerns
<i>il gèle</i> , it freezes	<i>il semble</i> , it seems
<i>il dégèle</i> , it thaws	<i>il paraît</i> , it appears
<i>il tonne</i> , it thunders	<i>il convient</i> , it becomes

These are all of the first conjugation, except *pleuvoir*, *falloir*, *paraître*, and *convenir*. *Pleuvoir*, to rain, is conjugated thus :

Pres. Ind.	<i>Il pleut</i> , it rains
Imp.	<i>Il pleuvait</i> , it rained
Pret.	<i>Il plut</i> , it rained
Fut.	<i>Il pleuvra</i> , it will rain
Cond.	<i>Il pleuvrait</i> , it would rain
Pr. Sub.	<i>Qu'il pleuve</i> , that it may rain
Pret.	<i>Qu'il plût</i> , that it might rain
Imper.	<i>Qu'il pleuve</i> , let it rain

These verbs may be conjugated interrogatively, negatively, and interrogatively negatively ; as,

<i>Pleut-il</i> ? does it rain ?	<i>ne pleuvait-il pas</i> ? did it not rain ?
<i>est ce qu'il pleut</i> ? it does not rain, does it ?	<i>neige-t-il</i> ? does it snow ?
<i>il ne pleut pas</i> , it does not rain	<i>il ne neigera pas</i> , it will not snow
<i>pleuvait-il</i> ? did it rain ?	<i>ne tonnera-t-il pas</i> ? will it not thunder ? &c.
<i>il pleuvait</i> , it rained	

Falloir, -to be necessary, is never used in the infinitive; it is conjugated as follows :

Pr. Ind. *Il faut*, it is necessary

Imp. *Il fallait*, } it was necessary

Pret. *Il fallut*, }

Fut. *Il faudra*, it will be necessary

Cond. *Il faudrait*, it would be necessary

Com. Pr. *Il a fallu*, it has been necessary

Pr. Sub. *Qu'il faille*, that it may be necessary

Pret. *Qu'il fallût*, that it might be necessary

Obs. *Il faut* is often translated by *I must* or *should*, *you must*, *we must*, *they must*, *it must*, &c. and sometimes by *it is requisite*, *it is needful*, &c.

Faire is an impersonal when speaking of the weather ; as,

Il fait chaud, it is hot

il fait beau, it is fine

il fait froid, it is cold

il fait mauvais temps, it is bad

il fait crotté, it is dirty

weather

il fait du vent, the wind blows

Faire, to make, is thus conjugated with *beau* :

Pres. *Il fait beau*, it is fine (*literally*) it makes fine

Imp. *Il faisait beau*, it was fine (*literally*) it made fine

Pret. *Il fit beau*, it was fine (*literally*) it made fine

Fut. *Il fera beau*, it will be fine (*literally*) it will make fine

Cond. *Il ferait beau*, it would be fine (*literally*) it would make fine

Avoir as an impersonal is conjugated with *y* ; thus,

Simple Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Il y a*, there is, or there are

Imp. *Il y avait*, } there was, or there were

Pret. *Il y eut*, }

Fut. *Il y aura*, there will be

Cond. *Il y aurait*, there would be

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *Qu'il y ait*, that there may be

Pret. *Qu'il y eût*, that there might be

Compound Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Il y a eu*, there has, or have been

Imp. *Il y avait eu*, } there had been

Pret. *Il y eut eu*, }

Fut. *Il y aura eu*, there will have been

Cond. *Il y aurait eu*, there would have been

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *Qu'il y ait eu*, that there may have been

Pret. *Qu'il y eût eu*, that there might have been

NEGATIVELY.

Simple Tenses Negatively.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Il n'y a pas*, there is or are not

Imp. *Il n'y avait pas*, } there was, or there were not

Pret. *Il n'y eut pas*, }

Fut. *Il n'y aura pas*, there will not be

Cond. *Il n'y aurait pas*, there would not be

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *Qu'il n'y ait pas*, that there may not be

Pret. *Qu'il n'y eût pas*, that there might not be

Compound Tenses Negatively.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *Il n'y a pas eu*, there has, or have not been

Imp. *Il n'y avait pas eu*, } there had not been

Pret. *Il n'y eut pas eu*, }

Fut. *Il n'y aura pas eu*, there will not have been

Cond. *Il n'y aurait pas eu*, there would not have been

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- Pres. *Qu'il n'y ait pas eu*, that there may not have been
 Pret. *Qu'il n'y eût pas eu*, that there might not have been

INTERROGATIVELY.

Simple Tenses.

INDICATIVE.

- Pres. *Y a-t-il?* is or are there?
 Imp. *Y avait-il?* }
 Pret. *Y eut-il?* } was or were there?
 Fut. *Y aura-t-il?* will there be?
 Cond. *Y aurait-il?* would there be?
 No subjunctive in the interrogative form.

Compound Tenses Interrogatively.

- Pres. *Y a-t-il eu?* has or have there been?
 Imp. *Y avait-il eu?* }
 Pret. *Y eut-il eu?* } had there been?
 Fut. *Y aura-t-il eu?* will there have been?
 Cond. *Y aurait-il eu?* would there have been?

NEGATIVELY INTERROGATIVELY.

Simple Tenses.

- Pres. *N'y a-t-il pas?* is or are there not?
 Imp. *N'y avait-il pas?* }
 Pret. *N'y eut-il pas?* } was or were there not?
 Fut. *N'y aura-t-il pas?* will there not be?
 Cond. *N'y aurait-il pas?* would there not be?

Compound Tenses.

- Pres. *N'y a-t-il pas eu?* has or have there not been?
 Imp. *N'y avait-il pas eu?* }
 Pret. *N'y eut-il pas eu?* } had there not been?
 Fut. *N'y aura-t-il pas eu?* will there not have been?
 Cond. *N'y aurait-il pas eu?* would there not have been?

C'est, it is.

C'est, it is
c'était, ou *ce fut*, it was
ce sera, it will be

ce serait, it would be
que ce soit, that it may be
que ce fût, that it might be

Interrogatively.

Est-ce ? is it ?
était-ce ? was it ?
fut-ce ? was it ?
sera-ce ? will it be ?
serait-ce ? would it be ?

Negatively.

Ce n'est pas, it is not
ce n'était pas, it was not
ce ne fut pas, it was not
ce ne sera pas, it will not be
ce ne serait pas, it would not be

Interrogatively Negatively.

N'est-ce pas ? is it not ?
n'était-ce pas ? was it not ?
ne fut-ce pas ? was it not ?
ne sera-ce pas ? will it not be ?
ne serait-ce pas ? would it not be ?

Passive, Reflective, &c. Verbs.

*THE following examples are intended to illustrate the manner in which the *passive*, *reflective*, *reciprocal*, and *impersonal verbs* are used.

Il ne s'est pas repenti
Je m'en allai, ou *je m'en fus*
Il s'en est allé

He has not repented
 I went away
 He has gone away, or he has
 been gone away

Il se promène dans le jardin
Je m'étais repenti

He is walking in the garden
 I had repented

Il s'en retourne de Paris

He is returning from Paris

Il se déplaît dans ce lieu

He does not like that place

Le vin s'en va, *le tonneau ne*
vaut rien

The wine runs away, the cask
 (or the vessel) is good for
 nothing

Comment vous portez-vous ?

How do you do ?

<i>Je me porte très bien, je vous remercie</i>	Very well, thank you
<i>Elle s'est flattée long-tems</i>	She has flattered herself a long time
<i>Je ne me suis pas tué</i>	I have not killed myself
<i>Je m'étais flaté</i>	I had flattered myself
<i>Nous ne nous sommes point flattés</i>	We have not flattered ourselves.
<i>Nous nous entre-tuons</i>	We kill one another
<i>Ils s'entre-tuaient</i>	They killed one another
<i>Ils se tuent l'un l'autre</i>	They kill one another
<i>M'en serais-je allé</i>	Should I have gone away
<i>En ce monde il faut se secourir l'un l'autre</i>	In this world we must assist one another
<i>Il faut que j'aille</i>	I must go
<i>Il faut que vous vous en alliez</i>	You must go away
<i>Il faut s'entr'aider, c'est la loi de la nature</i>	We should help one another, it is the law of nature
<i>Il faut que je commence cet ouvrage aujourd'hui</i>	I must begin that work to-day, or now
<i>Il me faut de l'argent</i>	I must have money, or I want money
<i>Il faut que vous vendiez votre maison</i>	You must sell your house
<i>Il nous faut une maison</i>	We must have a house, or we want a house
<i>Il lui faut un livre</i>	He wants a book
<i>Cela n'est pas comme il faut</i>	That is not as it should be
<i>Il me faut une nouvelle grammaire</i>	I want a new grammar, or I must have a new grammar
<i>Il* y a dix milles de Londres à Croydon</i>	It is ten miles from London to Croydon
<i>Il y a une grande différence d'âge entre ces deux personnes</i>	There is a great difference of age between these two persons
<i>Il y a des hommes qui ne sont jamais contents</i>	There are (some) men who are never satisfied
<i>Il y aura beaucoup de monde</i>	There will be a great many people

* Obs. *Il y a* is Englished by *it is, there is, there are*: *il y a* is only used in the singular.

<i>Je suis fâché contre lui</i>	I am vexed with him
<i>Je m'en veux, ou je suis fâché contre moi</i>	I am vexed with myself
<i>Je me suis fâché contre elle aujourd'hui, ou j'ai été fâché contre elle aujourd'hui</i>	I have been vexed with her to-day
<i>Elle s'est blessé la tête</i>	She has hurt her own head
<i>Elle l'a blessé à la tête</i>	She has hurt his, or her head (meaning another person's head)
<i>Il s'était blessé à la tête avant votre départ</i>	He had hurt his (own) head before your departure
<i>Il se blessa hier à la tête</i>	He hurt, or did hurt his head yesterday (meaning his own head)
<i>Il lui blessa la tête hier</i>	He hurt his, or her head yesterday (meaning another person's head)
<i>Elle le blessa à la tête hier</i>	She hurt his head yesterday
<i>Il le blessa à la tête hier</i>	He hurt his head yesterday (meaning another person's head)
<i>Elle ne s'était pas habillée</i>	She had not dressed herself
<i>Ne m'habillerai-je pas ?</i>	Shall I not dress myself ?
<i>Ne vous habillerez-vous pas ?</i>	Will you not dress yourself ?
<i>Ne dois-je pas m'habiller ?</i>	Am I not to dress myself ?
<i>Je serais fâché contre lui</i>	I should be vexed with him
<i>Je me serais fâché contre lui</i>	I should have been vexed with him
<i>Si j'étais fâché contre vous</i>	If I were, or were I angry with you
<i>Si je m'étais, ou si j'avais été fâché contre vous, c'eût été votre faute</i>	If I had been, or had I been angry with you, it would have been your fault
<i>J'en suis fâché</i>	I am sorry for it
<i>Allez-vous quelquefois au Vauxhall ? Oui, je me donne ce plaisir tous les ans</i>	Do you sometimes go to Vauxhall ? Yes, I have (I give myself) that pleasure every year

PRACTICE ON THE REFLECTIVE, RECIPROCAL,
AND IMPERSONAL VERBS.

I am reposing, *se reposer*
I am not vexed, *se fâcher*
I do not walk, *se promener*
do I boast? *se vanter*
thou dost not care, *se soucier*
dost thou not mock? *se moquer*
thou dost rejoice, *se réjouir*
dost thou behave? *se comporter*
it concerns, *importer*
does it go away? *s'en aller*
it does not go away, *s'en aller*
does it not run away? *s'enfuir*
she comes again, *s'en revenir*
does she fall asleep? *s'endormir*
she does not remember, *se souvenir*
he makes use, *se servir*
does he not repent? *se repentir*

He does not perceive, *s'apercevoir*
does he abstain? *s'abstenir*
we are accustomed, or we accustom ourselves, *s'accoutumer*
do we employ? *s'employer*
are we mistaken? *se tromper*
we are not grown rich, *s'enrichir*
are we not disposed? *se disposer*
you depart, *s'éloigner*
do you resign? *se démettre*
do you not struggle? *se débattre*
you do not intermeddle, *s'entremettre*
they make a mistake, *se méprendre*
do they not submit? *se soumettre*

Imperfect.

I was resolved, *se résoudre*
thou wast dressing, or thou dressedst thyself, *s'habiller*
did it grow cold? *se refroidir*
it did not grow warm, *s'échauffer*
was it warm? *faire chaud*
was it not cold? *faire froid*
he perceived, *s'apercevoir*

Did he stop? *s'arrêter*
he did not lie down, *se coucher*
she wondered, *s'étonner*
it did not run out, *s'écouler*
did we wake? *s'éveiller*
we were settled, *s'établir*
they were reunited, *se réunir*
did they surrender? *se rendre*

Preterite.

Was I not undressing, or did I not undress myself? <i>se</i> <i>déshabiller</i>	We ran away, <i>s'en fuir</i> did we not get rid? <i>se dé-</i> <i>barrasser</i>
I was contented, <i>se contenter</i> didst thou abstain? <i>s'abstenir</i>	you resigned, <i>se démettre</i> did you make a mistake? <i>se</i> <i>méprendre</i>
he disliked, <i>se déplaire</i> she was pleased, <i>se plaire</i> was she silent? <i>se taire</i>	they did not submit, <i>se sou-</i> <i>mettre</i>

Future.

I shall go away, <i>s'en aller</i> wilt thou not remember? <i>se</i> <i>souvenir</i>	She will not walk, <i>se pro-</i> <i>mener</i>
will she fall asleep? <i>s'en-</i> <i>dormir</i>	she will rejoice, <i>se réjouir</i> we shall interfere, <i>se mêler</i>
it will rain, <i>pleuvoir</i> will it snow? <i>neiger</i>	you will not make haste, <i>se</i> <i>hâter</i>
it will not be hot, <i>faire chaud</i> will it not be warm?	they will not quarrel toge- ther, <i>s'entre quereller</i> they will agree, <i>s'accorder</i>

Conditional.

I should complain, <i>se plaindre</i> thou wouldst grow weak, <i>s'affaiblir</i>	Would she not be informed, <i>s'informer</i>
he would remember, <i>se sou-</i> <i>venir</i>	we should repent, <i>se repentir</i> you would be lost, <i>se perdre</i>
she would not be silent, <i>se</i> <i>taire</i>	they would fancy, <i>s'imaginer</i> would they not perceive? <i>s'apercevoir</i>

Subjunctive Present.

I may be grieved, <i>s'affliger</i> thou mayest go away, <i>s'en</i> <i>aller</i>	We may not return, <i>s'en re-</i> <i>tourner</i>
she may not go away thou mayest not fall asleep again, <i>se rendormir</i>	you may fly away, <i>s'en voler</i> you may not complain, <i>se</i> <i>plaindre</i>
he may come back, <i>s'en re-</i> <i>venir</i>	they may sit down, <i>s'asseoir</i> they may not strike each other, <i>s'entre frapper</i>

Preterite.

I might fall asleep, <i>s'endormir</i>	We might help one another, <i>s'entr'aider</i>
thou mightest faint away, <i>s'évanouir</i>	we might not launch forth, <i>se répandre</i>
he might get rid, <i>se défaire</i>	you might perceive, <i>s'appercevoir</i>
he might not shake off, <i>s'affranchir</i>	they might come back, <i>s'en revenir</i>

Imperative.

Do thou apply, <i>s'appliquer</i>	Do not (you) run away, <i>s'en fuir</i>
do not fall asleep, <i>s'endormir</i>	let them, <i>m.</i> be silent, <i>se taire</i>
let him be inured, <i>se faire aller</i>	let them, <i>f.</i> not be afflicted, <i>s'affliger</i>
let her walk, <i>se promener</i>	let them, <i>m.</i> help one another, <i>s'entr'aider</i>
let her not fancy, <i>s'imaginer</i>	let them, <i>f.</i> not fall asleep again, <i>se rendormir</i>
let us remember, <i>se souvenir</i>	
let us be ready, <i>se disposer</i>	
sit (you) down, <i>s'asseoir</i>	

Practice on the Compounds of the same Verbs.

Pres. Ind. I have not lain in bed too long. I have been vexed at what he said. Have I not walked every day? Have I boasted? Thou hast cared for that. Hast thou laughed at us? Hast thou not rejoiced with thy relations? You have not behaved towards me, as I have behaved towards you. Has (is)* he gone away? He has (is) not gone away early. It has run away. She has fallen asleep very soon. Has she not remembered (of) me? He has made use of my book. Has he not repented of his conduct? He has not abstained from strong liquors. Has he perceived (of) the snare? We have been accustomed to (the) labor. Have we been mistaken? You have not departed from him. Have they resigned their places? They have struggled in vain.

* *Obs.* The words within the parentheses are according to the French idiom.

140 PRACTICE ON THE REFLECTIVE, &c. VERBS.

Imperf. Had she resolved to set out? It had not been warm. They, *f.* had not been dressed. Had they not perceived (*of*) the trick? The soldiers had surrendered.

Pret. I, *f.* had not been contented. You had not disliked his company (*been pleased in his company*). She had not been silent long. You had run away.

Fut. Shall I have gone away? Shall I not have got rid of him? Will it not have rained? Will you have resigned your office? They will not have made a mistake on that subject. Will they, *f.* not have submitted to his orders?

Cond. Wouldest thou not have fallen asleep again immediately? We should not have come back so soon. Would you not have complained of him? They would not have struck each other. They would have fancied themselves to be very clever.

Pres. Sub. I may not have remembered past times. He may have been gone away. She may not have fallen asleep. They may not have quarrelled together. They may not have been grieved.

Pret. I might have fainted away at that sight. He might have got rid of his prejudices. We might have shaken off that odious yoke. They might have launched forth into abuse. They might not have perceived (*of*) the alteration.

Lain (*kept*) *tenu*
too long, *trop long-tems*
in bed, *au lit*
at what he, *de ce qu'il*
to say, *dire*
every day, *tous les jours*
for, *en or de*; that, *cela*
at, *de*; with, *avec*
towards me, *envers moi*
as, *comme*; thee, *toi*
~~early, *de bonne heure*~~
very soon, *bientôt*
of, *de*; book, *livre*, m.

conduct, *conduite*, f.
from, *des*
liquor, *liqueur*, f.
strong, *fort*, f.
snare, *piège*, m.; to, *au*
labor, *travail*, m.
from him, *de lui*
place, *emploi*, m.
in vain, *en vain*; to, *à*
set out, *partir*; (*of*) the, *du*
trick, *tour*, m.
soldier, *soldat*, m.; in, *dans*
company, *compagnie*, f.

ong, *long-tems*
 of him, *de lui*
 office, *emploi*, m.
 subject, *sujet*, m.
 order, *ordre*, m.
 immediately, *sur le champ*
 so soon, *si tôt*
 to be, *être*
 very, *bien*; clever, *habile*

past times, *passé*
 to grieve, *se chagriner*
 at, *à*; sight, *vue*, f.
 prejudice, *préjugé*, m.
 yoke, *joug*, m.
 odious, *odieux*; into, *en*
 abuse, *invectives*, f. pl.
 (of) the, *du*
 alteration, *changement*, m.

EXERCISES ON ALL THE VERBS, TO BE TRANSLATED
 INTO ENGLISH.

FIRST LESSON.

J'aime la paix et la tranquillité. Tu étudies la géographie et l'histoire. Il parle inconsidérément. Il va à la campagne. Vous l'amusez par de belles promesses. Elles montrent du courage, de la constance et de la fermeté. Je le recevais avec amitié. Vous préférez le plaisir à la gloire, et les richesses à l'honneur. Alexandre surmonta tous les obstacles, et vainquit ses ennemis. Il retraça dans sa personne toutes les vertus de ses ancêtres. Je n'ai pas encore fini mon livre. Dans toutes vos actions, consultez la lumière de la raison. N'avez-vous pas soulagé les pauvres. Aimons la justice, la paix et la vertu. Sacrifiez votre intérêt personnel au bien public. Que j'imitasse son exemple. Qu'il eût perfectionné ses qualités naturelles. Qu'elles eussent été plus attentives à leur devoir. Que nous fussions humains et généreux. Nous ne haïssons pas l'homme, mais ses vices.

Paix, peace; *étudier*, study
inconsidérément, inconsiderately
aller, to go; *l'*, her
montrer, to show
fermeté, firmness
avec amitié, kindly
surmonter, to surmount
vaincre, to vanquish, or conquer

retracer, to exhibit
dans, in; *encore*, yet
lumière, light
soulager, to relieve
aimer, to love
au bien public, for the good of the public
imiter, to copy
perfectionner, to perfect
devoir, duty

SECOND LESSON.

Aurai-je le plaisir de vous trouver chez vous demain ? Il va pleuvoir. Pleuvra-t-il aujourd'hui ? Quoique vous soyez plus grand que lui, il est plus âgé que vous. Si j'avais de l'argent, j'achèterais une propriété. Si l'homme considérait la bonté de Dieu, il ne douterait jamais de sa providence. On m'a montré une chambre bien meublée. Il ne peut pas sortir. Puis-je sortir ? Vous devriez penser avant de parler. Combien y a-t-il d'ici chez vous ? Il y a deux ans que je suis ici. Il faisait très chaud hier, et il fait très froid aujourd'hui. Il vaut mieux qu'il le fasse que de ne rien faire. Il venait de sortir quand je suis entré. Est-ce qu'il viendra bientôt ? Il ne peut pas partir attendu les vents contraires. Soit qu'il le sache ou non. Trop orner un sujet prouve souvent un manque de jugement et de goût. Il n'y a que Dieu qui puisse faire quelque chose de rien. Si vous voulez être heureux, apprenez que la source du bonheur est dans le cœur.

Chez vous, at home
va, is going
quoique, although
grand, tall ; *que*, than
lui (*him*) he
plus âgé, older ; *si*, if
acheter, to purchase
propriété, estate
considérer, to consider
bonté, goodness
montrer, to show
chambre, room
bien, well
meublée, furnished
puis, may ; *devriez*, should
avant, before
combien, how far
que, since

suis (*am*) came ; *ici*, here
hier, yesterday
vaut mieux, is better
le fasse, should do it
ne rien faire, do nothing
il venait de sortir, he just
went out
quand, when ; *bientôt*, soon
attendu, on account of
soit que, whether
savoir, to know
non, not
orne, to embellish
prouver, to betray
souvent, frequently
manque, want
puisse, can
source, fountain

THIRD LESSON.

IMPRIMERIE. Il est certain que l'imprimerie doit sa naissance à l'art de la gravure en bois. Les fabricans de cartes à jouer commencèrent les premiers à graver en bois les images de Saints ; et c'est sans doute ce qui donna à Gutenberg, de Mayence, l'idée de l'imprimerie dont il s'occupa, à ce qu'on croit, dès 1436 ; il en fit les premiers essais vers 1439 ; mais il n'y eut de livres imprimés que vers 1450 ; et le premier, portant date, est le *Psautier* de 1457. Fust et Schoeffer partagent avec Gutenberg la gloire de cette invention. On relègue au rang des fables l'histoire de Laurent Coster, de Harlem, malgré la vénération des habitans de cette ville pour cet homme, et la solennité avec laquelle on a encore célébré dernièrement l'anniversaire de sa prétendue découverte.

Imprimerie, f. printing
devoir, to owe
naissance, origin
gravure, engraving
en, on; *bois*, wood
fabricans, manufacturers
cartes à jouer, cards
à graver, by engraving
dès, about; *essais*, attempt

vers, about
portant date, bearing date
psautier, psalter, or book of psalms
partager, to share
on relègue au rang, they place among
malgré, notwithstanding
dernièrement, lately

FOURTH LESSON.

La mort est un bien pour tous les hommes. Elle est la nuit de ce jour inquiet qu'on appelle la vie. C'est dans le sommeil de la mort que reposent pour jamais les maladies, les douleurs, les chagrins, les craintes, qui agitent sans cesse les malheureux vivans. Examinez les hommes qui paraissent les plus heureux ; vous verrez qu'ils ont acheté leur prétendu bonheur bien chèrement ; la considération publique, pas des maux domestiques ; la fortune, par la

perte de la santé ; le plaisir si rare d'être aimé, par des sacrifices continuels ; et souvent à la fin d'une vie sacrifiée aux intérêts d'autrui, ils ne voient autour d'eux que des amis faux et des parens ingrats.

Un bien, a gain
pour, to
jour inquiet, day of trouble
sommeil, sleep
reposent, repose
malheureux, unhappy
vivans, mortals
paraissent, appear

verrez, will see
bien chèrement, very dearly
consideration, esteem
perte, loss
d'autrui, of others
autour, around
faux, false
parens, relations

Adverbs.

FORMATION OF ADVERBS.

RULE I.

ADVERBS are mostly formed from the feminine of adjectives, by adding the syllable **ment* ; as, from *sage*, m. or f. wise, is formed *sagement*, wisely ; *heureux*, m. *heureuse*, f. happy, *heureusement*, happily ; *franc*, m. *franche*, f. free, *franchement*, freely ; *doux*, m. *douce*, f. sweet, *doucement*, sweetly ; but when a masculine adjective ends in *é*, *i*, or *u*, *ment* is added to the masculine ; as, *aisé*, m. *aisée*, f. easy, *aisément*, easily ; *hardi*, m. *hardie*, f. bold, *hardiment*, boldly ; *absolu*, m. *absolue*, f. absolute, *absolument*, absolutely.

The following are deviations from the above rule.

Aveugle, m. or f. blind ; *aveuglément*, blindly
commode, m. or f. convenient ; *commodément*, conveniently
commun, m. common ; *communément*, commonly

* *Obs.* *Ment* corresponds to the English *ly*.

Conforme, m. or f. conformable; *conformément*, conformably
énorme, m. or f. enormous; *énormément*, enormously
exprès, m. express; *expressément*, expressly
gentil, m. genteel; *gentiment*, genteely
obscur, m. obscure; *obscurément*, obscurely
profond, m. profound; *profondément*, profoundly
précis, m. precise; *précisément*, precisely

So form their *derivatives*; as, *incommode*, inconvenient;
incommodément, inconveniently; &c.

RULE II.

Those adjectives which end in *ant* and *ent* become adverbs by changing *nt* into *mment*; as, *vaillant*, valiant, *vaillamment*, valiantly; *diligent*, diligent, *diligemment*, diligently; except, *lent*, slow, and *présent*, present, which make *lente-ment*, slowly, and *présentement*, presently.

ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL EXPRESSIONS.

The learner should pay particular attention to the following adverbs and adverbial expressions:

à bout, to the last extremity, the end.

Il a poussé cet homme *à bout*, he has driven that man *to the last extremity*. Il est venu *à bout* de son argent, he has seen his money *out*, or he saw *the end* of his money.

à califourchon, astride.

Ils vont *à califourchon*, they go *astride*.

à contre cœur, reluctantly, unwillingly, with regret.

Il le fit *à contre cœur*, he did it *reluctantly, unwillingly, or with regret*.

à couvert, sheltered, secure.

Il est *à couvert* de la pluie, he is *sheltered* from the rain.

à découvert, in the open air, openly, exposed to.

Nous étions *à découvert*, we were *exposed* to the weather.
 Parlez *à découvert*, speak *openly*.

à dessein, designedly, on purpose, intentionally, &c.

Vous l'avez fait *à dessein*, you have done it, or did it *designedly, on purpose, or intentionally*.

à droite, on, or to the right, on the right hand.

Tournez *à droite*, puis *à gauche*, turn *on*, or to the right, then *on*, or to the left.

à faux, unjustly, wrongfully, falsely, &c.

Vous l'accusez *à faux*, you accuse him *unjustly*, *wrongfully*, or *falsely*.

à fleur de, even, or level with.

Cette digue est *à fleur d'eau*, that bank is *even* with the water.

à foison, in abundance, abundantly, plentifully.

Il y avait de tout *à foison*, there was *plenty* of every thing, or every thing *in abundance*.

à fond, thoroughly, perfectly.

Il possède cette science *à fond*, he is *thoroughly* master of that science.

à jamais, ou *pour jamais*, always, for ever.

C'est *pour jamais*, it is *for ever*. Nous sommes *à jamais* ruinés, we are ruined *for ever*.

ailleurs, somewhere else, elsewhere.

J'irai *ailleurs*, I shall go *somewhere else*. Envoyez *ailleurs*, send *elsewhere*, or to *another place*.

ainsi, thus, so, in this manner, &c.

La chose se passa *ainsi*, the thing happened *thus*. On est *ainsi* fait, le monde est *ainsi* fait, such is the world, such is the genius of the age. *Ainsi* des autres choses, *ainsi* du reste, and so forth.

à jour, open, openly.

Une palissade *à jour*, an *open* fence.

à l'abandon, in confusion, at random, in disorder.

Tout est *à l'abandon*, every thing is *in confusion*.

à la fois, at once.

On ne peut pas tout faire *à la fois*, we cannot do every thing, or all *at once*.

à l'Anglaise, after the English fashion, manner, or way.

Vous vivez *à l'Anglaise*, you live *after the English fashion*.

à la Française, after the French fashion, manner, or way.

Nous vivons *à la Française*, we live *after the French fashion*.

la légère, lightly, foolishly, wantonly.

Elle est vêtue *à la légère*, she is *lightly* dressed, or clothed.
Ne faites rien *à la légère*, do nothing *foolishly*, or *wantonly*.

la renverse, backwards, upon one's back.

Je tomberai *à la renverse*, I shall fall *backwards*. Il était couché *à la renverse*, he was lying *on his back*.

la ronde, round, round about.

Dix lieues *à la ronde*, ten leagues *round*. Buvez *à la ronde*, let us drink *round*.

la volée, inconsiderately, at random.

Il fait toutes choses *à la volée*, he does every thing *inconsiderately*. Il parle *à la volée*, he speaks *at random*.

l'écart, in a bye place, aside, to omit.

Les voleurs le trouvèrent *à l'écart* et le dépouillèrent, the thieves found him *in a bye place* and stripped him. Il le prit *à l'écart*, he took him *aside*. Laissez cela *à l'écart*, omit that, or leave that *on one side*.

à l'envers, the wrong side outwards, upon the decline, &c.

Il a mis ses bas *à l'envers*, he has put on his stockings *the wrong side outwards*. Ses affaires vont *à l'envers*, his affairs are (*go*) *upon the decline*.

à l'envi, in emulation of one another, to contend who shall do best.

Ils sont *à l'envi* qui sera le plus diligent, they try who can be (*will be*) most diligent.

à l'étourdi, inconsiderately, giddily, rashly, heedlessly.

Il ne faut pas agir *à l'étourdi*, we must not act *inconsiderately*, or *rashly*.

à l'improviste, unexpectedly, unawares, on a sudden.

Il est survenu *à l'improviste*, he came *unexpectedly*, or *suddenly*.

alors, then, at that time.

Alors je lui dis, *then* I said to him. Où étiez-vous *alors*? where were you *then*, or *at that time*?

à merveille, ou *à merveilles*, admirably well, wonderfully, exceedingly well.

Il prêche *à merveilles*, he preaches *admirably*, or *exceedingly well*. Elle peint *à merveille*, she paints *admirably*.

à peine, scarcely, hardly.

'*À peine* le soleil était-il levé, qu'on aperçut l'ennemi, the sun had (*was*) *scarcely* risen, when we perceived the enemy.
'*À peine* sait-il lire, he can *hardly*, or *scarcely* read.

à plate couture, entirely, totally.

L'armée a été défaite *à plate couture*, the army has been *entirely*, or *totally* defeated.

à plaisir, carefully, well, designedly, at leisure, at one's ease.

Cela est travaillé *à plaisir*, that is *carefully*, or *well* wrought.
Un conte fait *à plaisir*, a fiction, tale, story, romance.
(Literally, a tale made *designedly*, or *on purpose*).

à plein, entirely, fully.

Il a traité *à plein* cette question, he has treated that question *fully*.

à plomb, perpendicularly, directly (*à plomb*, when used as a noun, is written as one word).

Il est tombé *à plomb*, it fell, or has fallen *perpendicularly*.
Prendre l'*aplomb*, to level a wall. Prendre les *aplombs* d'une muraille, to try, or to see whether a wall is level by the *plummet*.

à point, *à point nommé*, at the appointed time, in time, seasonably, very apropos.

Vous venez *à point*, *bien à point*, *à point nommé*, you are come in time, very *apropos*, seasonably.

après, after, after that, subsequently.

Ils iront devant et lui *après*, they will go before and he *after*.

à propos, seasonably, apropos, in time, &c.; *mal à propos*, *hors de propos*, unseasonably, at an unseasonable time.

Elle fait chaque chose *à propos*, she does every thing *seasonably*, or *in proper time*. Vous venez bien *mal à propos*, you are come at a very *unseasonable time*.

à quartier, aside, out of the way; *mettre à quartier*, to lay by.

Me tirant *à quartier*, il me dit, taking me *aside*, he said to me.
Il ne peut *mettre* de l'argent *à quartier*, he cannot *lay by* money.

reculons, backwards.

Les cordiers travaillent à *reculons*, rope-makers go *backwards* when they are at work.

assez, sufficiently, sufficient, enough.

Il n'a pas *assez* d'argent, he has not *sufficient*, or *enough* money.

tâtons, gropingly, in obscurity, or in the dark.

Il marche à *tâtons*, he gropes *along in the dark*. Les philosophes païens cherchaient la vérité à *tâtons*, the heathen philosophers sought the truth *in obscurity*.

à tort, wrongfully, unjustly, without a cause; **à tort et à travers**, inconsiderately, at random.

Vous m'accusez à *tort*, you accuse me *wrongfully*, or *without a cause*. Il parle à *tort et à travers*, sans savoir ce qu'il dit, he speaks *at random*, without knowing what he says.

au dépourvu, unexpectedly, unaware, or unawares.

Il l'a pris *au dépourvu*, he took (*has taken*) him *unexpectedly*, or *unawares*.

avant, far, deep, forward (this word is generally used with the adverbial particles, *si, bien, trop, plus, assez, fort*).

N'allez pas *si avant*, do not go *so far*, or *so forward*. Vous creusez *trop avant*, you dig *too deep*.

aujourd'hui, to-day, this day, now, at present, in this age, &c.

Il viendra *aujourd'hui*, he will come *to-day*. *D'aujourd'hui* en huit, *this day* sennight. Cela se pratiquait autrefois, mais *aujourd'hui* on en use autrement, that was the custom formerly, but *now*, or *at present*, it is otherwise. La mode *d'aujourd'hui*, the *present* fashion.

auparavant, before, first, formerly, &c.

Si vous voulez vous en aller, faites cela *auparavant*, if you will go away, do that *first*. Un mois *auparavant*, a month *before*.

aussitôt, immediately, presently.

J'irai *aussitôt*, I shall go *immediately*.

autant (is generally accompanied by *que* before a verb, and by *de* before a noun), as much as, as many as, so much, so many; **autant de fois**, as often as.

Travaillez *autant que* vous pourrez, work *as much as* you can. Il y avait *autant de* femmes que d'hommes, there were *as many* women as men. J'en ai eu *autant*, I have had *so much* for it. Je veux aller chez vous *autant de fois* que vous voudrez, I will go to your house *as often as* you please.

autour, about, round, round about; *ici autour*, about here.

Il regardait tout *autour* si on le suivait, he looked *round about* to see if any one followed him. Il loge quelque part *ici autour*, he lodges somewhere *about here*, or *hereabouts*.

autrefois, formerly, in former times, anciently, of old, &c.

C'était *autrefois* la coutume, it was *formerly* the custom.

beaucoup, much, very much, many, a great deal, a great many, &c. (this word is always followed by *de* or *d'* before a noun.)

Il a *beaucoup d'argent*, ou *bien* de l'argent, he has a *great deal* of money. Elle parle *beaucoup*, she speaks *much*, or *very much*. Il l'a dit *beaucoup de fois*, he said it *many* times. Il y avait *beaucoup de gens*, there were a *great many* people.

bien, well, right, rightly, much, a great deal, a great many, very, &c.

Il parle *bien* le Français, he speaks French *well*. C'est *bien*, that is right. Elle a *bien* de l'esprit, she has a *great deal* of wit. Il y avait *bien* du monde, there were a *great many* people. Il est *bien* malade, he is *very* ill.

bientôt, soon, very soon, in a short time.

Je reviendrai *bientôt*, I shall *soon* return, or I shall return *very soon*, or *in a short time*.

ça et là, up and down, here and there.

Il va *ça et là*, he goes *up and down*, or *here and there*.

céans, in this place, here, in this house; within, &c.

Il sort de *céans*, he is just gone from *here*. Il n'est pas *céans*, he is not *within*.

cependant, in the mean time, in the mean while, however.

Nous nous amusons, et *cependant* la nuit vient, we are amusing ourselves, and *in the mean time* night approaches.

certes, certainly, indeed, truly.

Et *certes*, ce fut avec beaucoup de raison, and *certainly*, or *indeed*, it was with much reason

combien, how much, how many, what, is followed by *de* before a noun.

Combien d'argent avez-vous? *how much* money have you? *Combien de soldats*? *how many* soldiers? *Combien vaut cela*? *how much* is that worth? *En combien de tems*? in *what*, or in *how much* time?

comment, how, in what manner, why, what.

Je ne sais *comment* il peut subsister, I do not know *how*, or in *what manner*, he can subsist. *Comment* appelez-vous cela? *what*, or *how* do you call that?

l'abord, first, at first.

D'abord il semble que cela soit vrai, *at first* it appears that that may be true.

au niveau, de niveau, on a level.

La cour n'est pas *au niveau* du jardin, the court-yard is not on a level with the garden.

davantage, more.

Je n'en dirai pas *davantage*, I will say no *more* about it. Le cadet est riche, mais l'aîné l'est encore *davantage*, the youngest is rich, but the eldest is still *more* so.

de bonne foi, à la bonne foi, en bonne foi, sincerely, honestly, candidly, uprightly, fairly.

Il agit *de bonne foi*, ou *à la bonne foi*, he acts *honestly, uprightly*, or *fairly*. *En bonne foi*, feriez vous cela? *sincerely*, would you do that?

de but en blanc, abruptly, bluntly.

Il lui alla dire *de but en blanc* que . . . he went to tell him *abruptly* that . . .

de front, abreast.

Ils marchaient tous trois *de front*, they all marched three abreast.

de gaieté de cœur, wantonly, on purpose, in wanton sport, &c.

Il l'a offensé *de gaieté de cœur*, he has offended him *on purpose*, or *wantonly*.

de guet à pens, wilfully, on purpose.

Un guet à pens, un meurtre commis *de guet à pens*, a wilful murder.

dehors, out, without, out of doors, externally.

Elle est allée *dehors*, she is gone *out*. Cela avance trop *en dehors*, that projects too much.

de plus en plus, more and more.

Il s'enrichit *de plus en plus*, he grows *richer and richer*.

depuis, since, since that time.

Je ne l'ai point vu *depuis*, I have not seen him *since*.

derrière, behind, backwards.

Qu'importe que cela soit devant ou *derrière*? what does it matter, whether that be before, or *behind*?

dès-lors, from that time.

Je la connaissais *dès-lors*, I knew her *from that time*.

devant, *ci-devant*, before, former, formerly.

Le chapitre *de devant*, the chapter *before*. Comme nous avons dit *ci-devant*, as we have said *before*.

dorénavant, henceforth, for the future.

Je suis résolu de vivre *dorénavant*, I am resolved to live *for the future*.

encore, yet, still, again, even, also, too, &c.

Il n'est pas *encore* venu, he is not *yet* come. Vit-elle *encore*? is she *still* alive? Essayez-*encore*, try *again*. Non-seulement il le sait, mais *encore* il y était, he not only knows it, but *even* he was there. Outre l'argent, on lui donna *encore* un cheval, besides the money, a horse was *also* given to him.

enfin, at last, lastly, finally, at length, in short, &c.

Il est venu *enfin*, he has come *at last*. *Enfin* pour abrégé, *lastly*, *finally*, or *to be short*. *Enfin* il m'a dit que . . . *in short* he told me that . . .

ensemble, together, one with another, all at once, &c.

Chantons *ensemble*, let us sing *together*. Ils sont sortis *ensemble*, they are gone out *together*.

ensuite, afterwards, then, subsequently.

Ensuite nous ferons le reste, *then*, or *afterwards* we will do the rest.

exprès, purposely, on purpose.

Il a dit cela *exprès*, he said that *on purpose*.

guère, ou *guères*, few, little; *ne ... guère*, but few, but little, not much, not very, not long.

Il n'y a *guère* de vrais patriotes, there are *but few* true patriots. Il n'a *guère* d'argent, he has *but little* money. Il n'est *guère* sage, he is *not very* prudent.

jadis, formerly, in old times, old, former.

Les bonnes gens de tems *jadis*, the good people of *old*, or *former* times.

jamais, ever; *ne... jamais*, never.

Adieu pour *jamais*, adieu for *ever*. Je n'en ai *jamais* ouï parler, I have *never* heard speak of it.

maintenant, now, at present, at this time.

Maintenant, je n'en ai pas le loisir, *now, at present, or at this time*, I have not leisure.

par mégarde, inadvertently, heedlessly, by oversight.

Il a fait cela *par mégarde*, he has done that *inadvertently*.

par-tout, every where.

Il va *par tout*, he goes *every where*.

pêle-mêle, confusedly, in confusion.

Ils étaient tous *pêle-mêle*, they were all in *confusion*.

petit à petit, little by little.

Petit à petit l'oiseau fait son nid, *little by little* the bird builds its nest.

peu, little, but little, few, but few.

Il a *peu* mangé, he has eaten *but little*. Je vous dirai en *peu* de mots, I will tell you in *few* words. Il arrivera dans *peu* de tems, he will arrive in a *short* time.

peu à peu, little by little, by degrees.

Les jours augmentent *peu à peu*, the days increase *by degrees*.

peut-être, perhaps, may be, possibly.

Peut-être viendra-t-il, *peut-être* qu'il viendra, *perhaps* he will come. *Peut-être* qu'oui, *perhaps* so (*yes*).

sur le champ, immediately, instantly.

Cela fut vidé *sur le champ*, that was emptied *immediately*.

sur-tout, above all, especially.

Sur-tout n'oubliez pas cela, *above all, or especially* do not forget that.

tant, so much, so many.

Il a *tant* de bonté, he has *so much* kindness. J'ai été *tant* de fois chez lui, I have been *so many* times to his house.

tant soit peu, but little, ever so little.

Donnez m'en *tant soit peu*, give me *but little, or ever so little*.

tôt, soon, quick, quickly; **tôt ou tard**, sooner, or later.

Allez *tôt*, go *soon, or quickly*. Il faut mourir *tôt ou tard*, we must die *sooner or later*.

toujours, always, continually, still.

C'est une source qui coule *toujours*, it is a fountain which flows *continually*. La lune tourne *toujours* autour de la terre, the moon *always* turns round the earth. Il est *toujours* vivant, he is *still* alive.

154 EXERCISES ON THE ADVERBS, &c.

tour à tour, successively, by turns, one after another.

Ces deux généraux commanderont *tour à tour*, those two generals will command *successively*, or *by turns*.

tout à coup, suddenly, on a sudden.

Elles entrèrent *tout à coup*, they entered *suddenly*.

tout à fait, entirely, quite, wholly.

Il a *tout à fait* fini, he has *quite* done.

tout à la fois, all together, all at once, both.

Il est *tout à la fois* frugal et industrieux, he is *both* frugal and industrious. Il ne peut payer *tout à la fois*, he cannot pay *all at once*.

tout de suite, immediately.

Allez *tout de suite*, go *immediately*.

tout droit, straight on, or straight along.

Allez *tout droit*, go *straight on*, or *straight along*.

vis à vis, opposite, over the way.

Il était *vis à vis*, he was *opposite*.

**volontiers*, gladly, willingly, cheerfully, readily, &c.

Ferez-vous cela? je le ferai *volontiers*, will you do that? I will do it *willingly*.

EXERCISES ON THE ADVERBS AND ADVERBIAL
EXPRESSIONS.

FIRST LESSON

Il pense profondément, décrit fortement, et s'exprime avec dignité. C'est une femme étourdie et inconséquente, qui parle beaucoup et réfléchit peu. Il agit à contre cœur. Il ne craint point la pluie, il est à couvert. Il n'y avait ni portes ni fenêtres à cette maison; nous étions à découvert. Il l'a fait à bon dessein. Les fondemens de cet édifice sont déjà à fleur de terre.

* *Obs.* Although the words are classed in the preceding and following lists, yet, the same words are sometimes adverbs, sometimes prepositions, and sometimes conjunctions, depending upon the manner in which they are used.

Portez des verres à la ronde. Il le mena à l'écart, sous prétexte de promenade, et lui fit mettre l'épée à la main. Il a mis son manteau à l'envers. Cette affaire est importante, il ne faut pas y aller à l'étourdie. Il attend à merveille ses intérêts. À peine serons nous rivaux qu'il faudra partir. Cela est dit fort à propos. On ne le prendra jamais au dépourvu. Il a mangé beaucoup plus que vous. Cependant Cæsar approchait. Combien cela coûte-t-il ? Comment le monde est-il si peu peuplé en comparaison de ce qu'il était autrefois ?

profondément, deeply

écrire, to describe

inconsciente, thoughtless

lui fit mettre l'épée à la main,

made him draw his sword

manteau, m. cloak

SECOND LESSON.

Ils sont allés dehors. Cette terrasse est de niveau avec le rez de chaussée de la maison. Sa vue diminue de plus en plus. Je n'en ai point ouï parler depuis. Vous m'insultez de gaieté de cœur. Je l'ai laissé bien loin derrière. Si vous êtes pressé, courez devant. Réfléchissez-y bien dorénavant. J'attends encore. Elle vit encore. Je veux essayer encore si je pourrai le faire. Enfin cette affaire est terminée. Car enfin que pouvait-il faire ? Vous êtes souvent ensemble. Vous irez-là ensuite. J'irai chez lui ensuite. Il a fait bâtir cet appartement exprès pour recevoir ses amis. Il n'y a guère de gens tout-à-fait désintéressés. Cela était bon au tems jadis. C'est pour jamais. Ne me parlez jamais de ces choses-là. Êtes-vous prêt maintenant ? Nous l'avons fait par mégarde. On dit par tout. Ils entrèrent pêle mêle dans la ville avec les ennemis. Il arrivera dans peu de jours. Tôt ou tard les méchants sont punis. Vous parlez toujours. Parlez tour à tour. Il écouterait volontiers cette proposition.

Terrasse, f. terrace.

rez de chaussée, m. ground-floor ; *en*, of it

ouï, heard ; *loin*, far

pressé, in a hurry ; *car*, for
écouter, to listen to

Prepositions.

The following prepositions immediately precede the nouns, or pronouns to which they apply.

A, or *à*, to, at, in, on, upon, by, for, with, &c.

Je vais *à* Paris, I am going *to* Paris. Pourvoir *à* sa sûreté, to provide *for* his safety. Des bas *à* trois fils, stockings *with* three threads.

après, after, next to, &c.

Il est entré *après* moi, he came in *after* me. Sa maison est *après* la vôtre, his house is *next to* yours.

attendu, owing to, on account of.

Il fut exempté de la milice *attendu* son âge, he was exempted from the militia *on account of*, or *owing to* his age.

avant, before.

J'ai vu cela *avant* vous, I saw that *before* you.

avec, with, in, &c.

Venez *avec* moi, come *with* me. *Avec* le tems, *in* time.

chez, at, to, in, among, &c.

Il est *chez* nous, he is *at* our house. Je vais *chez* vous, I am going *to* your house. Chacun doit être maître *chez* soi, every one ought to be master *of* his own house. Il y avait une coutume *chez* les Romains, there was a custom *among* the Romans.

contre, against, next to ; *tout contre*, near to, nigh to.

Qu'avez-vous à dire *contre* cela? what have you to say *against* that? Sa maison est *contre* la mienne, his house is *next to* mine. Votre maison est *tout contre* la sienne, your house is *near to* his.

dans, in, into, &c.

Elle est *dans* Londres, she is *in* London. Quand il entra *dans* la chambre, when he entered *into* the room.

d'après, after, like, from.

Ce portrait est fait *d'après* nature, this portrait is drawn *from*, or *after* nature, or *like* life.

de, of, for, by, with, from, in, about, &c.

L'amour *de* Dieu, the love *of* God. Charles saute *de* joie, Charles jumps *for* joy. Il est estimé *de* tout le monde, he is esteemed *by* every body. Je suis content *de* vous, I am satisfied *with* you.

dessus, on, upon, above ; *dessous*, under, below, beneath.

Il n'est ni *dessus* ni *dessous* la table, it is neither upon nor under the table.

depuis, since, from, after, &c.

Depuis son retour, *since* his return. Je vous attendrai *depuis* cinq jusqu'à six, I will wait for you *from* five till six.

derrière, behind, after.

Regardez *derrière* vous, look *behind* you. Il est *derrière* la porte, he is *behind* the door.

dès, from, since, at.

Dès le berceau, *from* the cradle. *Dès* lundi dernier, *since* last monday. *Dès* le point du jour, *from*, or *since* the break of day.

devant, before, &c.

Mettez cela *devant* le feu, put that *before* the fire.

durant, during.

Durant sa vie, *during* his life.

en, in, into, to, at, on, over, like, with, within, into, &c.

Il est *en* France, he is *in* France. Elle s'éleva *en* l'air, she mounted *into* the air. Venir, *ou* passer *en* Angleterre, to come, or pass *over* to England. *En* tout tems, *at* all times. Vivre *en* roi, to live *like* a king. *En* chemin, *on* the road. Cette eau abonde *en* poissons, this water abounds *with* fish. Réfléchissez bien *en* vous-même, reflect well *within* yourself.

entre, between.

Entre le ciel et la terre, *between* heaven and earth. Il était assis *entre* nous deux, he sat *between* us two.

envers, towards, to.

Il est ingrat *envers* son bienfaiteur, he is ungrateful *to*, or *towards* his benefactor.

environ, about, near.

Il est *environ* deux heures, it is *about*, or *near* two o'clock. Son armée est d'*environ* vingt mille hommes, his army consists of *about* twenty thousand men.

excepté, except, but, &c.

Excepté votre ami, *except* your friend.

hors, but, except, save, excepting, &c.

Il sortirent tous *hors* deux ou trois, they all went out except two or three.

malgré, in spite of, notwithstanding, against one's will.

Il l'a fait *malgré* moi, he did it in spite of me. Il est parti *malgré* la rigueur du tems, he set out notwithstanding the severity of the season.

moyennant, for, by means of.

Il a obtenu l'emploi *moyennant* une bonne somme d'argent he has obtained the situation by means of, or for a large sum of money.

nonobstant, notwithstanding.

Nonobstant ses difficultés, notwithstanding his difficulties.

outré, besides, beyond.

Outre cette somme, je lui ai donné deux guinées, besides that sum, I have given him two guineas. *Outre-mer*, beyond the sea.

par, by, through, out of, out at, for, in, at, with, along, &c.

Tout a été créé *par* la parole de Dieu, every thing has been created by the word of God. Il entra *par* la porte, mais il sortit *par* la fenêtre, he went in at the door, but he got out at or through the window. Il se promenait *par* la rivière, he walked along by the river. *Par* un tems calme, in calm weather.

parmi, among, amongst.

Parmi les hommes, among men.

pendant, during.

Pendant l'hiver, during the winter.

pour, for, as for.

Ceci est *pour* moi, et cela est *pour* vous, this is for me, and that for you.

sans, without, but for, were it not for.

Il est *sans* vertu, he is without virtue. *Sans* eux tout irait bien, were it not for them all would go well.

sauf, save, with deference to, except, but.

Sauf votre meilleur avis, with deference to your better advice. Tout est perdu *sauf* l'espérance, all is lost save or except hope.

elon, according to, agreeably, conformable to.

Chacun sera récompensé selon ses œuvres, each will be rewarded according to his works.

ous, under, beneath.

Sous la ligne, under the line. *Sous votre protection*, under your protection.

uivant, according to.

Suivant votre sentiment, according to your opinion.

ur, on, upon, over, above, at, towards, in, &c.

Sur le pupitre, upon the desk. *Sur un vaisseau*, on board a ship. Les globes célestes qui roulent *sur* nos têtes, the heavenly bodies which roll over our heads. *Sur le soir*, towards the evening. Il l'a mis *sur* son testament, he has put him in his will.

touchant, concerning, touching, about.

Il m'a entretenu *touchant* vos affaires, he discoursed with me concerning, or about your affairs.

vers, towards, about.

Vers le nord, towards the north. *Vers l'année 1821*, about the year 1821.

vu, ou *vu*, considering, seeing.

La récompense est petite, *vu* ses grands services, the recompense is small, considering his great services.

The following prepositions are used before a genitive, and consequently take *de*, *du*, *de la*, *de l'*, or *des* immediately after them.

à cause de, on account of, for, because of, &c.

À cause de l'affection que je vous porte, on account of, or for the love I have for you (*I bear you*).

à côté, by, aside, beside, near.

Il demeure *à côté* du village, he lives by, or near the village.

à force, by dint of, by force, by strength of, with.

Il s'est tué *à force* de boire, he has killed himself with drinking.

à la faveur de, by means of, by the aid or help of, by the favor of.

Il a passé la rivière *à la faveur* du canon, he has crossed the river by the aid of the cannon.

à l'abri, secure from, sheltered, protected.

Il est à l'abri de la faveur, he is *protected* by favor.

à l'égard, as for, as to.

À l'égard de ce que vous me devez, *as to* what you owe me.

à l'égard de, in comparison with, with respect to.

La terre est petite à l'égard du soleil, the earth is but small *in comparison with* the sun.

à l'exception, except, save, with the exception.

À l'exception de son frère, *except*, or *with the exception* of his brother.

à l'insçu, ou à l'insu, unknown to, without the knowledge of.

À l'insçu de toute la compagnie, *unknown to*, or *without the knowledge of* the whole company.

à moins de, for less than, under.

Vous ne l'aurez pas à moins de vingt guinées, you shall not have it for *less than*, or *under* twenty guineas.

à raison de, at the rate of, in proportion.

Je vous paierai cette étoffe à raison de deux guinées l'aune, I will pay you for that stuff *at the rate of* two guineas an ell.

au de çà, on this side, this side; but *de ça* is frequently used without *de*.

Au de çà, ou en de çà de la rivière, *on this side* the river. De çà les Alpes, *on this side* the Alps.

au de là, beyond, on the other side.

Au de là des mers, beyond the seas. Au de là de la rivière, *on the other side of* the river.

au dessous, below, under, beneath.

Je suis logé au dessous de sa chambre, I lodge *below*, or *under* his room.

au dessus, above, beyond.

Vous êtes au dessus de la calomnie, you are *out of*, or *beyond* the reach of slander.

au devant, before, anticipate.

Ils ont été au devant de l'objection, they have *anticipated* the objection.

au lieu de, instead of.

Au lieu de secourir son ami, il l'a trahi, *instead of* assisting his friend he has betrayed him.

au milieu, in the middle, amidst,

Cette ville est située *au milieu* de la France, this town is situated in the middle of France. *Au milieu* des cris, amidst the cries.

au moyen de, by means of, for, on consideration of.

Au moyen de la lettre que vous écrirez nous réussirons, we shall succeed by means of the letter which you will write.

au niveau, on a level with, even with.

Il se met *au niveau* de tout le monde, he puts himself on a level with every body, or all the world.

auprès, near, by, close to, next to.

Sa maison est *auprès* de la mienne, his house is near, or by mine.

au prix de, in comparison with, at the expense of.

Cela n'est rien *au prix* de ce que vous allez entendre, that is nothing in comparison with what you are going to hear.

au péril, at the hazard of, at the peril of.

Je vous servirai *au péril* de ma vie, I will serve you at the peril of my life.

en dépit, in spite of.

Il fit cela *en dépit* de tout le monde, he did that in spite of every body, or all the world.

hors de, out of, free from, except.

Sa maison est *hors de* la ville, his house is out of the city. Nous sommes *hors de* blâme, we are free from blame.

pour l'amour de, for the sake of.

Je voudrais *pour l'amour* de vous que cela fût, I wish it were so for your sake.

sur le pied, at the rate.

J'ai payé cette étoffe *sur le pied* de dix schellings l'aune, I have paid for that stuff at the rate of ten shillings an ell.

vis-à-vis over against, opposite. (*Obs.* *De* is sometimes omitted in the familiar style.)

Je me plaçai *vis-à-vis* de lui, I placed myself opposite, or over against him. Il demeure *vis-à-vis* l'église, he lives opposite the church.

The following prepositions are generally used before a dative, and consequently take *à, au, à la, à l', aux* immediately after them.

jusque, jusques (before a vowel *jusqu'*), to, even, as far as, how, till, until (*jusque* is sometimes followed by *où, là, ici, auprès, &c.*)

Depuis Paris *jusqu'à* Londres, from Paris to London. Il alla *jusqu'au* Grand-Caire, he went as far as Grand-Cairo. Elle rit *jusqu'aux* larmes, she laughed till she cried. *Jusqu'où* faut-il que j'aïlle? how far must I go? *Jusqu'auprès* de Londres, as far as London.

par rapport, as to, with respect to.

Il ne fait rien que *par rapport* à ses intérêts, he does nothing but with respect to his own interests.

quant à, as to, as for.

Quant à moi, ou *quant à* ce qui est de moi, as for me, or for my part.

The following prepositions express different relations, depending upon the manner in which they are used.

à, at, to, into.

Il est *à* Paris, he is at Paris. Il va *à* Paris, he is going to Paris. Elle est allée *à* la campagne, she is gone into the country.

chez, at; *de chez*, from.

Il est *chez* nous, he is at our house. Je viens *de chez* Monsieur Meurice, I come from Mr. Meurice's. J'ai passé *par chez* vous, I have called at your house.

dans, in, into, with, within.

Il est *dans* Paris, he is in Paris. Il est *dans* le Louvre, he is in the Louvre. Nous sommes *dans* la maison, we are in the house. Il fait sa cour *dans* le dessein de s'avancer, he makes his court with the intention of being advanced.

en, in, to.

Il est *en* Italie, he is in Italy. Il va *en* Italie, he is going to Italy, &c.—[V. Gram. Par M. Restaut.]

EXERCISES ON THE PREPOSITIONS.

FIRST LESSON.

Je demeure à Londres et mon frère à Paris. Il s'était retiré à la campagne. Il promet de payer après Noël. Il ne peut pas partir attendu les vents contraires. Il faut mettre ce mot-ci avant l'autre. J'ai passé par chez vous. Il partit de nuit. Je ne l'ai point vu depuis son retour. Vous êtes venu depuis moi. Dès l'enfance. Il marchait devant moi. Durant tout l'hiver. Il se conduisit en honnête homme. Il y a bien des villes entre Paris et Rome. Elle est charitable envers les pauvres. Je l'ai fait malgré lui. Outre qu'elle est riche, elle est belle et sage. Il a fait cela par crainte. Il a obtenu cela par hasard. Vous ferez ce qu'il vous plaira, pour moi je n'en ferai jamais rien. Sans moi, il mourait de faim. Il lui a cédé tout son bien, sans une terre. Cela n'est pas selon la raison. Cette comédie fut représentée à Paris sur le théâtre du Petit Bourbon. Vers les quatre heures.

<i>Noël</i> , Christmas	<i>faim</i> , hunger
<i>passé par</i> , called at	<i>bien</i> , property
<i>sage</i> , discreet, or prudent	<i>terre</i> , estate
<i>hasard</i> , chance	

SECOND LESSON.

Ce village est au-dessous de Paris. Il est au-dessous de vous en mérite. Il fait un peu trop le familier avec ceux qui sont au-dessus de lui. Ils étaient à l'abri d'une muraille. On doit être honnête à son égard et à l'égard des autres. A l'égard de ce que vous disiez. Il s'est marié à l'insçu de ses parens. Je ne lui vendrai pas ce cheval à moins de quinze guinées. Au lieu d'étudier, il ne fait que se divertir. Il lui a donné mille écus, au moyen de quoi il s'est obligé. Le tonnerre tomba au milieu de l'église. Il entra au milieu de l'assemblée. Au milieu des acclamations. Les

savans sont au niveau des plus grands Seigneurs. Nous payons à raison de cinq pour cent. La rivière passe auprès de cette ville. Il a acheté la victoire au prix de sa vie. Il aime jusqu'à ses ennemis. Leurs maisons sont situées vis à vis de l'une de l'autre. Il était assis vis à vis de moi. Quant à vos observations je les trouve bonnes.

muraille, f. wall

à son égard, to ourselves

écus, crowns

était assis, was sitting

Conjunctions.

List of conjunctions which take the indicative mood after them.

à cause que, because.

Je n'irai pas, à cause qu'il est trop tard, I shall not go, because it is too late.

à ce que, as, as far as, by, according as.

À ce que je puis juger, as far as I can judge.

ainsi que, as, as well as, even as, in the manner,

Howe, ainsi que Nelson, était un grand amiral, Howe, as well as Nelson, was a great admiral. *Cela s'est passé ainsi que je vous l'ai dit*, that has happened in the manner I have told you.

à mesure que, according to, as, accordingly, in proportion as.

On vous payera à mesure que vous travaillerez, you will be paid in proportion to, or according as you work.

après que, when, after, after that.

Nous sortirons après que nous aurons dîné, we shall go out when, or after we have dined.

attendu que, as, because, since, seeing that.

Attendu qu'il s'agissait d'une manière importante, il fut arrêté, qu'il aille, seeing that, because, or since the thing in question was of moment, it was resolved that he should go.

Obs. Although conjunctions are generally followed by some particular mood, yet there are or may be many exceptions.

en lieu que, whereas, when on the contrary, while.

Il ne songe qu'à son plaisir, *au lieu qu'il devrait* veiller à ses affaires, he minds nothing but his pleasure, *whereas*, he ought to look after his business.

aussi bien que, as well as, and even.

Je sais cela *aussi bien que* vous, I know that *as well as* you.

aussi peu que, as little as, as few as.

Vous en prendrez *aussi peu que* vous voudrez, you will take *as few as*, or *as little as* you please.

aussitôt que, as soon as.

Je lui dirai, *aussitôt qu'il viendra*, I will tell him, *as soon as* he returns.

autant que, as, as far as.

Autant que j'en puis juger, *as far as* I can judge.

bien entendu que, provided that, on condition that, it being understood that.

Je vous accorde cela, mais *bien entendu que* vous ferez votre ouvrage, I grant you that, but *on condition that* you will do your work.

de même que, as, just as, even as.

Il fondit sur lui *de même que* l'épervier fait sur sa proie, he darted upon him *as a hawk does upon its prey*.

depuis que, since, since that.

Elle est morte, *depuis que* vous êtes parti, she died since you went away.

dès que, as soon as, since.

Dès que la paix sera faite, je partirai pour la France, *as soon as* peace is made, I shall set off for France. Je vous le donnerai, *dès que* vous le souhaitez, I will give it you, *since* you wish it.

en effet, indeed, and indeed, in reality.

Nous devons aimer Dieu, *en effet* qu'y a-t-il de plus raisonnable que d'aimer un bienfaiteur? it is our duty to love God, *and indeed* what is more reasonable than to love a benefactor?

lorsque, when, at the time.

Lorsqu'il apprit cette fatale nouvelle, il partit sur le champ, *when* he heard that fatal news, he set off immediately.

néanmoins, nevertheless, and yet, however, still.

Il est encore très jeune, et *néanmoins* il est fort savant en Mathématiques, he is very young, *and yet*, or *nevertheless*, he is very learned in Mathematics.

parceque, because, in as much, for as much.

Je le veux bien, *parceque* cela est juste, I consent to it, *because* it is just.

pendant que, while, whilst.

Pendant que nous jouons, il étudie sa leçon, *whilst* we are playing, he studies his lesson.

puisque, since, seeing, seeing that (*puis* is sometimes separated from *que*).

Je le veux bien, *puisque* vous le voulez, I agree to it, *since*, or *seeing that* you wish it. *Puis* donc *que* vous le voulez ainsi, *since* you will have it so then.

selon que, as, according as, according to.

Ils seront payés *selon* qu'ils travailleront, they will be paid according to their work.

sitôt que, as soon as.

Sitôt qu'il eut reçu la lettre, il partit, *as soon as* he had received the letter, he set off.

tandis que, while, or whilst.

Tandis qu'il m'en souvient, *whilst* I remember.

tant que, as far as, so far as, as long as.

Tant que la vue peut s'étendre, *as far as* the sight can reach. *Tant que* je serai dans Paris, *as long as* I am (*shall be*) in Paris.

tellement que, so, so that, in such a manner.

Nous sommes *tellement* occupés *que* nous ne voyons personne, we are so occupied *that* we see nobody, or we are so very busy *that* we see nobody.

vu que, seeing that, considering that, since, because.

Il ne peut le faire, *vu qu'il est* ignorant, he cannot do it, *because* he is ignorant.

List of conjunctions which generally take the subjunctive after them.

à Dieu ne plaise que, God forbid that.

À Dieu ne plaise que vous sachiez ces choses-là mieux que moi, *God forbid that* you should know those things better than I.

afin que, that, to the end that, in order that.

Je l'ai dit, *afin que* vous le sachiez, I said so that you might know it.

à moins que, unless, except. (*Obs.* *Ne* is put after *à moins que*.)

Il n'en fera rien, *à moins que* vous ne lui parliez, he will do nothing unless you speak to him.

au cas que, ou *en cas que*, in case that, if.

Je n'irai pas, *au cas que* cela arrive, I shall not go, if that should happen. *En cas que* je ne sois pas chez moi, if I be not at home.

avant que, before, ere.

Avant que nous fussions levés, before we were up.

bien loin que, far from, so far from.

Bien loin que cela soit, it is far from being so.

bien que, though, although.

Il est honnête homme, *bien qu'il soit* pauvre, he is an honest man, although he be poor.

de crainte que, for fear that, lest (*ne* is put after *de crainte que*).

De crainte qu'il ne le fasse, for fear, or lest he should do it.

de peur que, for fear, lest (*ne* is put after *de peur que*).

De peur qu'il ne meure, for fear, or lest he should die.

en attendant que, till, until, in the mean while.

Jouons *en attendant qu'il vienne*, let us play till he comes.

encore que, though, although.

Encore qu'il soit fort jeune, il est sage, although he be very young, he is prudent.

loin que, far from.

Loin qu'il soit disposé à vous faire satisfaction, il est homme à vous quereller, far from being disposed to offer you satisfaction, it is likely he will quarrel with you.

moyennant que, provided that, provided.

Elle l'aura, *moyennant qu'elle vienne*, she will have it, provided she come.

plaise à Dieu que, God grant that.

Plaise à Dieu que nous ayons la paix, God grant that we may have peace.

plût à Dieu, would to God.

Plût à Dieu que cela fût, *would to God* it were so.

pour que, for, that, to the end that, as.

C'est trop outrageant *pour que* je ne m'en venge pas, it is too outrageous *for* me not to resent it.

pour peu que, if ever so little, let ever so little.

Pour peu que vous en preniez soin, *if* you take *ever so little* care of it. *Pour peu qu'un* homme soit connu d'un autre, *let* a man have *ever so little* acquaintance with another.

pourvu que, provided that, provided.

Pourvu qu'il n'arrive rien de contraire, *provided* nothing happens to the contrary.

quoique, although, though, however.

Quoiqu'il soit pauvre, il est honnête homme, *although* he be poor, he is an honest man.

sans que, without.

Il a passé *sans que* je l'aie aperçu, he passed *without* my having perceived him.

soit que, or *ou*, whether.

Soit qu'il veille, *soit qu'il* dorme (or *ou qu'il* dorme), *whether* he be awake, or asleep.

supposé que, suppose, supposing, supposing that.

Quel fruit en retirerons-nous, *supposé qu'ils* fissent la paix? what advantage shall we gain by it, *supposing* they make peace?

The following conjunctions sometimes take the indicative, and sometimes the subjunctive after them.

à condition que, on condition that, provided that, provided.

J'y consens, *à condition qu'il* viendra, I consent to it, *on condition that* he will come. J'y consentirai, *à condition qu'il* vienne, I will agree to it, *provided that* he come.

à la charge que, on condition that, provided.

Je lui ai cédé cette terre-là, *à la charge qu'il* vienne, ou *qu'il* viendra; *qu'il* vint, ou *qu'il* viendrait, I have made the estate over to him *on condition that*, or *provided* he come, will come, or should come.

de façon que, so that, in such a manner that.

La nuit vint, *de façon que* je fus contraint de me retirer, night came on, so that I was obliged to retire. Il faut vivre *de façon qu'on ne fasse tort à personne*, we should live so that we may do harm to nobody.

de manière que, so that, in such a manner that.

Faites les choses *de manière que* tout le monde soit content, do things so that, or in such a manner that every body may be contented. *De manière qu'il n'était point du tout content*, so that he was not satisfied at all.

de sorte que, *en sorte que*, so that, insomuch that, that.

La nuit vint, *de sorte qu'il fut* contraint de se retirer, night came on, so that he was obliged to retire. Faites *en sorte que* tout soit prêt, see that every thing be ready.

There are two sorts of conjunctions which take the infinitive after them.

1st. Those which, on account of their being followed by a verb, are not distinguished from prepositions; such as, *pour*, *sans*, *jusqu'à*, &c.

2nd. All conjunctions followed by *de*; such as, *afin de*, *avant que de*, *au lieu de*, *de peur de*, &c.—[V. Grammaire des Grammaires, vol. ii. p. 113.]

pour, to, in order to, with a design to, for.

Il est trop sensé *pour faire* cela, he has too much sense to do that.

sans, without, besides.

Il a beaucoup d'argent dans ses coffres, *sans parler de* ses revenus, he has a great deal of money in his coffers, not to, or without speaking of his revenues.

afin de, to, in order to, that, to the end that.

Il écrit contre le Docteur, *afin d'attraper* un bénéfice, he writes against the doctor, in order to obtain a living.

à la charge de, on condition of.

Je lui ai vendu mon cheval, *à la charge de payer* mes créanciers, I have sold him my horse on condition of his paying my creditors.

avant de, ou *avant que de*, before.

Parlez-lui *avant de le faire*, speak to him before you do it.

170 EXERCISES ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

bien loin de, instead of, far from.

Bien loin de me remercier, il m'a dit des injures, *instead of* thanking me, he abused me.

de crainte de, for fear of.

Les soldats se fortifièrent, *de crainte d'être surprises*, the soldiers fortified themselves *for fear of* being surprised.

de peur de, for fear of.

Il ne se rend jamais tard, *de peur d'être volé*, he never comes home late, *for fear of* being robbed.

EXERCISES ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

FIRST LESSON.

Je n'en veux pas à cause qu'il est neuf. Il peut aller, à condition qu'il la dise. Les plaisirs ainsi que les peines troublent l'âme. A ce que je puis voir, vous ne l'aurez pas à tems. Ainsi que les rayons du soleil dissipent les nuages, ainsi la présence du prince dissipe les seditions. Voulez-vous sortir, après que vous aurez déjeuné. A mesure que l'un avançait, l'autre reculait. Il faut écouter les pauvres aussi-bien que les riches. Je suis arrivé aussitôt qu'il m'a été possible. Il aime la lecture autant que vous aimez le jeu. Je vous l'accorde, bien entendu que vous tiendrez parole. De même que la cire molle reçoit aisément toutes sortes d'empreintes et de figures, de même un jeune homme reçoit facilement toutes les impressions qu'on veut lui donner. Qu'avez-vous fait depuis que vous êtes ici. J'en jugerai lorsque j'en serai mieux informé. Pendant que nous sommes libres. Sitôt que nous eûmes diné, nous partîmes. Tandis qu'il fait beau tems. Tant que j'aurai de l'argent, vous n'en manquerez pas. Quand vous aurez une connaissance plus étendue de la géométrie et de l'algèbre, je vous donnerai quelques leçons d'astronomie.

<i>Je n'en veux pas</i> , I will not	<i>ainsi</i> , so ;
<i>have it (of it)</i>	<i>reculait</i> , retired
<i>troubler</i> , to disturb	<i>toutes sortes</i> , all kinds
<i>dissiper</i> , to disperse	<i>empreinte</i> , impression
	<i>serai</i> , am (<i>shall be</i>)

SECOND LESSON.

A Dieu ne plaise qu'elle ne meure. Je suis sa caution, afin qu'il soit mis en liberté. Il faudra nous retirer, au cas que cela arrive. Avant qu'il soit un an. Pour les besoins du corps, bien loin qu'ils me fassent douter de la bonté de Dieu, j'y trouve des marques sensibles de son attention paternelle sur nous. Bien qu'il le sache, il n'en parle pas. En cas qu'elle vienne, dites lui que je suis sorti. Encore qu'il soit riche, il n'en vaut pas mieux. Dépêchez-vous, de crainte que l'heure ne soit passée. Il a fait son testament, de peur qu'il ne mourût sans le faire. Loin qu'il fasse de bruit, il est tranquille. Je le lui accorderai, moyennant qu'il vienne le chercher. Plût à Dieu que les hommes entendissent leurs vrais intérêts! Vous m'avez rendu trop de service, pour que je puisse jamais douter de votre amitié. Il le fera, pour peu que vous lui en parliez. Je vous paierai, pourvu que vous le fassiez. Vous ferez bien cela sans que j'y aille.

Mourir, to die
caution, surety
retirer, to withdraw
testament, will

entendre, to understand
trop, too many
bien, well enough
j'y aille, my going there

THIRD LESSON.

Pour se tromper, il ne faut qu'être homme, mais pour s'obstiner dans son erreur, il faut être fou. J'ai fait tout mon possible pour gagner son amitié. Nous ne pouvons trahir la vérité, sans nous exposer au mépris des honnêtes gens. J'ai été six jours sans la voir. Il a passé la nuit sans dormir. Il est avare jusqu'à se refuser le nécessaire. Il commença par se plaindre et finit par demander de l'argent. Si je me donne tant de mal, c'est afin de faire quelque chose de bon. Je lui ai vendu ma terre, à la charge de payer mes créanciers. Travaillez au lieu de jouer. Il est allé le trouver afin d'obtenir sa grâce. Il faut prier Dieu avant que de se mettre au travail. Bien loin d'aimer

172 EXERCISES ON THE CONJUNCTIONS.

sa femme, il ne la saurait souffrir. Il ne sort jamais la nuit, de peur des voleurs. Nous avons fait venir du blé, de peur d'en manquer.

<i>S'obstiner</i> , to persist	<i>mettre au travail</i> , to begin to
<i>trahir</i> , to act contrary to	work
<i>mépris</i> , scorn	<i>ne saurait souffrir</i> , cannot
<i>créanciers</i> , creditors	endure
<i>chercher</i> , to look for	<i>sortir</i> , to go out
<i>grâce</i> , pardon, or forgiveness	<i>blé</i> , corn

FOURTH LESSON.

Si pendant une belle nuit, et dans un lieu dont l'horizon soit à découvert, on suit avec attention le spectacle du ciel; on le voit changer à chaque instant. Les étoiles s'élèvent ou s'abaissent; quelques-unes commencent à se montrer vers l'orient, d'autres disparaissent vers l'occident; plusieurs, telles que l'étoile polaire, et les étoiles de la grande Ourse, n'atteignent jamais l'horizon dans nos climats. Dans ces mouvemens divers, la position respective de tous ces astres reste la même: ils décrivent des cercles d'autant plus petits, qu'ils sont plus près d'un point que l'on conçoit immobile. Ainsi le ciel paraît tourner sur deux points fixes nommés, par cette raison, *pôles du monde*; et dans ce mouvement, il emporte le système entier des astres. Le pôle élevé sur notre horizon est le pôle *borel* ou *septentrional*; le pôle opposé que l'on imagine au-dessous de l'horizon, se nomme pôle *austral* ou *méridional*.
—LAPLACE.

<i>Lieu</i> , place	<i>se montrer</i> , to appear
<i>dont l'horizon soit à découvert</i> ,	<i>ourse</i> , bear
where the horizon is unin-	<i>atteindre</i> , to reach
terrupted	<i>emporter</i> , to carry along
<i>spectacle</i> , appearance	with

S Y N T A X.

Syntax of Articles and Nouns.

CHAPTER I.

Rules, illustrated by Examples, for the Construction of Articles and Nouns.

RULE I.

The articles UN OR UNE, *a* ; and LE OR LA, *the*, must agree with nouns in gender and number ; as,

Un livre, m. a book
une plume, f. a pen
une femme, f. a woman

Le livre, m. the book
la plume, f. the pen
les femmes, f. pl. the women

Un homme sage commande
à ses passions

A wise man governs his pas-
sions

Je viens d'une église

I come from a church

Je parle d'un cheval

I speak of a horse

Le livre que j'ai lu est sur *la*
table

The book which I have read
is upon *the* table

La terre tourne autour *du*
soleil

The earth turns round *the*
sun

La maison de mon père n'est
pas finie

The house of my father, or
my father's house is not
finished

Obs. The articles are repeated in French though not in English ; as, *le père, la mère, et la sœur sont allés en France*, the father, mother, and sister are gone to France ; *j'ai un bon père, une bonne mère, et une bonne sœur*, I have a good father, mother, and sister.

<i>Le cheval que je vous ai vendu est excellent</i>	<i>The horse which I have sold you is excellent</i>
<i>La maison que j'ai achetée est excellente</i>	<i>The house which I have bought is excellent</i>
<i>Le rez de chaussée était inondé</i>	<i>The ground-floor was over- flowed</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Have you shut the door? Have you not opened the window? The Rhine is a fine river. Walk in the yard. Read a book. Light the candles. Speak to the maid. Go to the park. Observe the rules of the school, and the eye of the master. I esteem the virtue of the man. He will lend me a book. By buying the horse, I have also bought the saddle and (the) bridle. The prudence of the father. The antiquity of the empire. The body perishes, the soul is immortal. The army of the infidels was defeated. A part of the time is ill employed.

To shut, *fermer*
door, *porte*, f.
to open, *ouvrir*
window, *fenêtre*, f.
fine, *beau*; river, *rivière*, f.
Rhine, *Rhin*, m.
to walk, *se promener*
in, *dans*; yard, *cour*, f.
to light, *allumer*
candle, *chandelle*, f.
to speak, *parler*
maid, *servante*, f.
to go, *aller*
park, *parc*, m.
to observe, *observer*
rule, *règle*, f.
school, *école*, f.
eye, *œil*, m.
master, *maître*, m.
to esteem, *estimer*

virtue, *vertu*, f.
he will lend me, *il me prêter*
by buying, *en achetant*
to buy, *acheter*; also, *aussi*
saddle, *selle*, f.
bridle, *bride*, f.
prudence, *prudence*, f.
antiquity, *antiquité*, f.
empire, *empire*, m.
body, *corps*, m.
to perish, *périr*
soul *âme*, f.
immortal, *immortel*
army, *armée*, f.
infidel, *infidèle*
was defeated, *fut défaite*
part, *partie*, f.
time, *temps*, m.
is ill employed, *est mal em-
ployé*

RULE II.

The definite article is used in French, though not in English ; 1st. before nouns in a general, or universal sense; 2nd. before the proper names of countries, mountains, provinces, &c. and also before titles of men.

EXAMPLES.

1. <i>La vertu</i> est aimable	<i>Virtue</i> is amiable
<i>Le vice</i> est odieux	<i>Vice</i> is odious.
<i>Les hommes</i> sont mortels	<i>Men</i> are mortal
<i>Le mensonge</i> est le plus grand de tous les vices	<i>Falseness</i> is the greatest of all vices
<i>L'or</i> et <i>l'argent</i> ne sauraient rendre <i>l'homme</i> heureux	<i>Gold</i> and <i>silver</i> cannot make <i>man</i> happy
<i>L'honneur</i> est dû aux rois et aux magistrats	<i>Honor</i> is due to <i>kings</i> and magistrates
<i>La vie</i> n'est qu'un songe	<i>Life</i> is but a dream
<i>Le blanc</i> , <i>le rouge</i> , et <i>le noir</i> , sont trois différentes cou- leurs	<i>White</i> , <i>red</i> , and <i>black</i> are three different colors.
2. <i>La France</i> est plus petite que <i>la Russie</i>	<i>France</i> is less than <i>Russia</i>
<i>L'Irlande</i> est plus peuplée que <i>l'Ecosse</i>	<i>Ireland</i> is more populous than <i>Scotland</i>
<i>Le Mont Vésuve</i> est un volcan célèbre	<i>Mount Vesuvius</i> is a cele- brated volcano
<i>Le Languedoc</i> est la plus belle province de la France	<i>Languedoc</i> is the finest pro- vince of France
<i>L'amiral Nelson</i> fut tué à la bataille de Trafalgar	<i>Admiral Nelson</i> was killed at the battle of Trafalgar
Monsieur le Président	Mr. President

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Life is a mixture of good and evil. Man is endowed with reason. The price of silk is extravagant. Men ought to shun vice, and follow virtue. Italy is the garden of Europe. It is to England we are indebted for the discovery of the circulation of the blood. Study makes men learned.

Black and red are more esteemed than yellow and grey. History, geography, and mathematics are (some) necessary sciences. Virtue alone can make man happy.

Life, <i>vie</i> , f.	study, <i>étude</i> , f.
mixture, <i>mélange</i>	to make, <i>rendre</i>
good, <i>biens</i> ; evil, <i>maux</i>	learned, <i>savant</i> , m.
endowed with, <i>doué de</i>	black, <i>noir</i> , m.
price, <i>prix</i> , m.	red, <i>rouge</i> , m.
silk, <i>soie</i> , f.	esteemed, <i>estimés</i> , m. pl.
extravagant, <i>exorbitant</i>	yellow, <i>janne</i> , m.
men ought, <i>on doit</i>	grey, <i>gris</i> , m.
shun, <i>fuir</i> ; vice, <i>vice</i> , m.	history, <i>histoire</i> , f.
follow, <i>s'attacher à</i>	geography, <i>géographie</i> , f.
Italy, <i>Italie</i> , f.	mathematics, <i>mathématiques</i> , m. pl.
it is, <i>c'est</i>	science, <i>science</i> , f.
we are indebted for, <i>on doit</i>	necessary, <i>nécessaire</i>
discovery, <i>découverte</i> , f.	alone, <i>seulement</i>
circulation, <i>circulation</i> , f.	can, <i>peut</i>
blood, <i>sang</i> , m.	

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The proper names of deities, persons, &c. take no article before them; unless when joined with another noun or adjective expressed or understood; as, *Dieu est présent partout*, God is present every where; *Cicéron et Démosthène étaient deux grands orateurs*, Cicero and Demosthenes were two great orators; *Jupiter et Vénus étaient des divinités païennes*, Jupiter and Venus were heathen divinities; *Le Dieu des Chrétiens est un Dieu de paix*, the God of the Christians is a God of peace; *L'Empereur Alexandre*, the Emperor Alexander; *Les Cicérons et les Démosthènes sont rares*, Ciceros and Demosthenes are rare (here *orateurs comme*, orators like, is understood); *Le Jupiter d'Homère*, Homer's Jupiter, or the Jupiter of Homer; *L'ancienne Rome était très belle*, ancient Rome was very fine; *Le Tasse*, Tasso; *Le Dante*, Dante (here *poète*, poet, is understood); so the names of most distinguished orators, authors, poets, and painters take the article, except *Raphaël*, *Michel Angelo*, *Petrarch*, *Bocace*, *Sannezer*, and some others who have written in Latin.

2. The names of islands, cities, towns, and also provinces, called after their capitals, take no article; as, *Rhodes*, *Candie*, *Corfou*, *Paris*, *Rome*, *Vienne*, *Naples*, *Alger*, *Gènes*, *Genève*, *Matthe*, *Venise*, &c.

3. The names of countries and kingdoms take no article before them, when motion *from*, or *to*, or *rest in* is denoted; as, *to come from France*, *Spain*, &c. *venir de France*, *d'Espagne*, &c. *to go into*, or *live in*

FRANCE, SPAIN, &c. *aller ou demeurer EN FRANCE, EN ESPAGNE, &c.*; so when preceded by a noun denoting any commodity of the country, by the nouns *roi*, king; *royaume*, kingdom, &c.; as, *de la soie d'ITALIE*, *ALIAN silk*; *le roi DE FRANCE, d'ESPAGNE, the king of FRANCE, SPAIN, &c.* However, the names of some French provinces; as, *l'Anjou*, *le Maine*, *Main*; *le Dauphiné*, *Dauphiny*; *le Havre de Grace*, *Havre de Grace*; *la Haye*, the Hague, &c. do not fall under either of the two last exceptions; nor the proper names of countries out of Europe; as, *la Chine*, China; *les Indes*, the Indies, &c. as to come from ANJOU, CHINA, &c. *venir DE L'ANJOU, DE LA CHINE, &c.*

Ex. 1. *Bucéphale* était le cheval d'*Alexandre*

« *Jupiter de Phidias*

« *Venus de Praxitèle*

Ex. 3. *Rhodes, Candie, Corfu*, sont des îles de la Méditerranée

Valence est une des plus agréables provinces d'*Espagne*

« *royaume de Naples*

« *république de Genève*

Florence appartient à la *Toscane*

Vénise est un état d'

Elle vient d'*Angleterre*

Elle est sortie de *France*

Ils demeurent en *Russie*

Il va en *Espagne*

La Province de *Picardie* et celle d'*Artois*

L'*Histoire d'Espagne*

L'*Histoire du Pérou*

Il a été au *Mexique, au Japon, à*

la Chine, aux Indes

Je viens du *Mexique, du Japon, de*

la Chine, des Indes

Je vais au *Mexique, au Japon, à*

la Chine, aux Indes

Il demeure à *la Haye*

Bucephalus was *Alexander's* horse

The Jupiter of Phidias

The Venus of Praxiteles

Rhodes, Candia, Corfu, are islands in the Mediterranean

Valencia is one of the most agreeable provinces of *Spain*

The kingdom of Naples

The republic of Geneva

Florence belongs to *Tuscany*

Venice is a state of *Italy*

He comes from *England*

She is gone from *France*

They live in *Russia*

He goes to *Spain*

The Province of Picardy and that of *Artois*

The History of Spain

The History of Peru

He has been in *Mexico, in Japan, in China, the Indies*

I come from *Mexico, Japan, China, the Indies*

I am going to *Mexico, to Japan, to China, to the Indies*

He lives at *the Hague*

RULE III.

The articles omitted in French, though used in English;
1st. Before a parenthetical phrase; as,

Londres (capitale de l'Angleterre) est une grande ville

*Majorque,** île de la Méditerranée,* sa capitale est

London (the capital of England) is a great city

Majorca, an island in the Mediterranean, its capital

* The commas frequently supply the place of parentheses, and may generally be considered as small parentheses.

<i>Palma</i> , ville riche avec un bon port	is <i>Palma</i> , <i>a</i> rich town with a good port
Télémaque, fils d'Ulysse, roi d'Ithaque	Telemachus, the son of Ulysses, king of Ithaca

But when the phrase is not parenthetical then the article is used ; as,

Londres est <i>la</i> capitale de l'Angleterre	London is <i>the</i> capital of England
Majorque est <i>une</i> isle de la Méditerranée	Majorca is <i>an</i> island in the Mediterranean
Pan était <i>le</i> Dieu de la nature	Pan was <i>the</i> god of nature

2nd. Before comparatives ; as,

<i>Plus</i> on se presse, <i>moins</i> on avance	<i>The more</i> we hasten, <i>the</i> slower we proceed
<i>Plus</i> on étudie, <i>plus</i> on devient savant	<i>The more</i> we study, <i>the more</i> learned we become

3. Before the titles of books, &c. and after *être*, *de*, *devenir*, *quel*, *comme*, *point*, *en*, *sans*, *avec*, *avoir peur*, &c. when the names* which follow them are derived from *nations*, *dignities*, *employments*, *trades*, *conditions*, &c. or when the nouns are taken in an indefinite, general, adjectival, or adverbial sense ; but when the noun is taken in a particular, or individual* sense, then the article is used.

<i>Grammaire</i> de la langue Française	<i>A Grammar</i> of the French language
<i>Catalogue</i> de livres Anglais	<i>A Catalogue</i> of English books
Je suis <i>français</i>	I am (<i>French</i>) <i>a Frenchman</i>
Il est <i>italien</i>	He is <i>an Italian</i>
Elle est <i>duchesse</i>	She is <i>a duchess</i>
Vous êtes <i>négociant</i>	You are <i>a merchant</i>
Il était <i>officier</i>	He was <i>an officer</i>
Il est <i>cordonnier</i>	He is <i>a shoemaker</i>
Elle est <i>veuve</i>	She is <i>a widow</i>
Quel <i>bruit</i> vous faites !	What <i>a noise</i> you make !
Quel <i>homme</i> vous êtes !	What <i>a man</i> you are !

Il agit <i>en</i> roi	He acts like <i>a</i> king
Voilà <i>une</i> * Grammaire de la langue Anglaise	There is <i>a</i> grammar of the English language
L'usage est <i>le</i> tyran des langues	Custom, or use is <i>the</i> tyrant of languages

OBSERVATIONS.

1. When *ce* is the subject of *être*, instead of *il*, *elle*, &c. or when an adjective is used with the noun, the article is not omitted; as, *C'est un négociant*, *he*, or *that*, is a merchant; *je suis un Français d'illustre maison*, I am a Frenchman of an illustrious family (*house*); *il était un prince*, he was a prince; *il était un prince malheureux*, he was an unfortunate prince. In each of these examples the noun is taken in an individual sense.—[V. 3, Rule iii.]

2. When a numeral follows as a title to a noun, the article is omitted; as, *George quatre*, George the *fourth*; *livre premier*, book the *first*; *chapitre cinq*, chapter the *fifth*, but when adjectives of praise or dispraise follow nouns, the article is used; as, *Louis le juste*, Louis the *just*; *Nero le tyran*, Nero the *tyrant*.

3. The article is omitted in adverbial expressions; as, *c'est un homme sans vertu*, that is a man *without* virtue: but when any thing is said of virtue itself, the article is used; as, *sans la vertu l'homme ne saurait être heureux*, without *virtue* man cannot be happy.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Paris, the capital of France, is a fine city. Madrid is the capital of Spain. The more you (*will*) think, the more you will improve. Frederick the Third. A discourse upon epic poetry. I have won a thousand guineas, I will lend you a hundred of them. The St. George, a ninety-gun ship. The Count of Clermont, a prince of the blood, died, &c. The contents (*table of contents*). A general maxim, &c. We are indebted to Homer for the rich invention of having personified the divine attributes, human passions, and physical causes, a fruitful source of (*some*) fine fictions. I dare not eat thee as a mouse, but I will devour thee as a bat. Will it be a holiday to-morrow? Are you a Scotchman? She is a Frenchwoman. I am an Englishman. He will become a doctor in time. Will you have a morsel? Have you a desire to read? He has had a quarrel. He has a pain in his head, arm, &c. (*in the head, in the arm*).

Spain, *Espagne*
 more, *plus*
 to think, *penser*, (future)
 to improve, *faire de progrès*
 Frederick, *Frederic*
 discourse, *discours*
 upon, *sur*
 poetry, *poésie*, f.
 epic, *épique*
 to win, *gagner*
 guinea, *guinée*
 I will lend you of them, *je vous en prêterai*
 hundred, *cent*
 ninety-gun ship, *vaisseau de guerre, de quatre-vingt dix pièces de canon*
 count, *comte*, m.
 to die, *mourir*, pret.
 contents, *table des matières*
 maxim, *maxime*, f.
 general, *général*, f.
 we are indebted, *on doit*
 Homer, *Homère*
 rich, *riche*
 invention, *invention*, f.
 of having personified, *d'avoir personnaliser*
 attribute, *attribut*, m.

divine, *divins*, m. pl.
 passion, *passion*, f.
 human, *humaine*
 cause, *cause*, f.
 physical, *physique*
 source, *source*, f.
 fruitful, *fécond*
 fiction, *fiction*, f.
 I dare not eat thee, *je n'en te manger*
 as, *comme*
 mouse, *souris*, f.
 but, *mais*
 I will devour thee, *je te croquerai*
 bat, *chauve-souris*, f.
 holiday, *congé*, m.
 to-morrow, *demain*
 Scotchman, *Ecossais*
 Frenchwoman, *Française*
 Englishman, *Anglais*
 to become, *devenir* (ir.)
 doctor, *docteur*, m.
 in time, *avec le tems*
 morsel, *morceau*, m.
 desire, *envie*, f.
 to, *de*; read, *lire*
 quarrel, *querelle*, f.
 pain, *mal*

RULE IV.

The partitive articles *du, de la, de l', des* (Englished by *some* expressed, or understood) are used to express a portion of a whole thing, or part of a quantity of things; as,

Apportez-moi *du pain, de la viande, de l'eau, et des œufs*
 Voilà *du vin et de la bière*
 Elle a *des amis*
 Avez-vous *du fil, ou de la soie*?

Bring me *some* bread, *some* meat, *some* water and eggs
 There is *wine and beer*
 She has (*some*) friends
 Have you *thread, or silk*?

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Will you bring me some apples, pears, oranges, and nuts? Bread and water are sufficient for him. Guinea produces pepper, cotton, honey, wax, and ambergris. This thread resembles (*to the*) silk. This son is like (*to*) his father. You must lay this fruit in (*the*) straw. He compares this stuff (*to the*) velvet. Did you see any fish in the market? Let us have charity for all men.

To be willing, *vouloir*
bring me, *m'apporter*
apple, *pomme*, f.
pear, *poire*, f.
orange, *orange*, f.
nut, *noisette*, f.
are sufficient for him, *lui*
suffisant
Guinea, *Guinée*, f.
to produce, *produire*
pepper, *poivre*, m.
cotton, *coton*, m.
honey, *miel*, m.
wax, *cire*, f.
ambergris, *ambre-gris*, m.

thread, *fil*, m.
to resemble, *ressembler*
to, *à*; silk, *soie*, f.
to be like, *ressembler*; to, *à*
you must lay, *il faut mettre*
fruit, *fruit*, m.; in, *dans*
straw, *paille*, f.
to compare, *comparer*
stuff, *étouffe*, f.
velvet, *velours*, m.
did you see? *avez-vous vu?*
fish, *poisson*, m.
market, *marché*, m.
charity, *charité*, f.; for, *pour*
all men, *tous les hommes*

Obs. 1. When a noun is preceded by an adjective, the preposition *de* only is used; as, *de bon pain*, good bread; *de bonne viande*, good meat; *de bons pois*, good peas, &c.: but nouns compounded with an adjective take *des*; as, *des beaux-esprits*, wits; also, when the word which qualifies is used in a particular sense; as, *le but des bons maîtres* doit être de cultiver l'esprit de leurs disciples, the aim of good masters should be to cultivate the mind of their pupils.—[*V. Du Marsais*, tome ii. p. 33.]

2. *De* is used after *beaucoup*, much; *combien*, how much; *peu*, little; *point*, no; *rien*, nothing; *sorte*, sort; *espèce*, kind; *tant*, so much; *moins*, less; *plus*, more; *que*, as, &c.; as, *combien d'argent avez-vous?* how much money have you? *je n'ai pas beaucoup d'argent*, I have not much money; *voulez-vous boire un peu de vin?* will you drink a little wine? but *bien* takes the article after it; as, *à-t-il bien de l'argent?* has he much money? and *beaucoup* also takes the article when a determinate sense is to be expressed; as, *elle a dépensé beaucoup de l'argent* que vous lui aviez donné, she has spent a great deal of the money which you gave her.

RULE V.

1. The definite article is used in French, and the indefinite in English, before nouns of *number*, *weight*, and *measure*, and also before nouns used in a *general sense*; as,

Nombre.

Les œufs valent trente sous
la douzainé,

Number.

Eggs are worth fifteen pence
a dozen

Poids.

Le veau coûte vingt sous la
livre, et le beurre seize
sous la livre,

Weight.

Veal costs ten pence a
pound; and butter eight
pence a pound

Mesure.

Le vin se vend soixante écus
le muid; c'est plus de six
sous la bouteille,

Measure.

Wine sells for sixty crowns
a hogshead; it is more
than three-pence (or six
sous) a bottle

Nouns in a General Sense.

Le sage n'a ni amour ni
haine,

A wise man has neither love
nor hatred.

Le mensonge est indigne d'un
honnête homme,

A lie is unworthy an honest
man

2. *Par* is used instead of the indefinite article before nouns of time; as,

Il donne à son fils six francs
par jour,

He gives his son six francs a
(or *per*) day

Je prends trois leçons de
musique *par* semaine,

I take three lessons a (or
per) week in music

Also, the French say, *par* tête, a head (or *per* head); *par* leçon, a (or *per*) lesson; as,

Il nous en coûte six schellings
par tête,

It costs us six shillings a (or
per) head

Il donne à son maître de
mathématiques une guinée
par leçon,

He gives his mathematical
master a guinea a (or *per*)
lesson

3. The partitive article is used instead of the indefinite before a noun ; but the indefinite article is used before an adjective ; as,

J'entends *du* bruit, I hear *a* noise
J'entends *un* grand bruit, I hear *a* great noise

But we may either say, j'entends *du* bruit là haut, or
j'entends *un* bruit là haut, I hear *some*, or *a* noise above.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Wine sells for two francs* a bottle. I pay him two guineas a month. It is six guineas a quarter. He gives two lessons a week. He will ask you two shillings a league. Two crowns a bushel. How much a yard? Four guineas an ell. Seven farthings a pint. Threepence a pound. Twice a year. Once a day. A wise man governs his passions. A liar and flatterer are equally despicable. Sometimes we hunt a stag, and sometimes a hare. Do you often fish with a (*the*) net?

Wine, <i>vin</i> , m.	pint, <i>pinte</i> , f.
to sell for, <i>se vendre</i>	pound, <i>livre</i> , f.
bottle, <i>bouteille</i> , f.	twice, <i>deux fois</i>
I pay him, <i>je lui paie</i>	year, <i>année</i> , f.
month, <i>mois</i> , m.	once, <i>une fois</i>
quarter, <i>quartier</i>	day, <i>jour</i> , m.
to give, <i>donner</i>	wise man, <i>sage</i>
lesson, <i>leçon</i> , f.	to govern, <i>régler</i> ; his, <i>son</i>
week, <i>semaine</i> , f.	liar, <i>menteur</i> , m.
he will ask you, <i>il vous de-</i>	flatterer, <i>flatteur</i>
<i>mandera</i>	equally, <i>également</i>
shilling, <i>schelling</i> , m.	despicable, <i>méprisable</i>
league, <i>lieue</i> , f.	sometimes, <i>tantôt</i>
crown, <i>écu</i> , m.	to hunt, <i>courir</i> (<i>ir.</i>)
bushel, <i>boisseau</i> , m.	stag, <i>cerf</i> , m.
how much, <i>combien</i>	hare, <i>lièvre</i> , m.
yard; <i>verge</i> , f.	do you often fish? <i>pêchez-</i>
ell, <i>aune</i> , f.	<i>vous souvent?</i>
farthing, <i>liard</i> , m.	with (<i>the</i>), <i>au</i> ; net, <i>filat</i> , m.

* A franc is equal to about *ten-pence* in England.

RULE VI.

When *possession* is expressed in English, we generally put an *s* with an apostrophe before it; at the end of a singular noun; but if the noun be plural and end in *s* the apostrophe is put after it. Sometimes also we use *of* and the terminations *en, an, &c.* to express *possession*. The French invariably put *de, du, de la, de l', ou des* before the latter noun or pronoun; as,

Le livre <i>de</i> Jean,	<i>John's</i> book
La Philosophie <i>de</i> Newton,	<i>Newton's</i> Philosophy
La maison <i>de</i> mon père,	My <i>father's</i> house, or the house <i>of</i> my father
La fin <i>de</i> l'année,	The <i>year's</i> end
Le fils <i>du</i> roi,	The <i>king's</i> son
Le palais <i>de</i> la reine,	The <i>queen's</i> palace
Les maisons <i>des</i> deux sœurs,	The two <i>sisters'</i> houses
Sur des ailes <i>d'</i> aigles,	On <i>eagles'</i> wings
L'âge <i>d'</i> or,	The <i>golden</i> age
L'armée <i>de</i> Prusse,	The <i>Prussian</i> army
Les troupes <i>du</i> roi <i>de</i> Prusse,	The king <i>of Prussia's</i> troops
La mort <i>du</i> roi <i>de</i> France,	The death <i>of</i> the king <i>of</i> France, or the king <i>of</i> <i>France's</i> death
Du côté <i>du</i> père, du côté <i>de</i> , la mère,	Both by <i>father</i> and <i>mother's</i> side

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

The king's palace. The king of England's subjects. The garden gate is open. My uncle's house is well built. Cicero's letters are very fine. This is the captain's house. Diana's anger caused Actæon's death. Helen's beauty caused the ruin of Troy. That is my brother's wife. Do you see the queen's servants?

Subject, <i>sujet</i>	letter, <i>lettre, f.</i>
gate, <i>porte, f.</i>	Cicero, <i>Ciceron</i>
well, <i>bien</i> ; to build, <i>bâtir</i>	very, <i>fort</i>

this is, *voici*
 captain, *capitaine*, m.
 anger, *colère*, f.
 Diana, *Diane*, f.
 caused, *causa*
 death, *mort*, f.
 Actæon, *Actéon*

beauty, *beauté*, f.
 Helen, *Hélène*
 ruin, *ruine*, f.; Troy, *Troie*
 that is, *voilà*
 wife, *épouse*, f.
 to see, *voir*
 servant, *domestique*, m.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The English compounds are rendered in French by the aid of *de*, and sometimes by *à*; as, a gold watch, *une montre d'or*; a wind-mill, *un moulin à vent*, &c.

2. When *to* follows nouns in English, it is always rendered by *DE* in French; as, a friend to virtue, *un ami DE LA vertu*.

3. The governing substantive is never omitted in French; therefore St. Paul's, that is, St. Paul's church, is rendered by *l'église DE St. Paul*; at my brother's, that is, at my brother's house, is rendered by the preposition *chez*; as, *chez mon frère*; this hat is the gentleman's, meaning, this hat belongs to the gentleman, is expressed by a dative in French; as, *ce chapeau est à Monsieur*; a friend of my brother's, meaning one of my brother's friends, is turned in French by, *un des amis de mon frère*.

4. When a noun is followed by another noun, the preposition *de* is used without any article when the sense is general or indeterminate; as, an act of justice, *un acte DE justice*; greedy of glory, *avide DE gloire*; but, in a particular sense, the article must be used; as, *Part DE LA natation*, the art of swimming; *il est avide DE LA gloire de ces ancêtres*, he is greedy of the glory of his ancestors.

CONTRASTED EXAMPLES OF ARTICLES.

With the Article.

London is the capital of
 *England, Paris of France,
 Madrid of Spain, &c.
 He lives in Peru, Japan,
 China, Martinico, the
 Indies, &c.
 He comes from India, Asia,
 America, Africa, China,
 &c.

Without the Article.

The kingdom of England,* the
 kingdom of France, the
 kingdom of Spain, &c.
 He lives in Italy, in Persia,
 France, at, or in London,
 Paris, &c.
 He comes from Italy, from
 Persia, France, England,
 Madrid, &c.

* The words in italics, in the left column, take the article; and those, in the right-hand column, take no article.

With the Article.

The islands of Japan, Jamaica, Barbadoes, &c.

He is returned from French Flanders, from Mexico, &c.

The Mountains of Asia Minor are Olympus, Ida, Taurus, &c.

That town is situated between France and Switzerland

The province of Maine

The politeness of France

Normandy is in France

The circumference of England

The interest of Spain

The invention of printing is attributed to Germany

He comes from Rochelle

He did it with astonishing courage

The goodness of the great Henry

The different species of animals which are upon the earth

He has pens, ink, and paper

I have bought some lace

This lady has property

Give me a little of the wine which is in that bottle

I have a great deal of the money which I brought from France

Use the signs which we have agreed upon

She has many *friends

Without the Article.

The islands of Rhodes, Candia, Corfu, &c.

He is returned from Flanders, from Germany, &c.

They travelled as far as Mount Atlas

He is gone into France and Switzerland

A province of Spain

The fashions of France

The cows of Normandy

The horses of England are very fine

The wines of Spain

The empire of Germany is divided into nine parts

The wine of Burgundy is very good

He did it with courage

The goodness of Henry the Fourth

There are different species of animals upon the earth

He has good pens, ink, and paper

I have bought some fine lace

This lady has a great deal of property

Give me a little (of) wine

I have a great deal of money still

We are obliged to use (of) signs, in order to make ourselves understood

She has many †friends

He is (*that is*) a *physician*
 He has no need of the *lesson*
 which you wish to give
 him

Knowledge has always been
 the object of *men's esteem*,
praise, and *admiration*

He is a *physician*
 He has no need of *lessons*

It is an object of *esteem*, of
praise, of *admiration*

Spain, *Espagne*
 Peru, *Pérou*, m.
 Japan, *Japon*, m.
 China, *Chine*, f.
 Martinico, *Martinique*, f.
 to come, *venir* ; from, *de*
 India, *Indes*, pl.
 Asia, *Asie*, f.
 America, *Amérique*, f.
 Africa, *Afrique*, f.
 Jamaica, *Jamaïque*, f.
 Barbadoes, *Barbade*, f.
 to return, *revenir*
 Flanders, *Flandre*, f.
 Mexico, *Méxique*, m.
 mountain, *montagne*, f.
 Minor, *Mineure*, f.
 Olympus, *Olympe*, m.
 Ida, *Ida*, m.
 Taurus, *Taurus*, m.
 between, *entre*
 Switzerland, *Suisse*, f.
 province, *province*, f.
 Main, *Maine*, m.
 politeness, *politesse*, f.
 Normandy, *Normandie*, f.
 in, *dans* ; circumference, *cir-
 conférence*, f.
 interest, *intérêt*, m.
 printing, *imprimerie*, f.
 to attribute, *attribuer*
 Germany, *Allemagne*, f.
 Rochelle, *Rochelle*, f.
 it, *le* ; to do, *faire*

Courage, *courage*, m.
 astonishing, *étonnant* ;
 goodness, *bonté*, f.
 Henry, *Henri*
 species, *espèces*, f. pl.
 upon, *sur*
 to buy, *acheter*
 lace, *dentelle*, f.
 lady, *dame*, f.
 property, *biens*, m. pl.
 little, *peu*
 bottle, *bouteille*, f.
 a great deal, *beaucoup*
 to bring, *apporter*
 to use, *se servir*
 sign, *signe*, m.
 to have agreed, *être convenu*
 many, *bien**
 physician, *médecin*, m.
 need, *besoin*
 lesson, *leçon*, f.
 wish, *voulez*
 knowledge, *connaissances*, f. pl.
 esteem, *estime*, f.
 praise, *louange*, f.
 Italy, *Italie* ; Persia, *Perse*
 at, or in, *à*
 Rhodes, *Rhode*
 Candia, *Candie*
 Corfu, *Corfou*
 to travel, *voyager*
 into, *en* ; fashion, *mode*, f.
 cow, *vache*, f.
 empire, *empire*, m.

to divide, *diviser*
 Burgundy, *Bourgogne*
 to oblige, *obliger*
 to use, *d'user*
 in order to, *pour*

ourselves, *nous*
 to make understood, *faire*
entendre
 many, *beaucoup*
 object, *objet*, *m.*

RECAPITULATORY PRACTICE.

The king's palace will be a magnificent building. The queen's apartments are very fine. We eat bread. We drink water. The more we have, the more we desire. The ant is the emblem of industry, the lamb and dove of meekness and humility. Exercise and temperance strengthen the constitution. Bread, water, and meat will be sufficient. He has fine lands and gardens. Cheerfulness promotes the happiness of the mind. Covetousness promises wealth, luxury pleasures. Secrecy is the key of prudence, and the sanctuary of wisdom. Necessity is the mother of invention. Trade enriches, luxury enervates, and arts amuse. Alexander, the son of Philip, was a conqueror. Henry the Eighth was a great politician. The more a country is inhabited, the more opulent it is. Complaisance suits itself to every humour. Obstinacy in vice is a mark of reprobation. Sight, hearing, feeling, taste, and smell, are the five natural senses. Corn is sold for a crown a bushel. My father goes to Ireland four or five times a year. It is necessary, if you wish to make a rapid progress (*progresses rapid*), that you take a lesson three times a week. He says he is a Frenchman; I think he is an Englishman. I have been a prisoner in Egypt as a Phœnician. Mr. B—, Sophia's uncle says that you are a Spaniard. The best coffee comes from Mocha, a town of Arabia Felix. Edward the Third was a warrior. Henry the Fourth was a good king. George the Fourth is an excellent king.

Building, *bâtiment*, *m.*
 magnificent, *magnifique*
 apartments, *appartemens*, *m.*
 we have, *on a*
 we desire, *on désire*

ant, *fourmi*, *f.*
 emblem, *emblème*, *m.*
 industry, *industrie*, *f.*
 lamb, *agneau*, *m.*
 dove, *colombe*, *f.*

meekness, <i>douceur</i> , f.	every humour, <i>toutes sortes d'humeurs</i>
to strengthen, <i>fortifier</i>	obstinacy, <i>opiniâtreté</i> , f.
constitution, <i>tempérament</i> , m.	in, <i>dans</i> ; mark, <i>marque</i> , f.
to be sufficient, <i>suffire</i>	sight, <i>vue</i> , f.
land, <i>terre</i> , f.	hearing, <i>ouïe</i> , f.
cheerfulness, <i>gaieté</i> , f.	feeling, <i>toucher</i> , m.
to promote, <i>procurer</i>	taste, <i>goût</i> , m.
happiness, <i>bonheur</i> , m.	smell, <i>odorat</i> , m.
covetousness, <i>avarice</i> , m.	sense, <i>sens</i>
to promise, <i>promettre</i> (ir.)	corn, <i>blé</i> , m.; is sold, <i>se vend</i>
wealth, <i>richesses</i> , pl.	for a crown, <i>un écu</i>
luxury, <i>luxe</i> , m.	bushel, <i>boisseau</i> , m.
secrecy, <i>secret</i> , m.	to make, <i>faire</i>
key, <i>clé</i> , or <i>clef</i> , f.	progress, <i>progrès</i> , pl.
sanctuary, <i>sanctuaire</i> , m.	rapid, <i>rapide</i>
wisdom, <i>sagesse</i> , f.	that you take, <i>que vous prenez</i>
trade, <i>commerce</i> , m.	I think, <i>je crois</i>
to enrich, <i>enrichir</i>	prisoner, <i>prisonnier</i> , m.
to enervate, <i>affaiblir</i>	Phœnician, <i>Phœnicien</i> , m.
to amuse, <i>amuser</i>	uncle, <i>oncle</i> , m.
Philip, <i>Philippe</i>	Sophia, <i>Sophie</i>
was, <i>était</i>	Spaniard, <i>Espagnol</i> , m.
conqueror, <i>conquérant</i>	coffee, <i>café</i> , m.
Henry, <i>Henri</i>	Mocha, <i>Moka</i>
eighth, <i>huit</i>	Arabia Felix, <i>Arabie Heureuse</i>
politician, <i>politique</i> , m.	Edward, <i>Edouard</i>
country, <i>pays</i> , m.	warrior, <i>guerrier</i> , m.
inhabited, <i>peuplé</i>	
it is, <i>il est</i> ; rich, <i>riche</i>	
to suit oneself, <i>s'accommoder</i>	

EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX OF ARTICLES AND NOUNS.

FIRST LESSON.

C'est un trop long voyage pour moi. Un perfide est détesté de tout le monde. Mon frère a une montre d'or avec un ruban de soie. Les murs de la ville ont dix pieds d'épaisseur. L'automne est moins varié que le printemps. Les plus habiles gens ne sont pas toujours les plus vertueux.

La Loire est plus longue que la Seine. La beauté la plus rare est fragile et mortelle. Les hommes qui aiment l'étude sont avares de leur tems. La faiblesse, la crainte, la mélancolie, et l'ignorance sont les sources de la superstition. L'homme est sujet à toutes sortes d'infirmités. La jalousie est un mélange d'amour et de haine, de crainte et de désespoir. La France et l'Angleterre sont deux puissans royaumes. J'ai passé par l'Espagne, la Suisse et l'Allemagne. Charles douze fut l'Alexandre de son siècle. Cet homme est un Alexandre. Londres et Paris sont deux grandes villes. L'ignorance est la mère de l'admiration, de l'erreur, du scrupule, de la superstition, et de la prévention.

C'est, it is ; trop, too
pour, for
perfide, perfidious man
détesté de, hated by
tout le monde, every body
soie, silk ; murs, walls
ont, are ; pieds, feet
épaisseur, thick
moins varié que, less varied
than
printems, spring
gens, people
toujours, always

rare, exquisite
avares, penurious
faiblesse, weakness
crainte, fear
à toutes sortes, to all sorts,
or kinds
mélange, mixture
haine, hatred
désespoir, despair
Allemagne, Germany
siècle, age
scrupule, doubt
prévention, anticipation

SECOND LESSON.

La patience et l'espérance, le tems et la fortune rendent toutes choses possibles. L'espérance est la dernière chose qui meurt dans l'homme. La religion est le meilleur garant que les hommes puissent avoir de la probité des hommes. La sobriété, la modération, et les bonnes mœurs donnent une vie longue et exempte de maladies. Un homme qui est jaloux de sa réputation, fréquente la bonne compagnie et fuit la mauvaise. La droiture du cœur est le fondement de la vertu. La religion est une lumière divine, qui découvre Dieu à l'homme, et qui règle les devoirs de l'homme envers Dieu. La recon-

naissance est un tribut du cœur qui est fait pour être senti
et non pour être exprimé.

<i>rendre</i> , to render, or make	<i>droiture</i> , uprightness
<i>dernière</i> , last	<i>fondement</i> , foundation
<i>jourir</i> , to die	<i>lumière</i> , light
<i>avant</i> , guarantee	<i>découvrir</i> , to reveal
<i>puissent</i> , can ; <i>mœurs</i> , morals	<i>régler</i> , to regulate
<i>donner</i> , to bestow, or ensure	<i>envers</i> , towards
<i>soigneux</i> , careful	<i>la reconnaissance</i> , gratitude
<i>se retirer</i> , to shun	<i>pour</i> , to ; <i>sentir</i> , to feel

THIRD LESSON.

ORGUE. Cet instrument vient de la Grèce ; il est fort ancien, puisqu'Archimède et Vitruve en ont parlé. Les premières que l'on vit en France furent apportées au roi d'Espagne, l'an 752, par les ambassadeurs de l'empereur Constantin. Il y a des orgues hydrauliques dont on attribue l'invention à Ctesibius, qui vivait sous Ptolomée Evergetes.

ÉPINGLES. Les premières épingles ont paru en Angleterre, en 1569, et selon d'autres, en 1543. Auparavant on se servait de brochettes de bois, d'ivoire, ou d'épines. C'est à l'Aigle, département de l'Orne, que se fabrique la plus grande quantité d'épingles ; il y a eu jusqu'à six mille ouvriers employés à cette fabrique. On a calculé qu'il pouvait se consommer par an à Paris 60 millions d'épingles de toutes espèces, qui, à 25 centimes* le cent, font cent cinquante mille francs.*—AMUSEMENTS PHILOLOGIQUES.

<i>Venir</i> , to come	<i>en</i> , of it
<i>Grèce</i> , Greece	<i>que l'on vit</i> , which were seen
<i>fort</i> , very ; <i>puisque</i> , since	<i>apporter</i> , to bring
<i>Archimède</i> , Archimedes	<i>hydraulique</i> , hydraulic
<i>Vitruve</i> , Vitruvius	<i>vivre</i> , to live

* *Note.* A centime is a hundredth part of a franc, which is about $\frac{1}{10}$ of a penny.

sous, under
Ptolomée, Ptolomy
ont paru, appeared
selon, according to
auparavant, formerly

se servir, to make use of
brochette, skewer
épine, thorn
se fabriquer, to manufacture
jusqu'à, as many as

FOURTH LESSON.

L'homme n'est qu'un roseau le plus faible de la nature ; mais c'est un roseau pensant. Il ne faut pas que l'univers entier s'arme pour l'écraser ; une vapeur, une goutte d'eau suffit pour le tuer ; mais quand l'univers l'écraserait, l'homme serait encore plus noble que ce qui le tue, parce qu'il sait qu'il meurt ; et l'avantage que l'univers a sur lui, l'univers n'en sait rien.—Ainsi toute notre dignité consiste dans la pensée. Travaillons donc à bien penser : voilà le principe de la morale. Il est dangereux de trop faire voir à l'homme combien il est égal aux bêtes, sans lui montrer sa grandeur. Il est encore dangereux de lui faire trop voir sa grandeur sans sa bassesse. Il est encore plus dangereux de lui laisser ignorer l'un et l'autre. Mais il est très avantageux de lui représenter l'un et l'autre. Les inventions des hommes vont en avançant de siècle en siècle. La bonté et la malice du monde en général reste la même.

Roseau, reed
penser, to think
entier, whole
s'arme, should arm itself
écraser, to crush
goutte, drop
suffit, is sufficient
tuer, to kill
encore, still
ainsi, hence
travaillez, to labor

donc, then
voilà, there is
morale, morality
trop, too much
bêtes, brutes
laisser ignorer, to leave ignorant of
de siècle en siècle, from age to age
rester, to remain
malice, wickedness

Syntax of Adjectives.

RULE I.

ADJECTIVES must agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender and number ; as,

Masculine.

Un *bon* livre, a good book
Un homme *vertueux*, a virtuous man
Il est *savant*, he is learned
De *beaux* jardins, fine gardens

Feminine.

Une *bonne* plume, a good pen
Une femme *vertueuse*, a virtuous woman
Elle est *savante*, she is learned
De *belles* fleurs, fine flowers

Obs. Adjectives that are used adverbially are always in the masculine singular ; as, elle parle *haut*, she speaks *loud* ; elles voient *clair*, they see *clear*, or *clearly*, &c.—[*V. De Wailly*, &c.]

RULE II.

Adjectives are generally placed after the noun, particularly when they express *nationality* ; as, *Anglais*, English ; *Français*, French ; *Italien*, Italian ; *Ecossais*, Scotch, &c. and when they express *color*, or *shape* ; as, *brun*, brown ; *ron*d, round, &c. Also those words which express the *qualities*, or *states* of the *elements* ; as, *froid*, cold ; *chaud*, warm, &c. Adjectives expressive of *savour* ; as, *aigre*, sour ; *doux*, sweet, &c. : qualities of *sound* and *feeling* ; as, *harmonieux*, harmonious ; *dur*, hard ; *mou*, soft : and those that end in *esque*, *ic*, *if*, *ile*, *ique*, *ue*, *ule*, *ve* (except *du vif argent*, quick-silver) : and also participles used adjectively ; as, *respecté*, respected, &c. : and, in general, adjectives that may be used alone as nouns ; such as, *l'aveugle*, the blind ; *le boiteux*, the lame ; *le riche*, the rich, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Apportez-moi un chapeau <i>Anglais</i> ,	Bring me an English hat
Montrez-moi les modes <i>Françaises</i> ,	Show me the French fashions
Voilà des vaches <i>brunes</i> ,	There are some brown cows

Elle a des bas <i>blancs</i> ,	She has white stockings
Vendez-moi une table <i>ronde</i> ,	Sell me a round table
Donnez-moi du lait <i>froid</i> ,	Give me some cold milk
Voulez-vous me donner de l'eau <i>chaude</i> ?	Will you give me some warm water?
Avez-vous une pomme <i>aigre</i> ?	Have you a sour apple?
Ne voulez-vous pas avoir une pomme <i>douce</i> ?	Will you not have a sweet apple?
Votre frère a une voix <i>har- monieuse</i> ,	Your brother has an harmo- nious voice
Voulez-vous m'apporter du bois <i>dur</i> ?	Will you bring me some hard wood?
Cet homme là a une figure <i>grotesque</i> ,	That man has a <i>grotesque</i> appearance
Ce prédicateur fit un discours <i>puérile</i> ,	That preacher made a childish discourse
Votre père est un homme respecté,	Your father is a respected man
Voilà un homme <i>aveugle</i> ;	There is a blind man; give
donnez-lui un sous,	him a sous (or half-penny)
Sénèque était l'homme le plus <i>riche</i> de l'empire (do not say <i>le plus riche</i> <i>homme</i>)	Seneca was the richest man in the empire

Some adjectives have different meanings, according as they are placed before, or after the substantive; as,

<i>Un bon homme</i> , a simple harmless man	<i>Un homme bon</i> , a good hearted man
<i>Un brave homme</i> , a deserving man (one who is honest, and can be relied upon in business)	<i>Un homme brave</i> , a courage- ous man (one who braves danger without fear)
<i>Une certaine nouvelle</i> , a cer- tain piece of news	<i>Une nouvelle certaine</i> , a cer- tain, or true report
<i>Un digne homme</i> , a worthy man	<i>Un homme digne de foi</i> , a credible man
<i>Une sage-femme</i> , a midwife	<i>Une femme sage</i> , a virtuous woman
<i>Un galant homme</i> , a brave and honest man (one who has talent and veracity)	<i>Un homme galant</i> , a gallant man (one who is polite and attentive to the ladies)

<i>Un grand homme</i> , a great man (<i>a man of talent</i>)	<i>Un homme grand</i> , a tall man
<i>Un honnête homme</i> , an honest man, or a man of probity	<i>Un homme honnête</i> , a polite or civil man
<i>Le grand air</i> , the appearance of a man of high birth, or station	<i>L'air grand</i> , a noble physiognomy, or appearance
<i>Un gentil-homme</i> , a nobleman	<i>Un homme gentil</i> , a genteel man
<i>Un maigre repas</i> , a pitiful cheer, or sorry fare	<i>Un repas maigre</i> , a fish dinner
<i>Un pauvre homme</i> , a man without genius, or merit	<i>Un homme pauvre</i> , a poor man (<i>one who has little or no property</i>)
<i>Un plaisant homme</i> , a ridiculous, or impertinent man	<i>Un homme plaisant</i> , a cheerful man
<i>Un vilain homme</i> , a disagreeable man	<i>Un homme vilain</i> , a niggardly man (<i>a miser</i>)
<i>Un nouvel habit</i> , a fresh coat	<i>Un habit neuf</i> , a new coat
	<i>Un habit nouveau</i> , a new-fashioned coat
<i>Les bas pays</i> , land that is low	<i>Les Pays Bas</i> , the Low Countries; as, Flanders

OBSERVATIONS.

1. Adjectives expressive of moral qualities, whether good or bad; as, *aimable*, *admirable*, *charitable*, *cruel*, &c. are sometimes indifferently put before or after the noun; thus, *an amiable woman*, *une femme aimable*, or *une aimable femme*; this, however, depends on the harmony of the sentence: but monosyllables; as, *bon*, good; *beau*, fine, handsome; *grand*, great; *gros*, big; *jeune*, young, &c. generally precede the substantive; also, *petit*, little; *moindre*, less; *meilleur*, better; *mauvais*, bad; *méchant*, wicked; and a few others.

2. Numerals precede the noun, as, *quatre volumes*, four volumes; *le premier livre*, the first book; *le second livre*, the second book: but when no article is used we say, *livre second*, second book; *chapitre troisième*, third chapter: and when the cardinal numbers are used instead of the ordinal; as, *Henri quatre*, Henry the fourth; *Louis quatorze*, Louis the fourteenth: also, we must say, *Henri premier*, Henry the first, &c.

3. Some adjectives follow the substantive in the proper sense, and precede it in the figurative sense; as, *un homme juste*, a just man;

un homme GRAND, a TALL MAN ; *une maison CHÈRE*, a dear house : but in the figurative sense, we must say, *un juste prix*, a just, or fair price ; *un grand homme*, a great man (*a man of talent*) ; *ma chère mère*, my dear mother.

4. When a substantive is qualified by two adjectives, one is put before and the other after, otherwise each generally keeps its order ; as, a TALL BROWN man, *un grand homme brun*.

5. When several adjectives refer to the same noun, they are generally placed after it ; as, *c'est un homme bon, sobre, et vertueux*, he is a good, sober, and virtuous man.

PRACTICE ON THE PRECEDING RULES AND OBSERVATIONS.

First Adjectives preceding the Noun.—[Rule i. Obs. 1.]

A good woman. You have a fine house in the country. It is bad weather. Paris is a fine city. Your brother is a fine boy. Will you bring me some good bread ? They have lost a great general in this war. Send me five volumes. It is fine weather. I like fine music. It was a mature deliberation. He is a faithful friend.

Second Adjectives following the Noun.—[Rule ii. Obs. 3, 4, &c.]

Do you like Italian music ? Laplace is a celebrated mathematician. You have a square snuff-box. I hate cold weather. She had a blue gown. I have seen an English lady. There is a bitter herb. Will you have a black coat ? Have you any ripe fruit ? I saw a lame man. She is a wise and virtuous woman. He is a polite young man. She is a good, sober, and virtuous woman. Your sister has an harmonious voice. She is a prudent woman. Human life is a continual trial. Lead a regular and irreproachable life. A pretended friend is a dangerous enemy. You have an English hat. I like the German tongue, and the Spanish dress. He reads Italian authors. We have a good father and mother.

In the country, *à la campagne*
 weather, *temps*, m.
 city, *ville*, f.; lost, *perdu*
 general, *général*, m.
 in days; war, *guerre*, f.
 to send, *envoyer*
 volume, *tome*, f.
 music, *musique*, f.
 mature, *mûr*
 deliberation, *délibération*, f.
 faithful, *fidèle*
 Italian, *Italienne*, f.
 snuff-box, *tabatière*, f.
 square, *carré*
 to hate, *hàir*
 gown, *robe*, f.
 lady, *dame*, f.; herb, *herbe*, f.

bitter, *amer*; black, *noir*
 fruit, *fruit*, m.; ripe, *mûr*
 harmonious, *harmonieux*
 human, *humain*
 trial, *épreuve*, f.
 continual, *continuel*
 to lead, *mener*
 regular, *réglée*, f.
 irreproachable, *irréprochable*
 pretended, *dissimulé*
 to like, *aimer*
 tongue, *langue*, f.
 German, *Allemande*, f.
 dress, *habillement*, m.
 Spanish, *Espagnol*, m.
 author, *auteur*, m.
 Italian, *Italien*, m.

[Obs. 3, Rules i. and ii.]

Adjectives after the Noun.

He is a tall man
 He was a just man
 It is lean meat
 It is a common price
 The last year of the war
 It is a certain thing

We saw a fierce bull
 During this mortal life
 He is a poor man
 He is a pleasant man
 They are reputable people
 He has a dear suit
 That is fresh wine
 He is a niggardly man
 He is a true man

Tall, great, *grand*
 just, reasonable, *juste*
 meat, *viande*, f.
 fare, *chère*, f.

Adjectives before the Noun.

He is a great man
 It was a reasonable price
 It is sorry fare
 With one common consent
 The year preceding
 He promised him a certain
 recompense

That is a monstrous beast
 He was my mortal enemy
 He is a sorry fellow
 He is an impertinent fellow
 They are civil people
 His dear friend is dead
 That is new wine
 He is a disagreeable man
 He is a downright quack

sorry, lean, *maigre*
 common, *commun*
 bull, *taureau*, m.
 fierce, *furieux*

Monstrous, <i>furieux</i>	certain, <i>certain</i>
beast, <i>bête</i> , f.	he promised him, <i>il lui promit</i>
mortal, <i>mortel</i>	recompense, <i>récompense</i> , f.
sorry, <i>pauvre</i>	reputable, civil, <i>honnête</i>
man, fellow, <i>homme</i> , m.	suit, <i>habit</i> , m. ; dear, <i>cher</i>
pleasant, impertinent, <i>plaisant</i> ; with, <i>de</i>	fresh, new, <i>nouveau</i>
consent, <i>accord</i> , m.	niggardly, disagreeable, <i>vilain</i>
last, preceding, <i>dernier</i>	downright, <i>vrai</i>
	quack, <i>charlatan</i> , m.

ADJECTIVES, &C. OF DIMENSION.

Adjectives which denote dimension ; as, *haut*, high ; *long*, long ; *large*, broad ; or the substantives *hauteur*, height ; *longueur*, length ; *largeur*, breadth ; *profondeur*, depth ; take, simply, *de* before them when *avoir* (Englished to *be*) is used instead of *être* ; but when *être*, to be ; *voici*, here is ; or *voilà*, there is, is used, then *de* is put both before the numeral and adjective. Ex.

Cette maison a cinquante pieds <i>de haut</i> , ou <i>de</i> <i>hauteur</i> ; or cette maison est <i>de</i> cinquante pieds <i>de</i> <i>haut</i> , ou <i>de hauteur</i> ,	This house is fifty feet <i>high</i> , or in <i>height</i>
Voici une table <i>de</i> huit pieds <i>de long</i> , ou <i>de longueur</i> ,	Here is a table eight feet <i>long</i> , or in <i>length</i>
Voilà un mur <i>de</i> vingt pieds <i>de large</i> , ou <i>de largeur</i> ,	There is a wall twenty feet <i>wide</i> , or in <i>width</i>
Le fossé de la forteresse a quinze pieds <i>de profondeur</i> (not <i>de profond</i>)	The ditch of the fortress is fifteen feet in <i>depth</i> , or <i>deep</i>

But when *être* is used, and the adjectives *haut*, *long*, &c. precede the numerals, then *de* only is put before the numerals ; as,

Cette maison <i>est haute de</i> cinquante pieds,	This house is fifty feet <i>high</i>
C'est une tour <i>haute de</i> deux cents pieds,	It is a tower two hundred feet <i>high</i>

PRACTICE ON THE ADJECTIVES OF DIMENSION.

St. Paul's church, in London, is four hundred and four feet high. The monument of London is two hundred and two feet high. This circle is three feet in diameter. The front of his house is two hundred feet long and (*by*) sixty feet high. That tower is seventy-eight feet high.

Diameter, *diamètre* is, *a*
front, *façade* and (*by*), *sur*

RULE III.

When an adjective or participle refers to several nouns, it must agree with the latter; as,

Elle chante avec un gout (*m.*) She sings with a charming
et une délicatesse (*f.*) *char-* taste and delicacy
manie

Elle avait les yeux (*m.*) et la Her eyes and mouth were
bouche, (*f.*) *ouverte* open (*she had, &c.*)

Elle avait la bouche. (*f.*) et Her mouth and eyes were
les yeux (*m.*) *ouverts* open (*she had, &c.*)

Elle trouva le cabinet (*m.*) et She found the closet and
la chambre (*f.*) *ouverte* room open

Elle trouva la chambre (*f.*) et She found the room and
le cabinet (*m.*) *ouvert* closet open .

Obs. When there are several substantives, and the adjective precedes, it must be repeated to each, and agree with them; as, J'ai un *bon* père, une *bonne* mère, et une *bonne* sœur, I have a good father, mother, and sister. Voilà une *jolie* cage et un *joli* oiseau, there is a pretty cage and bird.

RULE IV.

When the adjective is separated from the nouns, by a verb expressed or understood, it must be put in the plural number; and if the substantives are all of one gender, it must agree with them; but if of different genders it must be masculine. So, likewise, when the adjectives imply a union or collection; as, *uni, réuni, joint, &c.*; Ex.

La mère et la fille sont *pru-* The mother and daughter
dentes, are *prudent*

Le père et le fils sont *con-* The father and son are *con-*
tens, *tented*

Le frère et la sœur sont *con-* The brother and sister are
tens, *contented*

Vous trouverez que le cabinet et la chambre sont <i>ouverts</i> ,	You will find that the closet and room are <i>open</i>
Voustrouverezquelachambre et le cabinet sont <i>ouverts</i>	You will find that the room and closet are <i>open</i>
Les yeux et la bouche sont <i>ouverts</i> ,	The eyes and mouth are <i>open</i>
La bouche et les yeux sont <i>ouverts</i>	The mouth and eyes are <i>open</i>
Les frères, la sœur et la mère <i>réunis</i>	The brothers, sister, and mother <i>united</i>
Le travail, la conduite, et la fortune <i>joint</i> s ensemble	Labour, conduct, and fortune <i>combined</i>

In the two last sentences *sont* is understood; as, *réunis* for *sont réunis*, and *joint*s for *sont joints*.

PRACTICE ON THE TWO PRECEDING RULES AND OBSERVATIONS.

Adjectives agreeing with the last Substantive.—[Rule iii.]

I saw the door and window shut. He displayed (*as*) astonishing courage and intrepidity. He has a coat and waistcoat full of spots. He governs with (*an*) absolute power and authority. He had his face and hands covered.

To display, <i>montrer</i>	with, <i>avec</i>
intrepidity, <i>intrépidité</i> , f.	power, <i>pouvoir</i> , m.
astonishing, <i>étonnant</i>	absolute, <i>absolu</i>
waistcoat, <i>gilet</i> , m.	his, <i>le</i> and <i>les</i>
spot, <i>tache</i> , f.	face, <i>visage</i> , m.
to govern, <i>gouverner</i>	covered, <i>couvert</i>

Adjectives in the Masculine Plural.—[Rule iv.]

His feet and legs were naked. His face and hands are covered. The castles and places seemed to me strong. He makes his father and mother happy. His courage and boldness seem astonishing to me. The children, father, and mother united. Health, honors, and fortune combined.

Adjectives in the Feminine Plural.—[Rule iv.]

The window and door are open. The head and mouth were fine. He found youth and beauty combined in her person.

Foot, <i>pied</i> , m.	united, <i>réuni</i>
were, <i>étaient</i>	combined, <i>joint</i>
castle, <i>chateau</i> , m.	open, <i>ouvert</i>
place, <i>place</i> , f.	fine, <i>beau</i>
seem to me, <i>me paraissent</i>	he found, <i>il trouva</i>
strong, <i>fort</i>	combined, <i>réuni</i>
to make, <i>rendre</i>	in, <i>dans</i> ; her, <i>sa</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Nu* and *demi* are indeclinable when used before the substantive forming a compound; as, *NU-tête*, BARE-headed; *NU-pieds*, BARE-foot (feet); *une DEMI-heure*, half an hour; and *feu* before an article or pronoun; as, *FEU la reine*, the LATE queen; *FEU votre mère*, your LATE mother; but *nu* and *demi* are declinable when they follow the substantive; as, *il va les pieds nus et la tête nue*, he goes with his feet and head bare. Also *feu* is declinable when it follows an article or a pronoun; as, *la feue reine*, the late queen; *votre feue mère*, your late mother.

Je suis à vous dans une <i>demi</i> -heure,	I shall be with you in half an hour
Je suis à vous dans une heure et <i>demie</i> ,	I shall be with you in an hour and a half

2. When *une partie*, a part; *la plupart*, most; *une foule*, a crowd, &c. are used with a masculine, the adjective or participle which is connected with the masculine must agree with it; as, *he has a part of his arm broken*, *il a une partie du bras cassée*, not *cassé*.

3. Adjectives are used as substantives oftener in French than in English; as, *a learned man*, *un savant*; *a learned woman*, *une savante*, &c.

PRACTICE ON THE OBSERVATIONS.

[Obs. 1, Rules iii. and iv.]

Adjectives Indeclinable.

They go bare-footed
We went bare-legged

I shall go out in half an hour

The late princess

Leg, *jambe*, f.
to go out, *sortir*

Adjectives Declinable.

They have their (the) feet bare
Our legs were bare (*we had the legs bare*)

You will go out in an hour and a half

The late princess

princess, *princesse*, f.

ADJECTIVES which are followed by the prepositions *à, de, pour, par, &c.*

RULE I.

Adjectives, or participles which denote *plenty, want, fulness, emptiness, &c.* are followed by the English words *of, from, with, by,* and sometimes *to*, which are rendered into French by *de, or d'*; and *of the, from the, with the,* are rendered by *du, de la, de l', des*; also *of a, from a, with a,* by *d'un, ou d'une*.

The following is a List of Adjectives which take *of, from, with,* after them in English, and *de* in French.

Accusé <i>de</i> , accused <i>of</i>	Incapable <i>de</i> , incapable <i>of</i>
Agréable <i>de</i> , agreeable <i>to</i>	Indigne <i>de</i> , unworthy <i>of</i>
Aisé <i>de</i> and <i>à</i> , easy <i>to</i>	Las <i>de</i> , tired <i>with, or of</i>
Avide <i>de</i> , greedy <i>of</i>	Libre <i>de</i> , free <i>from</i>
Charmé <i>de</i> , charmed <i>with</i>	Mécontent <i>de</i> , dissatisfied <i>with</i>
Capable <i>de</i> , capable <i>of</i>	Plein <i>de</i> , deprived <i>of</i>
Content <i>de</i> , contented <i>with</i>	Privé <i>de</i> , deprived <i>of</i>
Comblé <i>de</i> , loaded <i>with</i>	Ravi <i>de</i> , enraptured <i>with</i>
Digne <i>de</i> , worthy <i>of</i>	Vide <i>de</i> , void <i>of, &c.</i>
Exempt <i>de</i> , exempt <i>from</i>	
Fatigué <i>de</i> , fatigued <i>with</i>	

EXAMPLES.

Ils sont accusés <i>de</i> meurtre,	They are accused <i>of</i> murder
Il est agréable <i>de</i> vivre avec ses amis,	It is agreeable <i>to</i> live with our friends
Il n'est pas aisé <i>de</i> bien écrire,	It is not easy <i>to</i> write well
J'ai reçu une lettre qui n'est pas aisée, <i>à</i> lire,	I have received a letter which is not easy <i>to</i> read
Il est avide <i>de</i> gloire,	He is greedy <i>of</i> glory
C'est un homme capable <i>de</i> gouverner,	He is a man capable <i>of</i> governing

Obs. The English say *sensible of, insensible of*; and the French say *sensible à, sensible to; insensible à, insensible to*. Ex. Il est sensible *à* votre bonté, he is sensible *of* your kindness; elle est sensible *aux* moindres impressions, she is *sensible of* the least impressions: but the French say, C'est un déplaisir bien sensible *de* perdre ses amis, it is a very grievous trouble *to* lose one's friends.—[*Vide* Dict. De l'Acad. Fr.]

est un homme capable <i>des</i>	He is a man capable <i>of</i> the
plus grandes choses	greatest things
e roi l'a comblé <i>d'honneurs</i> ,	The king has loaded him <i>with</i>
	honors
lle est digne <i>de la</i> pension	She is worthy <i>of the</i> pension
l'était digne <i>d'une</i> meilleure	He was worthy <i>of a</i> better
fortune,	fortune
est exempt <i>de ce</i> défaut,	He is exempt <i>from that</i> defect
e suis las <i>de</i> marcher,	I am tired <i>of</i> walking
achetez un panier plein <i>de</i>	Buy a basket full <i>of</i> fruit
fruit,	
Voilà un homme ravi <i>de</i> joie,	There is a man enraptured
	<i>with</i> joy
Cet ouvrage est vide <i>de</i>	That work is void <i>of</i> reason
raison,	

RULE II.

In English we frequently use *to*, *at*, *in*, *for*, *to the*, *at the*, *in the* (which correspond to the French *à*, *au*, *à la*, *à l'*, *aux*) after adjectives which denote *aptness*, *unaptness*, *due*, *fitness*, *unfitness*, *profit*, *inclination*, *submission*, *resistance*, *readiness*, or *any habit*.

The following is a List of Adjectives which take *to*, *for*, *to the*, &c. after them in English, and *à*, *au*, &c. in French.

Adroit <i>à</i> , ready <i>at</i>	Ingénieux <i>à</i> , ingenious <i>to</i> ,
Ardent <i>à</i> , ardent <i>at</i> , or <i>in</i>	and <i>in</i>
Bon* <i>à</i> and <i>de</i> , good <i>for</i>	Inutile <i>à</i> , useless <i>in</i> , and <i>to</i>
and <i>to</i>	Lent <i>à</i> , slow <i>to</i> , and <i>in</i>
Conforme <i>à</i> , conformable <i>to</i>	Nuisible <i>à</i> , hurtful <i>to</i>
Contraire <i>à</i> , contrary <i>to</i>	Prêt <i>à</i> , ready <i>to</i>
Difficile <i>à</i> , difficult <i>to</i>	Prompt <i>à</i> , ready <i>to</i> , quick <i>at</i>
Enclin <i>à</i> , inclined <i>to</i>	Semblable <i>à</i> , like, or like <i>to</i>
Facile <i>à</i> and <i>de</i> , easy <i>to</i> and	Sujet <i>à</i> , subject <i>to</i>
<i>for</i>	Utile <i>à</i> , useful <i>to</i> , &c.

Note. The following sentences, as well as those under Rule I. are chiefly taken from the *Dictionary of the French Academy*, in which the student may find sentences to illustrate those words that are not given in these lists.

* *Obs.* *De* is sometimes admissible after *bon*, *facile*, &c.—[*V.* p. 204.]

EXAMPLES.

Il est <i>adroit</i> à ses exercices	He is ready <i>at</i> his exercises
Il était <i>ardent</i> à la dispute	He was ardent or vehement <i>in the dispute</i>
Cela n'est <i>bon</i> à rien	That is good <i>for</i> nothing
Il n'est <i>bon</i> ni à rotir, ni à bouillir	It is neither good to roast, nor boil (<i>it is good for nothing</i>)
Cet* homme est bien <i>bon</i> de prétendre, de dire, &c.	That man is very good to pretend, to say, &c.
Ses mœurs ne sont pas <i>con-</i> <i>formes</i> à sa doctrine	His manners are not con- formable to his doctrine
Ce problème est <i>difficile</i> à résoudre	This problem is difficult to solve
Cela est <i>contraire</i> à ce que vous en aviez dit	That is contrary to what you have said of it
Cela est <i>contraire</i> à la vérité	That is contrary to (the) truth
La nature de l'homme est <i>incliné</i> au mal	The nature of man is inclined to evil
Cela est <i>facile</i> à dire, et non à faire	That is easy to say, and not to do
Il* est <i>facile</i> de vous con- tenter	It is easy to content your- self
Il est <i>lent</i> à parler	He is slow in speaking, or to speak
Je suis <i>prêt</i> à faire tout ce qu'il vous plaira	I am ready to do every thing you please
Nous sommes tous <i>sujets</i> <i>aux</i> lois et <i>aux</i> coutumes des pays où nous vivons	We are all subject to the laws and customs of the country in which we live

EXERCISES ON THE PRECEDING RULES.

RULE I.

He is accused of robbery. He is a man capable of every thing. He is contented with his fortune. She is not worthy of being loved. He is incapable of a bad action. We are free from care. Send me a hogshead full of wine. The bottle is full of water. She is unworthy of the reward.

Robbery, <i>vol</i> , m.	care, <i>souci</i> , m.
every thing, <i>tout</i>	hogshead, <i>muid</i> , m.
fortune, <i>fortune</i> , f.	bottle, <i>bouteille</i> , f.
being, <i>être</i> ; bad, <i>mauvais</i>	water, <i>eau</i> , f.
action, <i>action</i> , f.	reward, <i>récompense</i> , f.

RULE II.

The meat is good to eat. That is good to eat. Lead a life conformable to your profession. That is contrary to the law of God, and to good manners. She is inclined to (*the*) good. He is inclined to (*the*) evil. They are slow in writing. He is slow to punish. That is hurtful to your business. He is ready to set out. He is ready to serve his friends. I will not be subject to those conditions. A son is subject to his father.

That, <i>cela</i> ; to lead, <i>mener</i>	punish, <i>punir</i>
life, <i>vie</i> , f.	business, <i>affaires</i> , f. pl.
manners, <i>mœurs</i> , f. pl.	to set out, <i>partir</i>
good, <i>bien</i> , m.	to serve, <i>servir</i>
evil, <i>mal</i> , m.	will <i>veux</i> ; be, <i>être</i>
writing, <i>écrire</i>	conditions, <i>conditions-là</i>

OF COMPARATIVES AND SUPERLATIVES.

RULE I.

Than, after a *comparative* and before a *noun*, *pronoun*, or an *infinitive* preceded by a preposition or conjunction, is rendered by *que*; but before nouns of *number* or *quantity* by *de*; as,

L'Afrique est moins peuplée	Africa is less populous <i>than</i>
<i>que</i> l'Europe, ou n'est pas	Europe, or is not so popu-
si peuplée <i>que</i> l'Europe,	lous <i>as</i> Europe
Jean est plus habile <i>que</i>	John is cleverer <i>than</i> Wil-
Guillaume,	liam
Elle est plus grande <i>que</i> vous	She is taller <i>than</i> you <i>by</i> the
<i>de</i> * toute la tête,	whole head

* *Note*. When *by* is used after comparatives, and denotes that one thing exceeds another, it is always expressed by *de* (not *par*).

Il est plus disposé à vous nuire, <i>qu'à</i> vous obliger,	He is more inclined to hurt you, <i>than</i> to oblige you
Il est plus heureux <i>que</i> s'il régnait,	He is happier <i>than</i> if he reigned
Il est moins savant <i>que quand</i> il commença,	He is less learned <i>than when</i> he began
Votre frère a plus <i>de</i> vingt ans,	Your brother is more <i>than</i> twenty years old
Vous n'avez pas plus <i>de</i> quinze guinées,	You have not more <i>than</i> fifteen guineas
Il a plus <i>d'à</i> demi fait,	He has more <i>than</i> half done

Obs. 1. When a verb follows a comparative, it is generally preceded by *ne*; as, Votre sœur est plus habile *que* je *ne* croyais, your sister is cleverer than I thought; il chante *mieux* qu'il *ne* danse, he sings better than he dances; except the verb is in the infinitive, or a conjunction intervenes.

2. The verb, in French, is sometimes better omitted at the end of a sentence; as, Her husband is handsomer than *she* (*is*), son mari est plus beau qu'*elle*.

RULE II.

1. Comparisons of equality are expressed by,

aussi, as, and *que*, as.

Ex. Il est *aussi* savant *que* vous, he is *as* learned *as* you. Venez *aussi* souvent *que* vous pourrez, come *as* often *as* you can.

autant, as much, *que*, as.

Ex. Il boit *autant* de vin *que* d'eau, he drinks *as much* wine *as* water.

si, so, *que*, as.

Ex. Est-il *si* méchant qu'on le dit? is he *so* wicked *as* they say? Il n'est rien de *si* doux *que* la liberté, nothing is *so* sweet *as* liberty.

2. Comparisons of inferiority or defect are expressed by,

ne pas si, not so, and *que*, as.

Ex. Elle n'est *pas si* riche *que* vous, she is *not so* rich *as* you.

Ne pas tant, not so much, not so many, *que*, as.

Ex. Je n'ai *pas tant* de guinées qu'il a de schellins,
I have *not so many* guineas as he has shillings.
Ils n'ont *pas tant* d'argent *que* vous, they have
not so much money as you.

Obs. 1. *Si* and *aussi* are repeated before each adjective or adverb ; as, Elle est *si* sage et *si* prudente, she is *so* wise and prudent ; un jeune homme *aussi* sage, *aussi* éclairé, et qui prend *tant* de peine, mérite qu'on le protège, *so* prudent and enlightened a young man, who takes *so much* pains, deserves to be protected.

2. The articles are omitted before *plus* and *moins* ; as, *Plus* vous étudierez, plus vous ferez de progrès, the more you (*will*) study, the more progress you will make ; on dit que *plus* on est pauvre, moins on a d'embarras, it is said that the poorer people are, the less care they have.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

The sun is larger and brighter than the moon. How old are you ? (*what age have you ?*) I am (*I have*) more than fifteen (*years*). We have more than a hundred guineas. I am more than half persuaded. Her cousin has more books than you. Alexander was as ambitious as Cæsar. My sister has as much (*of*) money as you. She has not so much (*of*) wit as her sister, but she has as much (*of*) vivacity, and (*she*) is as amiable.

Bright, <i>éclatant</i>	wit, <i>esprit</i> , m.
year, <i>an</i> , m. ; half, <i>à moitié</i>	amiable, <i>aimable</i>
persuaded, <i>persuadé</i>	vivacity, <i>vivacité</i> , f.

RULE III.

When a superlative precedes its substantive, the article is not repeated ; but it must be repeated when the noun precedes the superlative ; as,

Voilà <i>la</i> plus agréable situa- tion, ou voilà <i>la</i> situation <i>la</i> plus agréable,	There is <i>the</i> most agreeable situation
C'est un <i>des</i> hommes <i>les</i> plus habiles,	He is one of <i>the</i> cleverest men

Ce sont <i>les</i> plus sottes gens du monde,	They are <i>the</i> most foolish people in the world
C'est une <i>des</i> coutumes <i>les</i> plus barbares,	It is one of <i>the</i> most barbarous customs
C'est la coutume <i>des</i> peuples <i>les</i> plus barbares,	It is the custom of <i>the</i> most barbarous people
La sobriété rend <i>la</i> nourriture la plus simple très agréable,	Sobriety renders <i>the</i> simplest food very agreeable

Obs. Superlative adverbs are not declinable; as, *lequel, laquelle, lesquels, &c. aimez vous LE MEUX, which do you like BEST; not even when coupled with an adjective, if there be no comparison with another person; as, L'antiquité de l'empire des Assyriens est le point sur lequel on a été LE MOINS partagé, the antiquity of the Assyrian empire is a point on which people have been LEAST divided.*

Ce fut la chose qui contribua <i>le plus</i> à les lier,	It was the thing which contributed <i>most</i> to bind them
Elle écrit <i>le mieux</i> ,	She writes <i>the best</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

The cleverest men sometimes commit the grossest faults. I speak of the most delicate subject. He has obeyed (*to*) the most unjust commandment. I have snatched it from the most avaricious hands. They are the cleverest people in the country.

Sometimes commit, <i>quelque-fois font</i>	to obey, <i>obéir</i>
fault, <i>faute, f.</i>	I have snatched it, <i>je l'ai arraché</i>
gross, <i>grossière</i>	avaricious, <i>avare</i>
subject, <i>matière, f.</i>	in the, <i>du</i>

RECAPITULATORY PRACTICE.

It is as easy to do good as to do evil. Great events and (*great*) revolutions followed the death of Cæsar. Every body admires the uncommon and charming flowers of your garden. The wind is an agitated air. The central fire is the only physical cause of the heat of the subterraneous

springs. A handsome and rich woman is not sufficient to make a man happy. The public good is preferable to private interest. Bath is, indeed, but a small city, but it is famous for its medicinal waters and hot baths. Why do you leave the windows and door open? She sings with a charming delicacy and taste. Virtue is the most precious thing in the world. My best friend is dead. Nothing is more lovely than virtue, and nothing is more desirable than wisdom. Paris is not so populous as London.

Good, *bien*

evil, *mal*

event, *événement, m.*

to follow, *suivre*

every body, *tout le monde*

to admire, *admirer*

flower, *fleur, f.*

uncommon, *rare*

charming, *charmant*

to agitate, *agiter*

only, *seul*; heat, *chaleur, f.*

spring, *source, f.*

subterraneous, *souterrain*

to be sufficient, *suffire (ir.)*

to make, *pour rendre*

good, *bien*

interest, *bien, m.*

private, *particulier*

is indeed but, *n'est à la vérité qu'*; but it is, *mais c'est*

for, *pour*; its, *ses*

bath, *bain, m.*

hot, *chaud*

why, *pourquoi*

to leave, *laisser*

delicacy, *délicatesse, f.*

taste, *goût, m.*

in the world, *du monde*

dead, *mort*

nothing is, *rien n'est*

lovely, *aimable*

populous, *peuplé*

EXERCISES ON THE ADJECTIVES, TO BE TRANSLATED
INTO ENGLISH.

FIRST LESSON.

J'aime la belle situation de sa maison. Cette maison me coûte cher, mais elle est belle. Ce cheval me coûte cher, mais il est beau. Mon frère et ma mère sont morts. Votre mère et votre sœur sont mortes. C'est une femme sage et vertueuse. Cette actrice joue avec un goût et une noblesse charmante. Le mari et la femme sont toujours malheureux, lorsqu'il ne règne pas entre eux la plus parfaite

union. L'homme de bien est toujours prêt à secourir celui qui se trouve dans le besoin. Ce père est aimé et chéri de ses enfans. Une femme belle et vertueuse est bien sûre d'être aimée et respectée de tout le monde. L'intempérance et l'oisiveté sont les deux ennemis les plus dangereux de la vie. Le roi et le berger sont égaux après la mort. Le plus beau privilège des rois est d'être utiles aux malheureux. La délicatesse du goût est un don de la nature aussi rare que le vrai génie.

<i>Mort</i> , dead ;	<i>jouer</i> , to play	<i>oisiveté</i> , idleness
<i>entre</i> , between		<i>berger</i> , shepherd
<i>l'homme de bien</i> , a good man		<i>malheureux</i> , unfortunate
<i>se trouve</i> , is		<i>don</i> , gift
<i>de tout le monde</i> , by every body		<i>génie</i> , genius

SECOND LESSON.

Comme c'est le caractère des grands esprits de faire entendre en peu de paroles beaucoup de choses ; les petits esprits, au contraire, ont le don de beaucoup parler et de ne rien dire. La philosophie triomphe aisément des maux passés et des maux à venir ; mais les maux présents triomphent d'elle. Le vrai mérite est toujours accompagné de civilité et de modestie. Plus un prince est juste et bien-faisant, plus les sujets sont fidèles. Ceux qui s'appliquent trop aux petites choses deviennent ordinairement incapables des grandes. Le bonheur et le malheur des hommes ne dépend pas moins de leur humeur que de la fortune. Quelque éclatante que soit une action, elle ne doit pas passer pour grande lorsqu'elle n'est pas l'effet d'un grand dessein.

<i>De faire</i> , to make	<i>bonheur</i> , happiness
<i>parole</i> , f. word	<i>malheur</i> , misfortune
<i>esprit</i> , m. mind	<i>moins</i> , less
<i>don</i> , m. gift	<i>quelque</i> , however
<i>à venir</i> , to come	<i>que soit</i> , may be
<i>bienfaisant</i> , humane	<i>devoir</i> , to owe
<i>devenir</i> , to become	<i>dessein</i> , m. design

THIRD LESSON.

Le plus malheureux de tous les hommes est celui qui croit l'être ; car le malheur dépend moins des choses qu'on souffre, que de l'impatience avec laquelle on augmente son malheur. Le plus libre de tous les hommes, est celui qui peut être libre dans l'esclavage même. Jamais aucun peuple n'a eu un roi conquérant, sans avoir beaucoup à souffrir de son ambition. Un conquérant enivré de sa gloire ruine presque autant sa nation victorieuse que les nations vaincues. Heureux ceux qui se divertissent en s'instruisant, et qui se plaisent à cultiver leur esprit par les sciences ! Un jeune homme qui aime à se parer vainement comme une femme, est indigne de la sagesse et de la gloire : la gloire n'est due qu'à un cœur qui sait souffrir la peine, et fouler aux pieds les plaisirs.—FENELON.

<i>Malheureux</i> , unhappy	<i>aucun peuple</i> , any nation
<i>croit l'être</i> , thinks himself so	<i>enivré</i> , intoxicated
<i>dépend</i> , arises	<i>presque autant</i> , almost as
<i>des choses</i> , from what	<i>much</i>
<i>qu'on</i> , we ; <i>son</i> , our	<i>heureux ceux</i> , happy are
<i>libre</i> , free	<i>those</i>
<i>l'esclavage</i> , slavery	<i>par</i> , with ; <i>parer</i> , to deck
<i>même</i> , itself	<i>due</i> , due ; (from, <i>devoir</i>)
<i>jamais</i> , never	<i>fouler aux pieds</i> , to trample
<i>n'a eu</i> , had	<i>under foot</i>

FOURTH LESSON.

Heureux ceux qui peuvent lire dans le grand livre de la nature, et qui font leurs délices de l'étudier. Nous ne nous connaissons jamais bien, nous sommes toujours meilleurs, ou plus mauvais, que nous n'imaginons. Dieu est le plus grand et le meilleur de tous les êtres : il est tout-puissant, infiniment sage, miséricordieux, et le saint des saints. Il a formé le ciel et la terre de rien ; il fait tout ce qui lui plaît, mais il ne fait rien que de bon, parcequ'il est la bonté par essence. Il connaît tout ; le passé, le présent, et l'avenir ;

212 SYNTAX OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

rien ne peut lui être caché. Dieu est en tous lieux en même tems, mais sa gloire éclate plus particulièrement dans le ciel, où il a un trône plus brillant que le soleil; et où habite avec lui une multitude innombrable d'anges et d'esprits bien heureux.

<i>Heureux</i> , happy	<i>are</i>	<i>miséricordieux</i> , merciful
<i>pouvoir</i> , to be able		<i>saint</i> , holy
<i>qui font leurs délices</i> , who		<i>que de bon</i> , but what is good
delight		<i>avenir</i> , future
<i>bien</i> , thoroughly		<i>cacher</i> , to hide
<i>que</i> , than		<i>en</i> , in, or at
<i>êtres</i> , beings		<i>éclater</i> , to shine
<i>tout-puissant</i> , almighty		<i>bien heureux</i> , happy

Personal Pronouns.

RULE I.

PRONOUNS must agree with the nouns to which they refer in gender and number; as,

Où est ma <i>plume</i> ? Elle est	Where is my <i>pen</i> ? It is
sur la table,	upon the table
Où est mon <i>livre</i> ? Il est	Where is my <i>book</i> ? It is
sur le pupitre,	upon the desk
Voilà une bonne <i>plume</i> ,	There is a good <i>pen</i> , take it
prenez-la,	
Voilà un bon <i>livre</i> , lisez-le,	There is a good <i>book</i> , read it
Lorsque cette <i>rivière</i> se dé-	When this <i>river</i> overflows,
borde, elle entraîne tout	it carries every thing away
après elle,	with it

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Never judge from *appearances*, for *they* are often deceitful.
The *reins* are good, *they* are new. This is a good *pamphlet*,

read it. I like (*the*) *truth*, I would sacrifice every thing for *t*. I like your *house*, *it* is in a fine situation. Where is (*Mr.*) your *father*? *he* is gone into the country. Where is (*Miss*) your *sister*? *she* is at home.

Reins, guides, f.

new, *neuves*

this is, *voici*

pamphlet, *brochure*, f.

to sacrifice, *sacrifier*

every thing, *tout*; in, *dans*

at home, *chez-nous*, or *à la*

maison

OBSERVATIONS.

1. When there are two or more nouns of different genders, the masculine is considered more worthy than the feminine, consequently the pronoun which refers to them must be masculine; as, *votre frère et votre sœur*, sont *ils* allés à Rouen? are your brother and sister gone to Rouen? où avez-vous mis mon papier, ma plume, et mon encre? *ils* sont dans la bibliothèque, where have you put my paper, pen, and ink? *they* are in the library.

2. HE, SHE, THEY, &c. are rendered indifferently, either by *IL*, *ELLE*, *ILS*, &c. or by *CE*, with the verb *être* before substantives denoting a person's profession, nation, quality, &c.; as, *HE IS a merchant*, *IL EST négociant*, ou *C'EST un négociant*; *THEY ARE Frenchmen*, *ILS SONT Français*, ou *CE SONT des Français*; but it is proper to observe, that *IL*, &c. is preferable when the person referred to is known, and *CE* when the person is a stranger. This latter mode of speech is not unfrequent in English: when we wish to point out any one in particular, we say, *THAT IS a boaster*, for *HE IS a boaster*, *C'EST un fanfaron*.

3. *IT* is rendered by *IL* before *être*; 1st, When followed by an adjective; as, *IT IS glorious to die for one's country*, *IL EST glorieux de mourir pour sa patrie*: 2nd, When speaking of time; as, *IT IS eleven o'clock*, *IL EST onze heures*. Except when a question is asked, with *CE*; as, *what o'clock is THAT?* *quelle heure EST-CE LA?* *IT IS one*, *C'EST une heure*: 3rd, Before the pronoun *EN* in such idioms; as, *IT IS with poetry as with painting*, *IL EN EST de la poésie comme de la peinture*.

4. *IT* is rendered by *CE* before *être*; 1st, When followed by pronouns or nouns with or without an adjective; as, *IT IS I*, *C'EST moi*; *IT IS a pity*, *C'EST dommage*; *IT IS a reasonable thing*, *C'EST une chose raisonnable*: 2nd, Before adjectives when they precede an infinitive passive; as, *IT IS easy (THAT IS easy) to be done*, *C'EST aisé à faire*, but *IT IS easy to do that*, *IL EST aisé de faire cela*: 3rd, Before any thing of which one is going to speak (though the *IT* is sometimes omitted in English); as, *what I fear is, that he will come*, *ce que je crains C'EST qu'il ne vienne*; *to live in familiar intercourse with the vicious is to authorise vice*, *C'EST autoriser le vice QUE de vivre dans une liaison familière avec les vicieux*.

- Obs. 2. C'est, ou il est le plus diligent de toute l'école,*
C'est, ou elle est ma parente,
C'est, ou il est mon parent,
Ce sont, ou ils sont mes parens,
C'est, ou il est un de nos amis,
Ce sont des paresseux, ou ils sont paresseux,
Ce sont des Anglais, ou ils sont Anglais,
Ce sont des Anglaises, ou elles sont Anglaises,
Le marquis dit qu'il est (not c'est) un de vos amis,
Le marquis dit que c'est (not il est) un de vos amis,
 3. *Il est honteux d'obéir à ses passions,*
Il est glorieux d'être utile à sa patrie,
Quelle heure est-il ?
Il n'est pas tard,
Il est deux heures et demie,
Il est six heures et un quart,
Il est sept heures moins un quart,
Il est sept heures et vingt minutes,
Il est huit heures moins dix minutes,
Il est tems de déjeuner,
Il en est des femmes comme des enfans,
 4. *C'est moi, c'est lui, c'est elle, ce sont eux, c'était le laquais c'étaient les servantes,*
Est-ce moi ? Est-ce lui ? Est-ce elle ? Est-ce eux ? Était-ce le laquais ? Était-ce les servantes ?
C'est mon livre,
C'est au maître à parler,
C'est au disciple d'écouter,
C'est de peur d'être injuste que je refuse vos présens,
C'est sagesse que d'avouer ses fautes,
Ce sont de jolis enfans que les vôtres,
L'homme le plus aimable que j'aie jamais vu c'est son père
- He is the most diligent of the whole school*
She is my relation
He is my relation
They are my relations
He is a friend of ours
They are idle
They are Englishmen
They are Englishwomen
The marquis says that he (meaning himself) is a friend of yours
The marquis says that he (meaning another) is a friend of yours
It is shameful to be subject to one's passions
It is glorious to be useful to one's country
What o'clock is it ?
It is not late
It is half after two
It is a quarter past six
It is three quarters past six
It is twenty minutes past seven
It wants ten minutes to eight
It is time to breakfast
It is with women as with children
It is I, it is he, it is she, it is they, it was the footman, it was the maids
Is it I ? Is it he ? Is it she ? Is it they ? Was it the footman ? Was it the maids ?
It is my book
It is for the master to speak
It is for the scholar to listen
It is for fear of being unjust that I refuse your presents
It is wisdom to own one's faults
Your's are pretty children
The most amiable man I ever saw is his father

PRACTICE ON THE OBSERVATIONS.

Il, he ; *elle*, she ; *elles*, they ;
before *être*.

Ce, he, she, they ; before
être.

Can you forsake her if she
is really your daughter?

Mr. L. is at V. preparing to
make his entry ; he is our
governor now, since Mr.
C. is gone (*the departure*
of Mr. C.)

I told your brother that he
was an indiscreet man

It is true. It is good. It is
time to go. What o'clock is
it (*what hour is it*). It is half
past three. It is a quarter
past three (*three hours and*
a quarter). It is three quarters
past three (*four hours*
less a quarter). It is rea-
sonable that we should be
paid. Is it not reasonable
that we should be paid ?
It is lamentable. It is with
poets as with painters.

Forsake, *abandonner*

really, *vraiment*

I ever saw, *que j'ai jamais vu*

is preparing to make, *est*
occupé des préparatifs de
faire

entry, *entrée*, f.

governor, *gouverneur*, m.

since, *depuis*

departure, *départ*, m.

what that gentleman is, *quel*
est ce Monsieur

He is the handsomest young
man I ever saw

If you wish to know what
that gentleman is, whom
we met yesterday, I will
tell you, he is (*that is*) our
governor

He is (*that is*) an experienced
officer

It is the truth. It is a good
book. It is they who will
repent of it. What was
that o'clock ? It (*that*)
was twelve (*noon*). It was
midnight. It was one. It is
striking eleven (*it is eleven*
hours that it strikes). It is
a reasonable thing that we
should be paid ? Is it not
a reasonable thing that we
should be paid ? Yes, it is
reasonable

to meet, *rencontrer*

I will tell you, *je vais vous*
l'apprendre

an indiscreet man, *un indis-*
cret

experienced, *expérimenté*

to repent, *se repentir*

to strike, *sonner*

reasonable, *raisonnable*

should be, *soyons*

to pay, *payer*

lamentable, *triste*

RULE II.

Moi, toi, lui, eux, &c. are used as nominatives to the verb, instead of *je, tu, il, ils, &c.*

1. When more than one agent of different persons come in the sentence, after which *nous*, or *vous*; but not *ils*, or *elles* is used; as,

<i>Lui, elle, et *moi *nous</i> al-	<i>He, she, and I</i> went to the
<i>lâmes à l'église,</i>	church
<i>Vous et moi nous</i> sommes de	<i>You and I</i> are good friends
<i>bons amis,</i>	
<i>Vous* et lui vous*</i> apprenez le	<i>You and he</i> learn French
<i>Français,</i>	
<i>Lui et mon frère</i> pensent	<i>He and my brother</i> think
<i>différemment,</i>	differently
<i>Elle et lui</i> sont allés à Paris,	<i>She and he</i> are gone to Paris
<i>Mon frère et lui</i> sont arrivés	<i>My brother and he</i> are ar-
<i>de la Chine,</i>	rived from China
<i>Henri et moi nous</i> fîmes la	<i>Henry and I</i> made a party
<i>partie,</i>	
<i>Votre sœur et moi nous</i> étions	<i>Your sister and I</i> were pre-
<i>présens,</i>	sent

2. To distinguish the part each agent takes in an action; as,

<i>Mes frères et mon cousin</i>	<i>My brothers and cousin</i> as-
<i>m'ont secouru, eux m'ont</i>	sisted me, <i>they</i> lifted me
<i>relevé, et lui m'a pansé,</i>	up, and <i>he</i> dressed my
	wound

3. After the verb *être*, in the reply to a question; as,

<i>Qui a fait cela ?</i>	<i>Who</i> has done that ?
<i>C'est moi, c'était lui,</i>	It is <i>I</i> , it was <i>he</i>
<i>Ce sera toi, ou elle,</i>	It will be <i>thee</i> , or <i>she</i>
<i>Ce sont eux, m. ou elles, f.</i>	It is <i>they</i>
<i>Qui est-ce qui dit cela ? Lui</i>	<i>Who</i> says that? <i>He</i> and
<i>et eux;</i>	<i>they</i>

* *Obs.* The first person is considered preferable to the second, and the second to the third.

C'est <i>lui</i> , ou ce sont <i>eux</i> ,	It is <i>he</i> , or it is <i>they</i>
Est-ce que vous êtes contents?	Are you contented?
Oui, je suis content, et <i>lui</i> aussi,	Yes, I am contented, and <i>he</i> also

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

You, your brother, and I went to London last year. He and I learn German. She and I went to the park together. He and his sister talk. You, he, and I are (*some*) good friends. It is not I. It was not he who said it. Who took my book? She (*has taken it*). He is more learned than I, than he, than she, than they.

To learn, <i>apprendre</i>	to talk, <i>parler</i>
German, <i>Allemand</i>	said it, <i>le dit</i>
together, <i>ensemble</i>	took, <i>a pris</i>
park, <i>parc</i> , m.	than, <i>que</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *MOI, TOI, &c.* are frequently used with *JE, TU, &c.* or *ME, TE, &c.*; as, *I alone had the courage, moi seul j'eus le courage. They call him an honest man, I call him a rogue, ils l'appellent un honnête homme, moi je l'appelle un fripon. Ruin me, who am your relation, me perdre, moi qui suis votre parent.*

2. *LUI, ELLE, EUX*, after *être*, are used for persons only; *LE, LA*, and *LES*, are used for inanimate objects in general; as, *Self-love is deceitful, il séduces us, l'amour propre est captieux, c'est lui qui nous séduit. Is that your book? yes, it is (that is IT), est ce-là votre livre? oui, ce l'est; but when LE, it, so, supplies the place of an adjective or a verb, it is indeclinable; as, Are your sisters sick? yes, they are (so), vos sœurs, sont-elles malades? oui, elles LE sont.*

Examples to illustrate the above Observations.

Obs. 1. Pourquoi ne travailleriez vous pas, je travaille bien, <i>moi</i> ?	I work, why should you not?
<i>Moi</i> , le parent du vaillant roi, je n'ai encore sacrifié que des traîtres,	<i>I</i> , the relative of the valiant king, have hitherto sacrificed none but traitors
<i>Il</i> ne pouvait le croire, <i>lui</i> qui se piquait d'une probité sévère,	<i>He</i> who piqued himself on (<i>a</i>) strict probity, could not believe it
2. Est-ce là votre frère?	Is that your brother?
Oui, c'est <i>lui</i> ,	Yes, it is (<i>that is he</i>)

Est-ce là votre sœur?	Is <i>that</i> your sister?
Oui, c'est <i>elle</i> ,	Yes, it is (that is <i>she</i>)
Sont-ce là vos frères?	Are <i>those</i> your brothers?
Oui, ce sont <i>eux</i> ,	Yes, they are (those are <i>they</i>)
Sont-ce là vos sœurs?	Are <i>those</i> your sisters?
Oui, ce sont <i>elles</i> ,	Yes, they are (those are <i>they</i>)
Est-ce là votre chapeau? Oui, ce l'est	Is that your hat? Yes, it is (that is <i>it</i>)
Est-ce là votre pensée?	Is <i>that</i> your thought?
Pouvez-vous douter que ce ne <i>la</i> soit?	Can you doubt that it is (<i>if</i>)
Sont-ce là vos sentimens?	Are <i>those</i> your sentiments?
Oui, ce <i>les</i> sont,	Yes, they are (those are <i>they</i>)
Sont-ce là vos raisons?	Are <i>those</i> your reasons?
Oui, ce <i>les</i> sont,	Yes, they are (those are <i>they</i>)
Ils ont été malades, et ils <i>le</i> sont encore,	They have been sick, and are <i>so</i> still
Elles ont été malades, et elles <i>le</i> sont encore,	They have been sick, and are <i>so</i> still
Mes sœurs ont été malades, et elles <i>le</i> sont encore,	My sisters have been sick, and are <i>so</i> still

PRACTICE ON THE OBSERVATIONS.

(*I*) I should mind (*of*) vain threats! Every body says (*that*) she is (*has*) right. (*I*) I say she is (*has*) wrong. Pyrrhus obeyed (*he*) who had so many (*of*) causes for being dissatisfied (*of discontent*). You (*other*) young people (*you*) are never satisfied. My brothers have been ill a long time, and are so still. Is that your aunt? Yes, it is.

To mind, <i>s'arrêter à de</i>	cause, <i>sujet</i> , m.
right, <i>raison</i> , f.	discontent, <i>mécontentement</i> ,
wrong, <i>tort</i>	m.; ill, <i>malade</i>

RULE III.

The pronouns *me*, me; *te*, thee; *vous*, you, or to you; *nous*, us, or to us; *le*, him, or it; *la*, her, or it; *lui*, him, her, to him, to her, to it; *les*, them; *leur*, them, to them, are put before the active verb, or its auxiliary; as,

Il <i>me</i> connaît,	He knows <i>me</i>
Je <i>la</i> vois,	I see <i>her</i> , or <i>it</i>
Je <i>le</i> verrai,	I shall see <i>him</i> , or <i>it</i>

Il lui parla,	He spoke <i>to her</i> , or <i>to him</i>
Elles m'ont parlé,	They have spoken <i>to me</i>
Je le vis. Il m'a vu,	I saw <i>him</i> . He saw <i>me</i>
Nous les vîmes,	We saw <i>them</i>
Ils nous ont vus,	They have seen <i>us</i>
Je ne vous avais pas vu, ou vus,	I had not seen <i>you</i>
Je l'aime. Elle vous aime,	I love <i>her</i> . She loves <i>you</i>
Je les aimerai,	I shall love <i>them</i>
Ils m'aimeraient;	They would love <i>me</i>
Ne les avez-vous pas aimés ?	Did you not love <i>them</i> ?
Nous le respectons,	We respect <i>him</i>
Vous les respecterez,	You will respect <i>them</i>
Vous a-t-il respecté ?	Did he respect <i>you</i> ?
Il l'estime,	He esteems <i>her</i>
Vous ne lui parlez pas,	You do not speak <i>to him</i>
Il lui parlera;	He will speak <i>to her</i>
Nous leur parlerons,	We shall speak <i>to them</i>
Nous leur souhaitons du bonheur,	We wish <i>them</i> happiness
Il lui a écrit,	He has written <i>to him</i> , or <i>to her</i>
Nous lui avons écrit,	We have written <i>to her</i> , or <i>to him</i>
Nous lui avons promis,	We have promised <i>him</i> , or <i>her</i>
Lui avez-vous promis ?	Did you promise <i>her</i> , or <i>him</i> ?
Ne leur avez-vous pas promis ?	Did you not promise <i>them</i> ?
Je lui ai dit,	I have told <i>her</i> , or <i>him</i>
Lui avez-vous dit ?	Did you tell <i>him</i> or, <i>her</i> ?
Ne lui avez-vous pas dit ?	Did you not tell <i>him</i> , or <i>her</i> ?

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

He has given her what he had promised her (*to her*). I see him. I have not seen him. He will pardon me. She has taken it. He ate them. He related to her how they had deceived him. Can you send it to-morrow ? Have you told her (*to her*) that you had lent them ? I have taken it. I shall not take them. I shall tell him (*to him*). He will tell her (*to her*). He has brought it. They have read it. He has shown me (*to me*) your letter. They have shown her (*to her*) his letter.

To pardon, *pardonner*
to take, *prendre* (ir.)
to eat, *manger*
to relate, *raconter*
how, *comment*

had (*imperf.*)
to deceive, *tromper*
to tell, *dire* (ir.)
had (*imperf.*)
to lend, *prêter*

OBSERVATIONS.

1. When two pronouns come together, their order in French is directly contrary to that in English; as, *I told IT TO YOU, je vous LE dis*: unless they be both in the third person; in which case their order is the same in both languages; as, *I give IT TO HIM, je LE lui donne*. He gives IT TO THEM, *il LE leur donne*.

2. In the imperative mood the pronouns *moi, toi, lui, le, &c.* are put after the verb as in English; and the order of two pronouns coming together is the same in both languages; as, *Give IT TO ME, donnez-LE moi*. Bring her TO THEM, *apportez-LA leur*; but with a negative the pronouns follow the rule; as, *Ne ME parlez pas, do not speak TO ME. Ne LE lui donnez pas, do not give IT TO HIM*: and when there are two imperatives in a sentence, the pronoun is put after the first and before the second; as, *Take IT and eat IT, prenez-LE et LE mangez*.

Exemples illustrative of the above Observations.

Obs. 1. Je ne vous l'ai pas dit,
Elle ne me l'a pas dit,
Nous l'a-t-elle dit?
Ne vous l'a-t-il pas dit?
Je vous les promets,
Vous les ai-je promis?
Ne vous les ai-je pas promis?
Il ne nous le promet pas,
Nous les a-t-elle promis?
Ne nous les a-t-elle pas promis?
Elle le lui promet,
Le lui a-t-elle promis?
Ne le lui a-t-elle pas promis?
Il ne les lui avait pas promis,
Ne les lui a-t-il pas promis?
Il ne les lui a pas promis,
Nous la leur avons promis,
La leur ai-je promis?
Ne la leur avez vous pas promis?

2. Portez-moi. Portez-le. Portez-la.
Portons-le,
Dites-moi. Dites-lui. Dites-lui.
Dites-leur. Disons-leur,
Ne me dites pas. Ne lui dites pas.
Ne lui dites pas. Ne leur dites pas.

I did not tell *it* to you
She did not tell *it* to me
Did she tell *it* to us?
Did he not tell *it* to you?
I promise *them* to you
Did I promise *them* to you?
Did I not promise *them* to you?
He does not promise *it* to us
Did she promise *them* to us?
Did she not promise *them* to us?
She promises *it* to him
Did she promise *it* to him?
Did she not promise *it* to him?
He had not promised *them* to her
Has he not promised *them* to her?
He has not promised *them* to her
We promised *it* to them
Did I promise *it* to them?
Did you not promise *it* to them?
Carry *me*. Carry *him*. Carry *her*.
Let us carry *him*
Tell *me*. Tell *him*. Tell *her*. Tell *them*.
Let us tell *them*
Do not tell *me*. Do not tell *him*.
Do not tell *her*. Do not tell *them*

Donnez-le moi. Donnez-le lui.	Give it to me. Give it to him.
Donnez-le leur,	Give it to them
Nè me le donnez pas. Ne le lui donnez pas. Ne le leur donnez pas,	Do not give it to me. Do not give it to him. Do not give it to them
Montrez-les moi. Montrez-les lui.	Show me them. Show them to him.
Montrez-les lui. Montrez-les leur,	Show them to her. Show them to them.
Ne me les montrez pas,	Do not show them to me
Ne les lui montrez pas,	Do not show them to him, or her
Ne les leur montrez pas,	Do not show them to them

Pronouns whose order is different in French and English.

[Obs. 1.]

He has related it to me. They have related it to us. She has not related it to you. I will lend it to you. Will he not lend it to us? Has she not lent it to you?

Pronouns which follow each other in French as in English.

Has she not related it to him? Has he related it to her? Will he relate it to them? He will not lend it to her. They have not brought it to him. We did not bring it to them.

[Obs. 2.]

Pronouns going after the Imperative.

Pronouns going before the Imperative.

Lend it to me. Lend it to us. Lend it to them. Lend it to him. Lend it to her. Bring it to me.	Do not lend it to me. Do not lend it to us. Do not lend it to them. Do not lend it to him
--	---

RULE IV.

The pronouns *moi, toi, soi, lui, elle, eux, and elles* are used after prepositions instead of *me, te, se, le, la, les, leurs*; as,

Ils parlent de moi, de toi, de soi, de lui, d'elle, de nous, de vous, d'eux, ou d'elles,	They speak of me, of thee, of themselves, of him, of her, of us, of you, of them
Elle arrivait avant moi,	She arrived before me
J'étais assis contre lui,	I sat by him

222 SYNTAX OF PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

Pour moi, je pense ainsi,	As for me, I think so
Cela est pour vous, ceci est pour moi,	That is for you, this for me
Vous parlerez après eux,	You will speak after them
Il marchait après lui, ou elles,	He walked after him, or them
C'est malgré lui, ou elle,	It is in spite of him, or her

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

You will arrive before him to-morrow. They were sitting by me. Will you come with me? No, I shall go with him. My father is satisfied with me. Will you walk after her? Were they not speaking of him?

To come, *venir*; with, *avec* Satisfied with, *content de*

OBSERVATIONS.

1. With the verb *être* (to denote possession) *penser* or *songer*, to think; *viser*, to aim; *aller*, to go; *venir*, to come; *courir*, to run; *accourir*, to flock to; *boire*, to drink: the preposition 'à' with the above pronouns is used; as, *à qui est ce livre?* whose book is this? *c'est à moi*, it is mine; *c'était à vous*, it was your's; *je pense à lui*, I think of him.

2. When two pronouns come together, in the third state, or dative case, after any verb, the preposition is used before each pronoun; as, *I speak to him and not to you*, *je parle à lui et non à vous*.

3. When two pronouns, both denoting persons, are used with any verb, the one that is governed in the third state must be preceded by the preposition; as, *he recommends us to you*, *il nous a recommandé à vous*, not *il nous vous a recommandé*: unless coupled with *te*, *la*, *les*; as, *we entrust him to you*, *nous vous le confions*.

4. When *ir* is used, in English, for things animate, or inanimate after any preposition, the corresponding word in French is omitted, unless *de* or *à* precede; as, *opposite to it*, *vis-à-vis*, *under it* (*underneath*), *dessous*.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE

On Obs. 1 and 2.

I ran to him. He came to me. I trust to him. I am thinking of (to) him, and not of you. To whom did you speak? To him, to her, to them. I forgive you and him too.

Possessive Pronouns.

RULE I.

POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS, whether conjunctive or relative, must agree with the object possessed, and not with the possessor, in gender and number; as,

<i>Mon livre et ma plume sont</i>	<i>My book and pen are upon</i>
<i>sur le pupitre,</i>	<i>the desk</i>
<i>Son père, sa mère, et ses</i>	<i>His father, mother, and</i>
<i>sœurs sont allés à Nîmes,</i>	<i>sisters are gone to Nîmes.</i>
<i>Son père et le sien,</i>	<i>Her father and his</i>
<i>Sa mère et la sienne,</i>	<i>His mother and hers</i>
<i>Son livre et le sien,</i>	<i>His book and hers</i>
<i>Sa plume et la sienne sont</i>	<i>His pen and hers, or her pen</i>
<i>trop molles,</i>	<i>and his are too soft</i>
<i>Ses livres et les miens,</i>	<i>Her books and mine</i>
<i>Ses plumes et les miennes,</i>	<i>His pens and mine</i>
<i>Vos chevaux et les leurs,</i>	<i>Your horses and theirs</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1. SON, SA, *its*; LEUR, *their*, are supplied by EN in the second member of a sentence when *its* or *their* can be rendered by *of it*, *of them*, or *there of*; as, *Paris is fine, I admire its size*; *Paris est beau, j'en admire la grandeur*; but if governed by a preposition they are used according to the rule; as, *Paris is fine, I admire the size of its buildings*; *Paris est beau, j'admire la grandeur de ses bâtimens*.

Ceux qui lisent le Paradis Perdu,	Those who read Paradise Lost, are
ne sont pas toujours capables d'en	not always capable of feeling <i>its</i>
sentir les beautés,	beauties
Voyez-vous cet arbre? les fruits	Do you see that tree? <i>its</i> fruit is
n'en sont pas bons,	not good

2. MINE, THINE, &c. after *être*, is rendered by the preposition *à*, and the personal pronouns, *moi*, *toi*, *lui*, &c.; as,

C'est à moi. C'est à lui. C'est à elle.	It is mine. It is his. It is her's.
C'est à vous. C'est à eux,	It is your's. It is their's

RULE II.

My, thy, his, her, &c. are rendered by the definite article in speaking of injury done to, or suffered by the body, and when there is no doubt* about the possessor; sometimes the personal pronoun, in the third state, or dative case, is also added; as,

J'ai mal à la tête, au côté,	I have a pain in <i>my</i> head,
au genou, et aux jambes,	side, knee, and legs
Il eut la tête tranchée,	He had <i>his</i> head cut off
Elle a mal au genou,	She has a pain in <i>her</i> knee
S'est-il blessé la jambe?	Has he hurt <i>his</i> leg?
Il lève les mains et les yeux,	He lifts up <i>his</i> hands and eyes
Vous avez chaud aux pieds	<i>Your</i> feet are warm and <i>mine</i>
et moi j'ai froid aux miens,	are cold
Vous me blessez la main,	You hurt <i>my</i> hand
Il s'est cassé la jambe,	He has broken <i>his</i> leg
Les mains lui brûlent,	<i>His</i> or <i>her</i> hands burn
Vous êtes-vous lavé le visage?	Did you wash <i>your</i> face?
Vous lui faites mal au doigt,	You hurt <i>her</i> finger
Chauffez-vous les pieds, vous	Warm <i>your</i> feet, <i>they</i> are
y avez froid,	cold (<i>you have cold in them</i>)

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

I have the tooth ache. I am shutting my eyes. I have a violent sore throat. Your hands are cold and mine are warm. She has a pain in her side. I owe my life to it. He owes his life to me. The carriage ran over both his knees. Our general lost his left eye in that battle. You have broken her arm. He has the head ache. I had a fall yesterday.

Tooth, <i>dent</i> , f.	to run, <i>passer</i>
ache, <i>mal</i>	left, <i>gauche</i> ; in, <i>à</i>
violent, <i>grand</i> ; sore, <i>mal de</i>	to break, <i>rompre</i>
throat, <i>gorge</i> , f.	arm, <i>bras</i> , m.
to owe, <i>devoir</i> ; life, <i>vie</i> , f.	I had a fall, <i>je me suis laissé</i>
carriage, <i>voiture</i> , f.	<i>tomber</i>

* *Obs.* When any ambiguity is to be apprehended, the possessive pronoun must be used; as, *I see that my leg swells, je vois que ma jambe enflé*; *ma* is here necessary to limit the sense, because *I can see the leg of another swell*.

Demonstrative Pronouns, or Articles.

RULE.

Celui, celle, ceux, or celles is put for *this, that, these, or those*, and for *he, she, they*, when followed by a relative. These pronouns must agree in gender and number with the nouns for which they stand ; as,

Le carrosse du roi et <i>celui</i> de la reine,	The king's coach and <i>that</i> of the queen
La maison de mon frère et <i>celle</i> de ma sœur,	The house of my brother and <i>that</i> of my sister
Il a dépensé tout son bien et <i>celui</i> de sa femme,	He has spent all his own fortune and <i>that</i> of his wife,
<i>Ces</i> chevaux et <i>ceux</i> de mon fils,	These horses and <i>those</i> of my son
Cette maison est plus grande que <i>celle-là</i> ,	This house is larger than <i>that</i>
<i>Celui</i> qui l'a fait a été puni,	<i>He</i> who did it was punished
<i>Celle</i> qui l'a fait a été punie,	<i>She</i> who did it was punished
<i>Ceux</i> qui l'ont fait ont été punis,	} <i>They</i> who did it were punished
<i>Celles</i> qui l'ont fait ont été punies,	
<i>Ceux</i> ou <i>celles</i> que vous protégez,	<i>Those</i> whom you protect

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Ci* and *là* are added to *ce, celui, &c.* to point out different things more particularly, and when there are two antecedents, *ci* refers to the latter, and *là* to the former ; as, *Ce livre-ci et cette plume-là, this book and that pen.* Le corps périt, l'âme est immortelle, cependant nous négligeons *celle-ci*, et nous sacrifions tout pour *celui-là*, the body perishes, the soul is immortal, nevertheless we neglect *this* and sacrifice every thing for *that*. Je n'aime pas *ceci*, donnez-moi *cela*, I do not like *this*, give me *that*.

2. *CELUI* is sometimes understood in general sentences, when *HE WHO* signifies *WHOEVER, OR ALL WHO* ; as, *HE WHO has had no education resembles a body without a soul, QUI n'a point eu d'éducation ressemble à un corps sans âme.*

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Give me that book. I have nothing in common with that man. He does not like this, lend him that. The city of London is larger than that of Paris. Your house is smaller than your brother's (*than that of your brother*). They who despise learning are despicable. He who puts confidence in the promises of men does not know the human heart. He to whom I spoke is married. She of whom I spoke is dead. They from whom I received the letter are gone.

Nothing, <i>rien</i>	to put confidence, <i>se fier</i>
in common, <i>de commun</i>	to know, <i>connaître</i>
with, <i>avec</i> ; to like, <i>aimer</i>	human, <i>humain</i>
large, <i>grand</i> ; small, <i>petit</i>	heart, <i>cœur</i> , m.
to despise, <i>mépriser</i>	to speak, <i>parler (imperf.)</i>
learning, <i>science</i> , f.	to receive, <i>recevoir</i>
despicable, <i>méprisable</i>	to go, <i>partir</i>

Relative Pronouns.

RULE I.

THE relatives *qui*, who, that, which; *dont*, whose, of whom, of which, with which; *que*, whom, that, which, are used for persons and things, and are never separated from their antecedents; but *qui* is never used for things, unless the antecedent be expressed; as,

L'homme <i>qui</i> parle,	The man <i>who</i> speaks,
La femme <i>qui</i> pense,	The woman <i>who</i> thinks
La bête <i>qui</i> mange,	The beast <i>that</i> eats
Les pierres <i>qui</i> tombent,	The stones <i>which</i> fall
Ceux <i>qui</i> n'étudient pas ne	They will never be learned
seront jamais savans,	<i>who</i> do not study
Celui <i>qui</i> trahit son ami est	He is unworthy of friendship
indigne d'amitié,	<i>who</i> betrays his friend
La personne <i>dont</i> la réputation	The person <i>whose</i> reputation
vous étonne,	you wonder at

le ciel, dont le secours est nécessaire,	Heaven, whose assistance is necessary
le tyran dont je me plains,	The tyrant of whom I complain
une chose dont je suis content,	The thing with which I am contented
l'ami que vous aimez,	The friend whom you love
les maux que vous appréhendez,	The evils which you apprehend
Qui observera les commandemens de Dieu, sera sauvé,	He who, or whoever observes the commandments of God, will be saved

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Qui, who*, is never abbreviated before a vowel, but *que, whom, that, which*, and all other words that end in *que* are ; as, à qui ai-je l'honneur de parler ? to whom have I the honor of speaking ? L'homme qu'il vit est mort, the man whom he saw is dead. Le cheval qu'a vendu mon frère, the horse which my brother has sold.

2. When the relative requires to be separated from the antecedent, *DE QUI* is used for persons, instead of *DE QUI*, and *DUQUEL, DE LAQUELLE*, either for persons or things ; as, God, whose laws all men ought to obey, Dieu, aux lois de qui, ou duquel tous les hommes doivent obéir. The horse of which I make use, le cheval duquel je me sers.

Le ciel, sans le secours duquel, etc. Heaven, without whose assistance, &c.

La Tamise, dans le lit de laquelle, etc. The Thames, into the bed of which, &c.

Une femme sur la conduite de qui, ou de laquelle il n'y a rien à redire, A woman in whose conduct there is nothing to censure

3. *QUI*, instead of *QUE*, is used for *WHOM*, signifying *WHAT PERSON* ; as, I do not know whom you mean, je ne sais qui vous voulez dire.

4. *QUE* is always expressed in French, though *WHOM* is sometimes omitted in English ; as, the person (whom) he loves, la personne qu'il aime.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

The book which pleases most is not always the most useful. A young man will assuredly have (some) merit, who is attentive (docile) to the counsel (advices) that is

given him (*which one gives him*). It is a conduct that cannot be excused. He is a man whose virtues we ought to revere. It is an action, the consequences of which are very fatal. There is a horse, the value of which is very great. The stockings are very bad which you bought me yesterday. Lying is a vice of which we cannot have too great an abhorrence.

To please, *plaire*
 useful, *utile*
 assuredly, *infailliblement*
 advice, *avis*, m.
 cannot, *ne peut*
 to be excused, *s'excuser*
 consequence, *suite*, f.

very, *très* ; fatal, *funeste*
 value, *prix*, m.
 to buy, *acheter* (*pret.*)
 yesterday, *hier*
 we cannot, *on ne saurait*
 too great an abhorrence, *trop d'horreur*

RULE II.

Whom, after prepositions, is rendered by *qui*, and relates only to persons or things personified ; *lequel*, *laquelle*, &c. is used for persons and things according to their gender and number ; this is the only pronoun that can be employed in speaking of a thing, when it is placed after the noun to which it relates ; *quoi* is used when the antecedent *thing* is expressed or understood ; as,

L'homme, *pour qui* vous
 parlez, est allé à Paris,
 C'est un ami *en qui* je mets
 ma confiance—à *qui* je me
 fie—*contre qui* on ne peut
 mal parler,
 C'est *de quoi* il se plaint,
 C'est *à quoi* il s'appliqua,
 Il n'y a rien *sur quoi* on ait
 plus écrit,
 C'est l'opinion *à laquelle* je
 m'attache — Le bonheur
 après *lequel* j'aspire—Un
 mal *auquel* il n'y a point de
 remède—Les raisons *avec*
lesquelles je l'ai convaincu,

The man, *for whom* you
 speak, is gone to Paris
 He is a friend *in whom* I put
 my confidence—in *whom* I
 confide—*against whom* no-
 thing can be said
 It is *what* he complains of
 It is *what* he applied to
 There is nothing *on which*
 more has been written
 It is the opinion *to which* I
 am attached—The happi-
 ness *after which* I aspire—
 An evil *for which* there is
 no remedy—The reasons
with which I convinced
 him

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

The merchant for whom I keep accounts (*keep the books*) is very wealthy. I know the person to whom you spoke. He is a man to whom I owe great obligations. The merchant from whom I received the letter. Vicious habits are maladies which (*to which*) human aid alone cannot remedy. That is the wall against which he was leaning. The pleasure to which you devote yourself, is hurtful to (*the*) health. The thing of which I am thinking, is very interesting.

Merchant, *négociant*

to keep, *tenir*

very wealthy, *très-opulent*

to know, *connaître*

I owe great obligations, *j'ai*

beaucoup d'obligation

habit, *habitude*, f.

aid, *secours*, m.

wall, *mûr*, m.

against, *contre*

to lean, *appuyer*

pleasure, *plaisir*, m.

to devote oneself, *se livrer*

hurtful, *nuisible*

health, *santé*, f.; very, *fort*

interesting, *intéressante*

RULE III.

That which, what (of), are rendered by **ce qui*, *ce que*, *ce dont*; as,

On ne doit s'appliquer qu'à

ce qui peut être utile,

Ce qui est dit est dit,

Ce qui me fâche, *c'est* qu'il ne

veut pas me parler,

Ce qui le réjouit, *c'est* d'ap-

prendre que vous êtes en

bonne santé,

Ce que je crains *c'est* d'être

découvert,

Ce que vous entendez est la

vérité,

Ce dont vous parlez est très

raisonnable,

We ought to apply to *that*

only *which* may be useful

What is said is said

What vexes me, *is* that he

will not speak to me

What rejoices him *is* to hear

you are in good health

What I fear *is* being dis-

covered

What you hear *is* the truth

What you speak *of* *is* very

probable, or *that which*

you speak *of*, &c.

* *Obs.* *Ce qui* is used as the subject, and *ce que* as the object.

2. *Ce qui*, ou *que* requires *ce* to be repeated before *être* in the second member of a sentence ; as, *WHAT vexes him, is her bad humour*, *ce qui le fâche, c'est sa mauvaise humeur*: in short sentences, however, this repetition is unnecessary ; as, *WHAT I say is true, ce que je dis est vrai*.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

That which flatters is more dangerous than that which offends. What I like most, is being (*is to be*) alone. What you have just been mentioning is dreadful. He tells what he knows. Has he given her what he had promised her? What you complain of is vexatious.

To flatter, <i>flatter</i>	dreadful, <i>horrible</i>
to offend, <i>offenser</i>	to tell, <i>dire</i>
to be alone, <i>n'être seul</i>	to know, <i>savoir</i>
have just been mentioning,	to complain, <i>se plaindre</i>
<i>venez de parler</i>	vexatious, <i>fâcheux</i>

ON THE PRONOUNS *EN* AND *Y*.

EN, as a relative pronoun, stands for *de lui, d'elle, d'eux, d'elles, de cela*, &c. and refers to persons and things ; it is Englished by, *of him, of her, of it, of them, for him, for her, for it, for them, with him, with her, with it, with them, about him, about her, about it, about them, from him, from her, from it, from them, thence, by him, by her, by it, at it, some, any, none*, &c. ; as,

Newton vous plait, vous en	Newton pleases you, you are
parlez toujours,	always speaking <i>of him</i>
Voilà une belle montre, je	There is a handsome watch,
vous en ferai présent,	I shall make you a present
	<i>of it</i>
Il avait deux fils, il lui en est	He had two sons, one <i>of them</i>
mort un,	is dead
En êtes vous fâchés ?	Are you sorry <i>for it</i> ?
Elle s'en rejouit,	She rejoices <i>at it</i>
Voilà des pommes, en voulez-	There are some apples, will
vous ?	you have <i>some</i> ?

Voulez-vous me prêter de l'argent? non, je n'en ai point,	Will you lend me some money? no, I have none
Monsieur, en avez-vous?	Sir, have you any?
Voulez-vous m'en prêter?	Will you lend me some?

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Will you give me my books? I want them. I will thank you for them. Have you bought some books? Yes, I have bought some. I am very sorry for it. I want change, have you any? I am very glad of it. I thank you for it. They will speak to them about it. I will give you a faithful account of it. Have you some pens? No, I have none. Here are some. Will you give me three of them? What do you say to it now?

Want, <i>ai besoin</i>	change, <i>monnaie</i> , f.
to thank, <i>remercier</i>	glad, <i>aise</i>
to buy, <i>acheter</i>	account, <i>compte</i>
very, <i>bien</i>	faithful, <i>fidèle</i> , m.; what, <i>qu'</i>
to want, <i>avoir besoin de</i>	now, <i>maintenant</i> .

THE PRONOUN Y.

Y, as a pronoun, mostly relates to things, and seldom to persons; it is used for *à lui*, *à eux*, *en lui*, *en elle*, *à cela*, *à cet homme là*, &c.; and is Englished by, *to it*, *at it*, *on it*, *it*, *by it*, *of it*, *into it*, *about it*, *with him*, *with her*, *with it*, *with them*, *in him*, *in her*, *in it*, *in them*, *to him*, *to her*, *to them*, *them*, &c.; as,

Cette raison est juste, je m'y rends,	This reason is just, I will yield to it
Je n'y touchais jamais,	I never touched it or there
Elle n'y eut plus pensé,	She had thought no more about it
Il l'a fait, mais il n'y gagnera rien,	He has done it, but he will gain nothing by it.

N'y a-t-elle plus pensé ?	Had she thought no more <i>about it</i>
Ne vous y fiez pas,	Do not trust <i>to him, to her,</i> <i>to it, to them, &c.</i>
Si nous y avions pensé,	If we had thought <i>on it</i>
C'est une entreprise difficile,	It is a difficult undertaking,
vous n'y réussirez pas,	you will not succeed <i>in it</i>
Elles n'y auraient pas pensé,	They would not have thought <i>on it, on her, on him, on</i> <i>them, &c.</i>
C'est une belle charge, il y	It is a fine appointment, he
aspirait depuis long-tems,	aimed <i>at it</i> a long time ago

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Would he not have thought of it? There is a fine picture, put a frame to it. Will he gain nothing by it? I never will consent to it. These are fine promises, but do not rely upon them. He does not like his profession, he is not fit for it. They have forced him to it.

Picture, <i>tableau</i> , m.	do not rely, <i>ne comptez pas</i>
to put, <i>mettre</i>	to like, <i>aimer</i>
frame, <i>bordure</i> , f.	profession, <i>profession</i>
to consent, <i>consentir</i>	is not fit, <i>n'est pas propre</i>
never, <i>n'—jamais</i>	to force, <i>forcer</i>
promise, <i>promesse</i> , f.	

OBSERVATIONS ON EN AND Y, &c.

1. *EN*, ou *Y*, taken singly, is placed after all other pronouns; as, *I will speak to HIM ABOUT IT, je LUI EN parlerai; speak to him ABOUT IT, parlez-LUI-EN; let us not trust TO IT, ne NOUS Y fions pas*: and when they meet in the sentence, *Y* precedes *EN*; as, *I will send YOU SOME THERE, je VOUS Y EN enverrai*.

2. In the imperative mood, without a negation, *ME*, *TE*, are put instead of *MOI*, *TOI*, before *EN*; but *MOI*, *TOI*, are put after *Y*; as, *give ME SOME, donnez M'EN* (not *donnez moi en*); *lead or take ME THERE, menez-Y MOI* (not *menez moi y*, nor *menez m'y*): and when there are two other pronouns, *Y* is put between them; as, *bring THEM THERE TO US, apportez-LES-Y nous*: except in negation; as, *do not bring him, her, or it to us there, ne nous l'y menez pas*.

3. The pronouns *EN*, *Y*, and *LE*, supply the place of words and whole sentences, and are not always expressed in English; as, *you have not seen the queen?* yes, I HAVE (*I have seen her*), *vous n'avez pas vu la reine; si fait, je l'ai vue.* How many children has he? I told you he had ONE (*of them*), *combien a-t-il d'enfants? Je vous ai dit qu'il en avait un.* Have you answered his letter? yes, I HAVE (*I have answered it*), *avez-vous répondu à sa lettre? oui, s'y ai répondu.*

4. The pronouns *EN* and *Y* may sometimes be used for persons; as, *we admire your sister, and speak of her very often; nous admirons votre sœur, et nous en parlons souvent.* *Lui* and *leur* are used for animals or things personified; thus, in speaking of a sword, we say, *I owe my life to it, je lui dois la vie;* but if we add, *I have got a new hilt put to it*, it must be rendered by *j'y ai fait mettre une nouvelle garde.*

5. *En*, in some instances, and when preceded by an adverb of quantity; as, *tant, autant, plus, &c.* is not translated into English: Ex. *Vous avez plus de livres que je n'en ai,* you have more books than I. *Avez-vous autant de chevaux en France que nous en avons en Angleterre?* have you as many horses in France as we have in England?

PRACTICE ON THE ABOVE OBSERVATIONS.

Do not give me any. Give him or her some. Give them some. I will not give you any. Will he not give me some? Shall I not give you some? He did not bring them to us there. Did he bring them to her there? Do not bring them to us there. Do not send me there. Did you see any* officers in the park? Yes, there were a great many (*of them*). He is an honest man, trust him. This book is dear (*to me*), but I am indebted to it for my instruction. Go to the horses, and give them something to eat.

Any,* *des*
officer, *officier, m.*
park, *parc*
a great many, *beaucoup*

is dear (*to me*), *m'a coûté cher*
am indebted, *doit*
go to, *visitez*
to eat, *à manger*

Note. *En* and *y* are properly adverbs; *en* is from the Latin *inde, thence, or from there*, and *y* from *hic, or in hoc loco, in that place, or there*. Ex. *Demeurez-vous ordinairement à Paris?* Oui; *j'y demeure:* do you generally reside in Paris? Yes; I do live there, or in that place. *En arrivez-vous dans ce moment?* Non; *j'en suis arrivé hier?* Are or have you arrived from there just now? No; I arrived from there yesterday.—[*V. Gram. par l'Abbé Sicard, p. 76, vol. ii.*]

N'y a-t-elle plus pensé ?

Ne vous y fiez pas,

Si nous y avons pensé,
C'est une entreprise difficile,
vous n'y réussirez pas,
Elles n'y auraient pas pensé,

C'est une belle charge, il y
aspirait depuis long-tems,

Had she thought
about it

Do not trust
to it, to the

If we had

It is a dis

you v

They v

on

it

It

EXAMPLES

Would he not have thou
put a frame to it. Will
will consent to it. These
upon them. He does n
for it. They have forc

Picture, *tableau*, m.
to put, *mettre*
frame, *bordure*, f.
to consent, *consent*
never, *n'*—*jamais*
promise, *promesse*,

est morte?
elle femme?
vous parlez-

1. EN, ou Y, *parlez-vous?*
speak TO HIM
parlez-LUI-EN
meet in the
VOUS Y EN e

2. In th
of MOI, TO
donnez M
menez n
Y is pu
NOUS
ne ne

OBSERVATIONS.

is rendered by *à qui*? and *de qui*? in asking questions;
book is that? *à qui* est-ce livre? *Whose* pen is that? *à qui*
dame? By *whose* means? par le moyen *de qui*? *Whose*
re to you? le domestique *de qui* vous a parlé? *From whom*?
by *de qui*? which corresponds to the ablative case in Latin.

Syntax of the Pronoun *qui*.
qui is frequently used instead of *qui*? for the nominative for the accusative, and *qu'est-ce que*? for the
qu'est-ce qui l'a dit? who said so? instead of *qui* l'a
avez vu? whom did you see? Dat. *Qu'est-*
say?

beginning of an exclamation, may be
much, how many. After an adverb
 sometimes Englished by *till*, and
 — *que* is Englished by *but*,
 or it is. *Que ne parlez-*
je pas! What, or how
 you stay? Vous êtes
me, hé waits till.
il n'y a que deux,
 w him.

ILLUSTRATE THE RULE
 OBSERVATIONS.

Qu'est-ce qui arrive?	What makes you laugh?
Qu'est-ce qui va bien?	What avails riches?
Qu'est-ce qui est arrivé?	What has happened to you?
Qu'est-ce que c'est?	What is it?
Qu'est-ce que vous faites toujours la même	What! always the same thing?
Qu'est-ce que vous parle-t-il?	Of what is he talking?
Qu'est-ce que deux grammaires: à laquelle donnez-vous la préférence?	There are two grammars: to which do you give the preference?
Voici des pommes et des poires: lesquelles aimez-vous le mieux?	Here are apples and pears: which do you like best?
Laquelle de ces oranges?	Which of these oranges?
Lequel de ces tableaux-là proposez-vous de vendre?	Which of those pictures do you intend to sell?
Duquel vous déferez-vous?	Which will you part with?

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Who is come? From whom have you this news? Whose fine house is that? Whom do you look for? What do you

Interrogative, &c. Pronouns.

RULE I.

1. *Qui? who?* is said of persons only, and is used in all states or cases in asking questions; as,

Nom. <i>Qui est là? Qui sont-ils?</i>	<i>Who is there? Who are they?</i>
Gen. <i>De qui parlez-vous?</i>	<i>Of whom do you speak?</i>
Dat. <i>A qui écrivez-vous?</i>	<i>To whom are you writing?</i>
Acc. <i>Qui avez-vous vu?</i>	<i>Whom did you see?</i>

2. *Que? or qu'est-ce que?* is only said of things, and is the object of an action; but *quoi?* is used when a thing is spoken of and a preposition precedes; as,

<i>Que dites-vous?</i>	} <i>What do you say?</i>
<i>Qu'est-ce que vous dites?</i>	
<i>De quoi vous plaignez-vous?</i>	} <i>Of what do you complain?</i>
<i>En quoi se trompe-t-il?</i>	

3. *Lequel? which?* must agree with the noun to which it refers, and *quel?* with the noun to which it is joined; as,

<i>Lequel de vos frères est marié?</i>	<i>Which of your brothers is married?</i>
<i>Laquelle des sœurs est morte?</i>	<i>Which of the sisters is dead?</i>
<i>Quel homme? Quelle femme?</i>	<i>What man? What woman?</i>
<i>De quels messieurs parlez-vous?</i>	<i>Of what gentlemen do you speak?</i>
<i>A quelles dames parlez-vous?</i>	<i>To what ladies were you speaking?</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Whose?* is rendered by *à qui?* and *de qui?* in asking questions; as, *Whose book is that? à qui est-ce livre? Whose pen is that? à qui est cette plume?* By *whose* means? *par le moyen de qui?* *Whom* servant spoke to you? *le domestique de qui vous a parlé?* *From whom?* is rendered by *de qui?* which corresponds to the ablative case in Latin.

2. *Qui est-ce qui ?* is frequently used instead of *qui ?* for the nominative, *qui est-ce que ?* for the accusative, and *qu'est-ce que ?* for the dative ; as, Norm. *Qui est-ce qui l'a dit ?* *who said so ?* instead of *qui l'a dit ?* Acc. *Qui est-ce que vous avez vu ?* *whom did you see ?* Dat. *Qu'est-ce que vous dites ?* *what do you say ?*

3. *Que*, when placed at the beginning of an exclamation, may be Englished by *how*, *why*, *what*, *how much*, *how many*. After an adverb of comparison *que* signifies *than*. It is sometimes Englished by *till*, and in the imperative by *let* and *that*. *Ne — que* is Englished by *but*, *only* ; as, *Qu'elle est jolie !* *how pretty she or it is.* *Que ne parlez-vous ?* *Why do you not speak ?* *Que ne donnerais-je pas !* *What, or how much would I not give !* *Que tardez-vous ?* *Why do you stay ?* *Vous êtes plus grand que moi,* *you are taller than I.* *Il attend que,* *he waits till.* *Qu'on le mène en prison,* *let him be taken to prison.* *Il n'y a que deux,* *there are but two.* *Je ne connais que lui,* *I only know him.*

ADDITIONAL EXAMPLES TO ILLUSTRATE THE RULE AND OBSERVATIONS.

<i>Qu'est-ce qui vous fait rire ?</i>	<i>What makes you laugh ?</i>
<i>Que sert-il d'avoir du bien ?</i>	<i>What avails riches ?</i>
<i>Que vous est-il arrivé ?</i>	<i>What has happened to you ?</i>
<i>Qu'est-ce ? Qu'est-ce que c'est ?</i>	<i>What is it ?</i>
<i>Quoi ! toujours la même chose ?</i>	<i>What ! always the same thing ?</i>
<i>De quoi parle-t-il ?</i>	<i>Of what is he talking ?</i>
<i>Voilà deux grammaires : à laquelle donnez-vous la préférence ?</i>	<i>There are two grammars : to which do you give the preference ?</i>
<i>Voici des pommes et des poires : lesquelles aimez-vous le mieux ?</i>	<i>Here are apples and pears : which do you like best ?</i>
<i>Laquelle de ces oranges ?</i>	<i>Which of these oranges ?</i>
<i>Lequel de ces tableaux-là proposez-vous de vendre ?</i>	<i>Which of those pictures do you intend to sell ?</i>
<i>Duquel vous déferez-vous ?</i>	<i>Which will you part with ?</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Who is come ? From whom have you this news ? Whose fine house is that ? Whom do you look for ? What do you

think? In what is he mistaken? What! I know not what. What is more pleasant to parents than virtuous children? Which of these students is your brother? Which of your sisters will he marry? Which of these two men is your father? What pens will you buy? What books? What paper? In what shop? What linen have you bought?

To have, <i>tenir</i>	student, <i>étudiant</i>
to look for, <i>chercher</i>	will, <i>veut-il?</i>
to be mistaken, <i>se tromper</i>	to marry, <i>épouser</i>
more pleasant, <i>de plus agréable</i>	shop, <i>boutique</i> , f.
	linen, <i>toile</i> , f.

RULE II.

Où may be used either for the relative or interrogative, *lequel*, or *quoi*, when, in English, we say *in which*, *into which*, *where*, *wherein*, *from which*, *whence*, &c.; as,

La maison où il demeure,	The house <i>in which</i> he lives
Les fautes où je suis tombé,	The faults <i>into which</i> I have fallen
Je ne me rappelle pas l'endroit où je dois le joindre,	I have forgotten the place <i>where</i> or <i>in which</i> I am to meet him
C'est une chose d'où j'attends mon bonheur,	It is a thing <i>from which</i> I expect my happiness
Où me réduisez-vous?	<i>What</i> do you reduce me <i>to</i> ?
Par où commencerons-nous?	<i>What</i> shall we begin <i>with</i> ?

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

The circumstances *in which* you are. The cottage *in which* he lives. The end *at which* he aims. The reasons *from which* I conclude. The discourses *by which* he insinuates. I know the means *by which* he gains his point. By what means (*by what*) shall I get out of this embarrassment?

Cottage, <i>cabane</i> , f.	to aim, <i>viser</i> ; from, <i>de</i>
end, <i>but</i> , m.	to conclude, <i>conclure</i>

by, <i>par</i>	to gain one's point, <i>parvenir</i>
to insinuate, <i>insinuer</i>	to his ends, <i>à ses fins</i>
to know, <i>savoir</i>	to get out, <i>se tirer</i>
mean, <i>moyen</i> , m.	of, <i>de</i>

Indefinite Pronouns.

RULE I.

To *qui* and *quoi* is added *que ce soit qui*, or *que ce soit* *ne*, and sometimes *que ce puisse être qui* or *que*, answering *whoever* in English; but with the negative *ne*, or when a question is asked, they signify *any body*, or *any thing*; as,

<i>Qui que ce soit qui ait fait cela,</i>	<i>Whoever</i> did it (<i>whoever may have done that</i>)
<i>On ne doit jamais parler mal de qui que ce soit,</i>	We ought never to speak ill of <i>any body</i> , be he who he may
<i>Trouverez-vous qui que ce soit de votre avis?</i>	Will you find <i>any body</i> (<i>whatever</i>) of your opinion?
<i>Qui que ce soit, il sera découvert,</i>	<i>Whoever</i> he may be, he will be discovered
<i>Qui que ce puisse être qui ait fait cela, c'est un habile homme,</i>	He is a clever man <i>who</i> did that, <i>let him be who he will</i>
<i>A qui que ce soit que vous parliez,</i>	To <i>whomsoever</i> you may be speaking
<i>Qui que ce soit que vous envoyiez,</i>	<i>Whomsoever</i> you will send
<i>Quoi que ce soit qui arrive faites-le-moi savoir,</i>	<i>Whatever</i> may happen, let me know
<i>Quoi que ce soit qui vous empêche,</i>	<i>Whatever</i> may prevent you
<i>Quoi que ce soit que vous m'ordonniez, je le ferai,</i>	<i>Whatever</i> you may bid me, I will do it
<i>Quoi que ce soit qu'il entreprenne, il n'y réussira jamais,</i>	<i>Whatever</i> he may undertake, he will never succeed in it
<i>Qui que ce soit ne m'a parlé de vous,</i>	<i>Nobody</i> (<i>whatever</i>) spoke to me of you

Will descend, *passera*
will succeed, *réussisse*
to ask for, *demander*
at home, *au logis*

world, *monde*, m.
more, *davantage*
to frighten, *épouvanter*

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *Personne* is sometimes a *pronoun* and sometimes a *noun*: when a pronoun it is *masculine*, but when used as a noun it is *feminine*. Ex. *Personne* (m.) ne peut se vanter d'être toujours *heureux*, no one can boast of being always happy. *La personne* (f.) qui est incapable d'oublier le bienfait, est ordinairement *généreuse*, the person who is incapable of forgetting a kindness, is generally liberal. *Rien*, *quiconque*, and *autrui*, are sometimes nouns.

2. *Nul*, when it does not relate to a noun, means the same as *personne*. *Nul*, followed by a noun, has no plural; but it has a plural when it signifies *qui n'est d'aucune valeur*, which is of no value; as, *Ces actes sont nuls*, those acts are null or void.

3. *Plusieurs*, *many*, has no singular, and is of both genders; as, *Plusieurs* se sont trompés, ou trompées en voulant tromper les autres, *many* have deceived themselves by wishing to deceive others.

4. *CHACUN*, *every one*, or *every body*, is always used in the singular; as, Dieu rendra à *chacun* selon ses œuvres, God will reward *every body* according to his works. *Chacun* (m.) lira à son tour, *every one* will read in his turn. *Chacune* (f.) lira à son tour, *every one* will read in her turn. *Every* before a noun is expressed by *chaque* (m. or f.); as, *Chaque* pays a ses usages, *every country* has its customs. *Chaque* science a ses principes, *every science* has its principles.

5. *Tout*, as an adjective, is Englished by *all*, *-every*, and *quel-que*, *QUELQUE-QUE*, *whatever*, are declinable; but *tout*, *although*, and *QUELQUE*, *however*, when used adverbially, are indeclinable; *tout*, as a pronoun, is only used in the masculine singular, and signifies *tout chose*, *every thing*.—[V. Grammaire des Grammaires, p. 314.]

Examples to illustrate Observation 5.

Declinable.

Quel qu'il soit
Quelle qu'elle soit
Quelles que soient les marchandises
Quelques amis qu'il ait
Quelques récompenses que vous lui
donniez,
Tous les peuples et toutes les
langues,
Tout le cours de sa vie,
Tous leurs privilèges sont nuls,
Tous les hommes sont mortels,
Tout homme est mortel,

Whatever he may be
Whatever she may be
Whatever the goods may be
Whatever friends he may have
Whatever rewards you may give
him
All nations and tongues
The whole course of his life
All their privileges are null
All men are mortal
Every man is mortal

<i>Il paye tous les dépens,</i>	He paid <i>all the expenses</i>
<i>et leur écrit toutes les semaines,</i>	I wrote to them <i>every week</i>
<i>et la voit tous les jours,</i>	I see her <i>every day</i>
<i>et les connaît tous,</i>	I know them (<i>m.</i>) <i>all</i>
<i>Il les connaît toutes,</i>	He knows them (<i>f.</i>) <i>all</i>
<i>C'est assez pour toute une famille,</i>	That is enough for a <i>whole family</i>
<i>Tout est laid qu'elle est,</i>	<i>However ugly she may be</i>
<i>Elle va tous les soirs,</i>	She goes <i>every evening</i>

Indeclinable.

<i>Quelque riche qu'il soit,</i>	<i>However rich he may be</i>
<i>Quelque belles qu'elles soient,</i>	<i>However handsome they may be</i>
<i>Tout est perdu,</i>	<i>All, or every thing is lost</i>
<i>Tout est tranquille à présent,</i>	<i>Every thing is quiet now</i>
<i>Presque tout est incertain dans le monde,</i>	<i>Almost every thing is uncertain in the world</i>

Tout is indeclinable before a feminine adjective beginning with a vowel or *à* mute ; as,

<i>La vertu, tout austère qu'elle est,</i>	<i>Virtue, though it may be austere,</i>
<i>fait goûter de vrais plaisirs,</i>	<i>affords real pleasures</i>
<i>Tout habiles qu'ils sont,</i>	<i>Although they are clever</i>

OF THE PRONOUN *ON*.

The pronoun *on* is used indefinitely for one, or several persons, and is always followed by a verb in the third person singular. *On* is Englished by, *one, I, we, people, man, men, it, they, any one, any body, somebody* ; as,

<i>On dit,</i>	<i>They say, people say, it is said</i>
<i>On dit qu'il est savant,</i>	<i>They say, people say he is learned, or it is said that he is learned</i>
<i>On me l'a dit,</i>	<i>I was told so</i>
<i>On n'est pas toujours maître de ses passions,</i>	<i>We are not always masters of our passions</i>
<i>On dit, on croit, on soutient que la chose est ainsi,</i>	<i>People say, it is thought, they maintain that it is so</i>
<i>On a dit, on a rapporté, on croit que la paix se fera,</i>	<i>It has been said, it has been reported, it is believed that peace will be made</i>

<i>On</i> a reçu des lettres,	Letters <i>have been</i> received
A-t- <i>on</i> reçu des lettres ?	<i>Have</i> letters <i>been</i> received ?
<i>On</i> a envoyé un courier,	A courier <i>has been</i> dispatched
A-t- <i>on</i> envoyé un courier ?	<i>Has</i> a courier <i>been</i> dispatched ?
<i>On</i> fera de grands préparatifs,	Great preparations <i>will be</i> made
Ne fera-t- <i>on</i> pas de grands préparatifs ?	<i>Will</i> not great preparations be made ?
<i>On</i> nous écoute,	<i>Somebody</i> listens to us
<i>On</i> a tout tenté,	Every thing <i>has been</i> tried, or men <i>have</i> tried every thing
<i>On</i> secourt plus volontiers les malheureux quand <i>on</i> l'a été soi-même,	We more willingly assist the unfortunate when we have been so ourselves

 EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

It is thought that war will be declared. Men always reason ill when they are possessed of any violent passion. We remark every day that the passions cause (*some*) great disorders ; yet we do not endeavour to guard against the surprise of so powerful an enemy (*an enemy so powerful*). We often believe that the friendship which we have for a rich and powerful person is sincere and disinterested ; but we can know it only when it is stripped of its riches and power. Will great rejoicings be made ?

To think, <i>croire</i>	against, <i>de</i>
to reason, <i>raisonner</i>	powerful, <i>puissant</i>
always, <i>toujours</i>	often, <i>souvent</i>
ill <i>mal</i> ; when, <i>quand</i>	to believe, <i>croire</i>
to possess, <i>posséder</i>	disinterested, <i>désintéressé</i>
any, <i>quelque</i>	only, <i>ne-que</i>
to remark, <i>remarquer</i>	when, <i>lorsque</i>
disorder, <i>désordre</i> , m.	to strip, <i>dépouiller</i>
yet, <i>cependant</i>	riches, <i>bien</i>
to endeavour, <i>chercher</i> ; to, <i>à</i>	power, <i>pouvoir</i> , m.
guard, <i>se garantir</i>	rejoicings, <i>réjouissance</i> , f.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *L'on* is used instead of *on* after *et*, *si*, *ou*, and *que*, unless *on* should be followed by *le*, *la*, or *les*; as, *si l'on veut plaire, il faut se rendre aimable*, if we wish to please, we must become amiable; *si on ne le voit pas, on l'entend*, if it is not seen, it is heard, or, if we do not see it, we hear it.

2. *Soi* and *se*, the oblique cases of *on*, are subject to the same rules; as, *moi, me*, &c. [Rules iii. and iv.]; as, *être trop content de soi est une sottise*, to be too contented with oneself is a folly.

3. *Soi*, the oblique case of *on* is used in a general sense, and in the singular number only; *himself, herself*, &c. are rendered by *lui, elle*, &c. when taken in an individual sense; as, *c'est un homme qui ne parle que de lui*, that is a man who talks only of himself.

Examples to illustrate the above Observations.

Obs. 1. Si *l'on* savait borner ses désirs, *on* s'épargnerait bien des maux et *l'on* se procurerait beaucoup de bien,

Il y a des défauts que *l'on* cache soigneusement,

Ce que je désire le plus, c'est qu'*on* fasse la paix,

2. *On* a souvent besoin d'un plus petit que *soi*,

Être trop mécontent de *soi* est une faiblesse,

Il se donne bien de la peine,

Elle se flatte,

Elle parle toujours d'*elle même*

Chacun agit pour *soi*,

3. Ils sont venus d'*eux mêmes*,

Cela est bon en *soi*,

Le vice est odieux de *soi*,

Ces choses sont bonnes en *elles-mêmes*,

If we knew how to limit our desires, we should spare ourselves many evils and procure ourselves much good

There are some defects which we carefully conceal

What I wish for most, is that peace may be made

One has often need of a person inferior to oneself

To be too dissatisfied with oneself is a weakness

He gives himself a great deal of trouble

She flatters herself

She is always talking of herself

Every one acts for himself

They are come of themselves

That is good in itself

Vice is odious of itself

These things are good in themselves

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Soi, himself, &c.

[Obs. 2 & 3.]

He who regards nobody but himself is not worthy to live. The wise man is

Lui, elle, himself, herself, &c.

[Obs. 3.]

That is a man who minds himself only. That person is very neat in herself.

master of himself. We
(*one*) ought to speak of
ourselves (*oneself*) with
modesty. He never has
money about him.

That man is constantly
talking of himself. These
things are indifferent in
themselves.

He who, *celui qui*
regards only, *n'est bon que*
pour
worthy, *digne*; to, *de*
minds only, *n'est bon que pour*
person, *personne*, m.
neat, *propre*

modesty, *modestie*, f.
is talking, *parle*
constantly, *sans cesse*
never has, *ne porte jamais*
money, *argent*, m.
about, *sur*
indifferent, *indifférent*

EXERCISES ON THE SYNTAX OF PRONOUNS.

FIRST LESSON.

Tout le monde se plaint de sa mémoire, et personne ne
se plaint de son jugement.

On ne peut se consoler d'être trompé par ses ennemis
et trahi par ses amis, et l'on est souvent satisfait de l'être
par soi-même.

Où il n'y a point de probité il n'y a point de religion.

Celui qui est esclave de ses passions ne saurait jamais se
vanter d'être libre.

S'occuper de fêtes et de dances, quand les pauvres
meurent de faim, c'est insulter à l'humanité.

La gloire des grands hommes se doit mesurer aux moyens
qu'ils ont pour l'acquérir,

Les planètes et la lune nous communiquent la lumière du
soleil, et jamais la leur.

Ce n'est presque jamais qu'aux dépens de son repos qu'on
entreprend de troubler celui d'autrui.

Un cœur heureux est celui qui ne desire rien et que ne
craindre rien.

Tout le monde, every body
plaindre, to complain
ses, our; *trahir*, to betray

sur, by; *car*, for
souvent, often
probité, honesty

<i>Esclave</i> , slave	<i>aux moyens</i> , by the means
<i>vanter</i> , to boast	<i>la leur</i> , their own
<i>s'occuper de fêtes</i> , to be taken up with entertainments	<i>ce n'est presque jamais que</i> , it is scarcely ever but
<i>meurent de faim</i> , perishing with hunger	<i>aux dépens</i> , at the expense <i>de son</i> , of our own
<i>c'est insulter à</i> , is insulting	<i>qu'on</i> , that we
<i>se doit mesurer</i> , should be measured	<i>craindre</i> , to fear

SECOND LESSON.

Personne ne peut se vanter d'être sans imperfections. Ne parlez pas mal d'autrui, si vous voulez que personne ne parle mal de vous. Y a-t-il aucun de vous qui s'applique à l'étude autant qu'il le puisse? L'Angleterre espère que chacun fera son devoir. Chacun devrait, pour son bonheur, n'écouter que la voix de la raison et de la vérité. Le bonheur du peuple fait celui du prince; leurs vrais intérêts sont liés les uns aux autres. Dans tout ce que vous dites, ne vous écartez jamais du sentier de la vérité. Qui que ce soit qui méprise les pauvres, est lui-même méprisable. Avec qui que ce soit que vous soyez, comportez-vous toujours bien. Quiconque croit tout ce qu'on lui dit, est souvent trompé. Quelque surprenant que soit ce phénomène il n'est pas contre l'ordre de la nature. Quels que soient vos motifs, votre conduite sera condamnée. Tout ce qui luit n'est pas or.

<i>Mal</i> , ill	<i>écarter</i> , to deviate
<i>bonheur</i> , happiness	<i>se comporter</i> , to conduct
<i>fait</i> , constitutes	<i>phénomène</i> , phenomenon
<i>liés</i> , connected	<i>luire</i> , to glitter

THIRD LESSON.

Quand les vices nous quittent, nous nous flattons de la croyance, que c'est nous qui les quittons.

On n'est jamais si ridicule par les qualités que l'on a, que par celles que l'on affecte d'avoir.

Nous n'avons de petits défauts que pour persuader que nous n'en avons pas de grands.

Quelque découverte que l'on ait faite dans les pays de l'amour propre, il y reste encore bien des terres inconnues.

On n'est jamais si heureux ni si malheureux que l'on pense.

L'espérance, toute trompeuse qu'elle est, sert au moins à nous mener à la fin de la vie par un chemin agréable.

On ne doit pas juger du mérite d'un homme par ses grandes qualités, mais par l'usage qu'il en sait faire.

On ne méprise pas tous ceux qui ont des vices ; mais on méprise tous ceux qui n'ont aucune vertu.—ROCHEFOUCAULT.

Quitter, to leave ; *de*, with
croyance, belief
avouer, to acknowledge

l'amour propre, self-love
servir, to serve
mépriser, to despise

FOURTH LESSON.

La fausse gloire que les hommes cherchent, est une grande marque de leur misère et de leur bassesse ; c'en est une aussi de leur excellence ; car quelques possessions qu'il ait sur la terre, de quelque santé et commodité essentielle qu'il jouisse, il n'est pas satisfait s'il n'est pas dans l'estime des hommes. Il estime si grand la raison de l'homme, que quelque avantage qu'il ait dans le monde, il se croit malheureux s'il n'est placé aussi avantageusement dans la raison de l'homme. La vanité est si ancrée dans le cœur de l'homme, qu'un goujat, un marmiton, un crocheteur, se vante, et veut avoir ses admirateurs, et les philosophes même en veulent. Ceux qui écrivent contre la gloire, veulent avoir la gloire d'avoir bien écrit ; et ceux qui le lisent veulent avoir la gloire de l'avoir lu ; et moi, qui écris ceci, j'ai peut-être cette envie, et peut-être que ceux qui le liront, l'auront aussi.—PASCAL.

Chercher, to seek
bassesse, baseness, or mean-
ness ; *goujat*, clown

marmiton, scullion, kitchen-
drudge
crocheteur, porter

FIFTH LESSON.

La terre est un lieu de repos, un séjour de délices, où l'homme placé pour seconder la nature, préside à tous les êtres. Seul, entre tous, capable de connaître et digne d'admirer, Dieu l'a fait spectateur de l'univers et témoin de ses merveilles : l'étincelle divine dont il est animé, le rend participant aux mystères divins ; c'est par cette lumière qu'il pense et réfléchit ; c'est par elle qu'il voit et lit dans le livre du monde, comme dans un exemplaire de la Divinité. La nature est le trône extérieur de la magnificence divine : l'homme qui la contemple, qui l'étudie, s'élève par degrés au trône intérieur de la Toute-Puissance. Fait pour adorer le Créateur, vassal du ciel, roi de la terre, il l'ennoblit, la peuple et l'enrichit ; il établit entre les êtres vivans l'ordre, la subordination, l'harmonie ; il embellit la nature même, il la cultive, l'étend et la polit ; en élague le chardon et la ronce, y multiplie le raisin et la rose.—BUFFON.

à, over
seul, the only one
entre tous, among them all
témoin, a witness
étincelle, spark, or light
dont, with which

rendre participant aux, to
enable to participate in the
élaguer, to cut down, or to
lop off
chardon, thistle
ronce, briar

Syntax of Verbs.

CHAPTER II.

RULE I.

A VERB must agree with its *nominative* or *subject* in number and person ; as,

Je donne, tu donnes, &c.

Nous écrivons, vous écrivez,
ils écrivent, &c.

I give, thou givest, &c.

We write, you write, they
write, &c.

When a relative is placed between its antecedent and the verb, still the verb must agree with the antecedent to the relative in number and person ; as,

<i>C'est moi qui la connais,</i>	It is I who know her, or it
<i>C'est toi qui parles,</i>	It is thou who speakest
<i>C'est la dame qui lit,</i>	It is the lady who reads
<i>C'est moi qui l'ai fait,</i>	It is I who have done it
<i>C'est elle qui l'a fait,</i>	It is she who has done it
<i>C'est nous qui l'avons fait,</i>	It is we who have done it
<i>C'est vous qui l'avez fait,</i>	It is you who have done it
<i>C'est eux qui l'ont fait,</i>	It is they who have done it

OBSERVATIONS.

1. When several nominatives singular are connected together by a copulative conjunction, the verb, adjective, and pronoun must be put in the plural ; as, *La faveur et l'industrie sont bonnes et nécessaires, elles servent à faire valoir le mérite, patronage and industry are good and necessary, they serve to give merit its full value.*

2. When several nouns singular have the disjunctive conjunctions *ou, mais, autant que, &c.* between them the verb must be singular ; as, *La crainte ou l'impuissance les empêcha, fear or weakness prevented them.*

3. When the nominatives are of different persons, the verb must agree with the first rather than the second, and with the second rather than the third ; as, *C'est votre frère et moi qui avons découvert cette intrigue, it is your brother and I who discovered this intrigue.*

4. When collectives, partitives, and adverbs are followed by *de* and a noun in the plural, they require the verb, adjective, &c. to be plural ; as, *Une infinité de gens le croient, an infinite number of men think so ;* but when the following noun is singular, the verb, &c. must be singular ; as, *La plupart du monde est de cette opinion, most people are of that opinion. La plupart, however, without another noun requires a verb plural ; as, La plupart prétendent qu'il a tort, most maintain that he is wrong. Otherwise, whatever the noun may be, the verb and pronoun must agree with it ; as, La foule faisait un grand bruit, elle était dans la rue, the crowd made a great noise, it was in the street.*

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

I admire the beauty of this landscape. Are you studying geography and history ? He is going into the country. The sun shines. The stars begin to appear. These meadows

are very fine. His father and mother love him very much. It is I who saw them. What shall I do (*l*) who have not a friend in the world? Let us love justice, peace, and virtue. It was your sister and I who saw the king.

Landscape, <i>paysage</i> , m.	to, <i>à</i> ; appear, <i>paraître</i>
to study, <i>étudier</i>	meadow, <i>prairie</i> , f.
geography, <i>géographie</i> , f.	in the world, <i>au monde</i>
to shine, <i>luire</i>	peace, <i>pair</i> , f.

RULE II.

When a noun, or any one of the pronouns *ceci*, *cela*, *aucun*, *quelqu'un*, *personne*, or *rien* is the nominative, it must precede the verb in asking a question, and the pronouns, *il* or *elle*; *ils* or *elles*, depending upon the gender and number of the noun, must be put after the verb; as,

Votre frère a-t-il écrit?	Has your brother written?
Votre sœur a-t-elle écrit?	Has your sister written?
Le roi est-il arrivé?	Is the king arrived?
Le dîner est-il prêt?	Is the dinner ready?
La reine est-elle morte?	Is the queen dead?
Ses parens sont-ils morts?	Are her relations dead?
Vos sœurs ont-elles appris le Français?	Have your sisters learnt French?
Cela est-il bon à manger?	Is that good to eat?
Quelqu'un m'a-t-il demandé?	Did any body ask for me?
Personne a-t-il narré plus naïvement que La Fontaine?	Has any body narrated with more simplicity than La Fontaine?

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Is the company arrived? Is your father gone to France? Has your brother done his exercise? Is the supper ready? Has the servant brought my shoes? Do your scholars learn the irregular verbs? Does your mother speak French? Do your sisters learn music? Did ever any body express himself with more grace than Sheridan?

Company, <i>compagnie</i> , f.	music, <i>musique</i> , f.
to do, <i>faire</i>	ever, <i>jamais</i>
exercise, <i>devoir</i> , m.	to express, <i>exprimer</i>
to bring, <i>apporter</i>	with, <i>avec</i>
shoe, <i>soulier</i>	than, <i>que</i>

Obs. Interrogations are sometimes asked by *est-ce que ?* ou *n'est-ce pas ?* as, *Est-ce que* je perds (not perds-je) ? *do I lose ?* Il lui en parlera, *n'est-ce pas ?* he will speak to him about it, *will he not ?* *Est-ce que* je sors ? *am I going out ?* *Est-ce que* je dors ? *do I sleep ?* J'ai fait cela, *n'est-ce pas* ma sœur ? ou *n'est ce pas*, ma sœur, que j'ai fait cela ? I did that, did I not sister ?

RULE III.

Verbs are repeated in French, though not in English, in the second member of a sentence, and in the reply to a question ; as,

Il n'y a pas beaucoup de personnes qui <i>aiment</i> leurs prochains plus qu'ils ne s' <i>aiment</i> eux-mêmes,	There are not many persons who <i>love</i> their neighbours more than themselves
Avez-vous <i>reçu</i> les lettres ?	Did you receive the letters ?
Oui, je les ai <i>reçues</i> ,	Yes, <i>I did</i>
Vous n'avez pas vu la reine.	You have not seen the queen.
Si fait, je <i>l'ai vue</i> ,	Yes, <i>I have</i>
Le ferez-vous ? Oui, je <i>le ferai</i> ,	Will you do it ? Yes, <i>I will</i>
Allez-vous à la comédie ce soir ? Oui, j'y <i>vais</i> ,	Are you going to the play this evening ? Yes, <i>I am</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

It is much more difficult to conquer oneself than (*to conquer*) an enemy. Our reputation depends not on the caprice of men ; but (*it depends*) on our laudable actions (*the laudable actions we do*). Do you like it ? Yes, I do (*I do like it*). Have you not seen your sister ? No, I have not (*I have not seen her*).

To, <i>de</i> ; conquer oneself, <i>se vaincre soi-même</i>	On, <i>de</i> ; laudable, <i>louable</i>
---	--

Tenses and Moods.

I. On the Simple Tenses or Times.

PRESENT TENSE INDICATIVE MOOD.

THE present tense generally expresses that a thing is, or is doing, at the time in which we speak, and is Englished in three different ways; as, *Je lis*, I read, I do read, or I am reading.

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The present is used to express what is, or will always be true, and what we do continually, or the continued state of a subject; as,

<i>Dieu est éternel, et sa puissance est sans bornes,</i> <i>Je passe une grande partie de la journée à écrire,</i>	<i>God is eternal, and his power is without bounds</i> <i>I spend a great part of the day in writing</i>
--	---

2. The present is put for the future when it denotes that an action, or event will soon take place; as,

<i>Je pars bientôt,</i> <i>Il est à vous dans un moment,</i> <i>Où allez-vous demain ?</i>	<i>I shall soon set out</i> <i>He will be with you in a moment</i> <i>Where are you going to-morrow ?</i>
--	---

3. The present, preceded by *si* (expressing a condition) has a future signification; as, *Si ma sœur vient, vous m'avertirez, if my sister (should) come, you will inform me.*

4. The French use the present for the past, when they wish to give more vivacity and energy to what they relate; as, **Dès que la flotte est en pleine mer, le ciel se couvre de nuages, les éclairs brillent de toutes parts, le tonnerre gronde, la mer écume, les flots s'entre-choquent, les abîmes s'ouvrent, les vaisseaux perdent leurs voiles, leurs mâts; leurs gouvernails se brisent contre les bancs et les rochers.*

N. B. When the present is used for the preterite, it is necessary that the verb which relates to the present should be present also. Ex. *Le centurion envoyé par Mucien entre dans le port de Carthage, et dès qu'il fut débarqué, il élève la voix.* We must say, et dès qu'il *est* débarqué, &c.—[*V. Gram. des Grammaires, p. 496, and Wailly, p. 203.*]

* Where the examples are long, they are left as exercises for the learner to translate.

PRACTICE ON THE RULE AND OBSERVATIONS.

I am writing a letter. We are writing to Liverpool every day. Are you going to the play this evening. I shall be ready in a moment. I shall set out to night. Shall you have done soon? (*have you soon done?*) I shall have done in a moment. Three times three are (*make*) nine. I am learning (*the*) mathematics. If my cousin (*should*) come, tell him to wait for me. God is from all eternity.

Every day, <i>tous les jours</i>	are, <i>font</i>
play, <i>comédie</i> , f.	to learn, <i>apprendre</i>
evening or night, <i>soir</i> , m.	to wait for, <i>attendre</i>
done, <i>fini</i>	eternity, <i>éternité</i> , f.

IMPERFECT TENSE.

The imperfect tense is used,

1st. When, in English, we can use *was*, *wast*, or *were*, and the *active participle*, whether the time be *specified* or *not*.

2nd. To express that past *actions* or *events* were *frequently repeated*, *continued*, or *become habitual*, in a time that is not defined, and which may often be translated by *used to* and the verb.

3rd. In expressing the *age*, *character*, *quality*, &c. of *persons*, or *things* that have ceased to exist. Also to express that an action *was done*, or *doing* at the time of some other *past event*.

4th. The imperfect is often used instead of the conditional, particularly after *si*, *if*, when *if*, in English, is followed by *could*, *would*, *should*, &c. expressed or understood, or when doubt is implied.

EXAMPLES.

- | | |
|----------------------------------|---|
| 1. J'écrivais une lettre hier, | I <i>was writing</i> a letter yesterday |
| quand il entra, | day when he came in |
| Nous dinions lorsqu'elle arriva, | We <i>were dining</i> when she arrived |

2. Il lui *écrivait* toutes les semaines, He *wrote* or *did write* to her every week (we may say *he used to write*, &c.)
- Henri quatre *était* un grand prince, il *aimait* son peuple, Henry the fourth *was* a great prince, he *loved* his people
- Quand j'*étais* à Paris, j'*allais* souvent à la chambre des députés, When I *was* in Paris, I often *went* (*used often to go*) to the house of commons (*chamber of deputies*)
3. George trois *avait* 82 ans quand il mourut, George the third *was* 82 years of age when he died
- Sa mère *était* belle femme, His mother *was* a handsome woman
- Alexandre le grand *aimait* trop la guerre, Alexander the great *was* too fond of war
- Je *lisais* quand vous *entrâtes*, I *was reading* when you came in

Obs. In the preceding sentence *lisais* expresses a *continuation*, or *doing*; but *entrâtes* expresses an event that is perfectly past, consequently not *continued*: but in the following sentences both the verbs express *continuity*.

- Je *lisais* pendant qu'il *écrivait*, I *was reading* whilst he *was writing*
- J'*étais* au théâtre hier au soir pendant qu'elle *chantait* cette ariette, I *was* at the theatre last night whilst she *was singing* that arietta, or song
4. Si je *connaissais* vos intentions je les exécuterais, If I *knew* (*could I know*) your intentions I would execute them
- S'il *venait*, je le paierai, If he *come*, or *should he come*, I shall pay him
- Elle *perdait* la vue si vous n'*étiez* arrivé à tems, She *would have lost* her sight if you *had not arrived* in time

Obs. The *imperfect* may be said of an event that *was continued*, even though it occurred in a definitely past time; as, *yesterday*. Ex. Quand avez-vous perdu votre bourse? Je l'ai perdue ce matin; je l'*avais* hier au soir, when did you lose your purse? I have lost it this morning; I *had* it last night.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

My sister was learning her lesson when you arrived.
When I was in London I often went to the opera. Did

they corrupt your manners? Henry the fourth was a good king. They were spreading their nets. A vast number of people resorted thither from all parts. Titus was the delight of mankind. Meanwhile they were coming near the cottage. They heard the neighing of a young horse that was capering, &c. My sister was handsome. If he come, you will tell him. If he loved her, he would marry her. When he was speaking, we were looking. The women and old men were intrusted with the domestic concerns. If he had studied the Roman history.

To learn, *apprendre*
to corrupt, *corrompre*
manners, *mœurs*, m. pl.
to spread, *étendre*
net, *filet*, m.
vast number, *infinité*
people, *monde*
to resort, *accourir*
delight, *délices*, f. pl.
mankind, *genre humain*, m.

to come near, *approcher de*
meanwhile, *pendant*
to hear, *entendre*
to be capering, *venir en bondissant*
to marry, *épouser*
old men, *vieillard*, m.
to intrust, *charger*; with, *de*
domestic concerns, *soin de ménage*

PRETERITE TENSE.

The preterite tense is used in speaking of an action, or event having happened in a definitely past time, and of which no part of the specified time remains; as, *hier*, yesterday; *la semaine passée*, ou *dernière*, last week; *l'année dernière*, ou *passée*, last year, or *l'an passé*, last year, &c. This tense is often used in relating historical events, although the present is sometimes used in its stead.

EXAMPLES.

J'allai* dimanche dernier à l'église,	I went to the church Sunday
Je reçus hier, la semaine passée, le mois dernier, des nouvelles de nos amis,	I received some news from our friends yesterday, last week, last month

* *Obs.* The preterite of the verb *être*, to be, is often used instead of the preterite of *aller*, to go; as, *Je fus hier à l'opéra*, I was at the opera yesterday, instead of *J'allai hier à l'opéra*, I went to the opera yesterday.

Je la <i>vis</i> hier,	I <i>saw</i> her yesterday
Elle <i>alla</i> hier à l'opéra,	She <i>went</i> to the opera yesterday
Ils <i>écrivirent</i> la semaine passée,	They <i>wrote</i> last week
Il <i>plut</i> tout le mois passé,	It <i>rained</i> all last month
L'année passée ne lui <i>fut</i> pas très favorable,	Last year <i>was</i> not very favorable for him
Les Romains <i>chassèrent</i> Tarquin de Rome,	The Romans <i>expelled</i> Tarquin from Rome
César <i>vint, vit, et conquit</i> ,	Cæsar <i>came, saw, and conquered</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

I saw the king last week. We went to the theatre last night. We heard great news yesterday. They wrote to him a month ago. The Spaniards conquered America in the sixteenth century. Charles the tenth, king of France, began to reign September 16th, 1824. We wrote to your sister ten days ago. Alexander attacked Darius, conquered him twice, and made his mother, wife, and daughters prisoners.

Last night, <i>hier au soir</i>	century, <i>siècle</i>
theatre, <i>comédie, f.</i>	to reign, <i>à régner</i>
a month ago, <i>il y a un mois</i>	ten days ago, <i>il y a dix jours</i>
Spaniard, <i>Espagnol</i>	him, <i>le</i>
to conquer, <i>conquérir</i>	to conquer, <i>vaincre</i>

FUTURE TENSE.

The simple future is used in French as in English, to denote that an action, or event shall, or will take place at some time that is not yet come, whether that time be specified or not.

EXAMPLES.

Je lui <i>écrirai</i> cet après-midi,	I <i>shall write</i> to him this afternoon
J' <i>irai</i> demain à la campagne,	I <i>shall go</i> into the country to-morrow
Nos corps <i>ressusciteront</i> au jour dernier,	Our bodies <i>will rise again</i> on the last day
Nous <i>aurons</i> la paix,	We <i>shall have</i> peace

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The future is used in French (*not the present as in English*) after the words *quand, lorsque, après que, aussitôt que, dès que, comme, &c.*; as, Il *fait* que l'homme travaille tandis qu'il est jeune afin qu'il vive *quand* il sera vieux, a young man must labor whilst he is young, in order that he may live *when* he is (*will be*) old.

2. The future has the signification of the imperative, when it expresses a command, or duty; as, Vous *aimerez* Dieu de tout votre cœur, you *should love* (*will love*) God with all your heart.

3. The future is frequently expressed by the present [*V. Obs. 2, p. 251*]; as, I *am going*, &c. is expressed by *Je vais, ou je m'en vais, &c.* Ex. Je *vais*, ou je *m'en vais* partir, I *am going* to set out: but the future is expressed by *devoir* when the event or precise time cannot be determined; as, Le roi *doit* partir pour Brighton vers le mois de Juin, the king *is to* set out for Brighton about the month of June.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

We shall write to you next week. You will see him in the city to-morrow. I am going to write to my uncle. I shall write this evening. He will carry your goods on board the packet to-morrow. We shall go to Paris next week. We shall have war. The king is to return from Brighton about the middle of August.

To carry, *porter*
goods, *effets*
on board, *à bord*
packet, *paquebot*

(the) war, *la guerre*
to return, *revenir*
middle, *milieu*
August, *Août*

CONDITIONAL.

The *simple conditional* denotes the possibility of an action or event taking place, under certain conditions, either at the present or some future time. This tense or mood is generally used before or after the imperfect preceded by *si*: but the infinitive or subjunctive follows *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, *souhaiter*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Il <i>lirait</i> s'il <i>avait</i> des livres,	He <i>would read</i> if he had books
Si vous <i>demandiez</i> cette place,	If you ask for that place,
on vous la <i>donnerait</i> ,	they <i>would give</i> it to you
Nous nous <i>épagnerions</i> bien	We <i>should spare</i> ourselves
des regrets, si nous <i>savions</i>	many troubles, if we knew
modérer nos passions,	how to, or <i>could</i> moderate
	our passions
<i>Voudriez</i> -vous me <i>faire</i> un	<i>Would</i> you do me a kind-
plaisir?	ness?
Je <i>voudrais</i> , ou je <i>souhaiterais</i>	I <i>wish</i> it may be fine on
qu'il <i>fît</i> beau Lundi,	Monday
<i>Pourriez</i> -vous me prêter cent	<i>Could</i> you lend me a hundred
livres sterling?	pounds?
Je <i>voudrais</i> aller avec vous,	I <i>want</i> to go with you

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

We should taste many pleasures, if we knew how to make a good use of our time. I would settle (*would do*) your business before long, if it only depended upon me. You would have a (*the*) fever, if you ate of that fruit. He would oblige you, if you were to speak to him. Would you have the goodness to lend me five guineas? Could you lend me your horse? Could you suppose your son capable of ingratitude?

To taste, *goûter*
pleasure, *jouissance*

knew how to make, *savions*
faire

Use, <i>usage</i>	fever, <i>fièvre</i>
business, <i>affaire</i>	to oblige, <i>rendre service</i>
before long, <i>avant peu</i>	goodness, <i>bonté</i>
only, <i>uniquement</i> ; upon, <i>de</i>	to lend me, <i>de me prêter</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The conditional serves to express a wish; as, *Je serais, ou j'aurais été content d'obtenir votre suffrage*, I *should be, or should have been* satisfied to obtain, or have obtained *your approbation*.

2. The conditional is often used for the simple and compound present; as, *J'aimerais que l'on travaillât à former le cœur et l'esprit de la jeunesse, ce devrait être le principal but de l'éducation. Pourriez-vous croire votre fils capable d'ingratitude? L'auriez-vous soupçonné d'un vice si déshonorant.* In the first and second sentences the conditional is used for the simple present, they signify, *J'aime qu'on travaille, &c. Pouvez-vous croire votre fils, &c.* and in the third for the compound present: *P'avez-vous soupçonné, &c.*—[*V. Gram. des Grammaires*, p. 565.]

3. The conditional is sometimes used, instead of the future, after the conjunctions *que* and *pourquoi*; as, *Elle a promis qu'elle viendrait*, she has promised to *come*, that she *will come*. On m'a dit *que* votre frère *viendrait* à Londres l'année prochaine, I have been told *that* your brother *will come* to London next year. *Pourquoi violerait-il un des devoirs les plus saints?* why *will he (would he)* violate one of the most sacred duties?

II. On the Compound Tenses.

COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

THE *compound of the present*, in French, generally corresponds to the *perfect* in English, and is used to express that an action, or event happened, and was perfectly finished in a time that has not entirely passed or is not determined; such as, in an *age, a life time, year, month, week, day, hour, &c.* of which some part still remains.

EXAMPLES.

Je l'ai vu ce matin,	I have seen him this morning
Dieu a formé le ciel et la	God has formed (or formed)
terre de rien,	heaven and earth from
	nothing
Il a appris la langue fran-	He has learned the French
çaise,	language
J'ai vu votre frère aujourd'-	I have seen your brother to
hui,	day
Avez-vous été à la comédie	Have you been to the play
ce soir ? Non, Monsieur ;	this evening ? No, Sir ;
mais j'y ai été une fois cette	but I have been once this
semaine,	week
J'ai écrit une lettre à votre	I have written a letter to
frère aujourd'hui,	your brother to day

OBSERVATIONS.

1. The compound of the present, in French, is often rendered by the imperfect in English ; as,

Quand avez-vous perdu votre	When did you lose your watch ?
montre ?	
Où l'avez-vous vu,	Where did you see him
Il est arrivé ce mois-ci,	He arrived (or has arrived) this
	month
Il y a trois jours que je lui en ai	It is three days ago since I spoke
parlé,	to him about it
Il a été avec eux après dîner,	He was with them in the after-
	noon
Ils sont arrivés chez eux ce matin,	They came home this morning
Avez-vous jamais voyagé en France ?	Did you ever travel in France ?
Oui, j'y ai voyagé,	Yes, I have
N'êtes-vous pas allés à Rome ?	Did you not go to Rome ?
Je lui ai écrit depuis que je vous	I have written to him since I saw
ai vu,	you

2. The English *perfect* or *present* of the *passive*, with the word *just* is rendered in French by *venir* in an active sense, and by *ne faire que* in a neuter sense ; as,

Je viens de le voir passer,	I have just seen him pass
Il ne fait que de sortir,	He is but just gone out
Nous venons d'apprendre que votre	We have just heard (learnt) that
frère viendra,	your brother will come

3. It is not a fault to use indifferently, in French, either the *compound present*, or *preterite*, particularly in representing historical events ; as,
Troie *a été*, ou *fut* détruite par les Grecs, Troy *was* destroyed by the Greeks

J'*ai écrit*, ou j'*écrivis* hier à Fontainebleau, I *wrote* to Fontainebleau yesterday
[V. Gram. des Grammaires, p. 501.]

We may also equally say [v. Sicard, p. 218 ; and Chambaud, p. 278.]

Cicéron <i>était</i> un grand orateur,	}	Cicero <i>was</i> a great orator
Cicéron <i>a été</i> un grand orateur,		
Cicéron <i>fut</i> un grand orateur,		

4. The *simple present* is used in French, and the *perfect*, or *compound of the present* in English, to express a continued state, or action ; as,

Combien y a-t-il que vous *êtes* ici ? How long *have* you *been* (*are* you) here ?

Il y a trois ans que je *suis* ici, I *have been* (*am*) here three years

5. This tense is sometimes used instead of the future ; as,

<i>Avez-vous bientôt fait!</i> —Attendez,	<i>Shall</i> you soon <i>have done</i> ?—Wait,
j' <i>ai fini</i> dans un moment,	I <i>shall have finished</i> , or <i>done</i> in a moment

PRACTICE ON THE RULE AND OBSERVATIONS.

I have had a (*the*) fever this year, this spring, this month, this week, to day. We have seen the king this morning. Where did you see him ? I have heard great news to day. The emperor Alexander died (*is dead*) this year. Our age has produced many great men. Have you been to Paris this year. It is three years since I went (*am gone*). We have but just begun. She is just dead. Your mother is just gone out. Molière has been dead (*is dead*) more than a hundred years.

Morning, *matin*
heard, *appris*
news, *nouvelles*
emperor, *empereur*

age, *siècle*
to produce, *produire*
since, *que* ; but, *ne* — *que*
dead, *expirer*

COMPOUND OF THE IMPERFECT.

The *compound of the imperfect*, in French, corresponds to the *pluperfect of the active voice*, or *imperfect of the passive*, in English; it represents an event not only as passed; but as passed before something else occurred which is also passed; as,

J'avais déjeuné quand vous	I had breakfasted when you
vîntes me demander,	came to ask for me
Il était sorti quand nous	He was gone out when we
allâmes chez lui,	went to his house
Il avait fini son thème que	He had finished his exercise
vous n'aviez pas encore	and you had not yet begun
commencé le votre,	yours

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

I had written my letter when he came in. He had not had his dinner when you came to ask for him. Were they gone out when you went to their house? We had dined when she arrived. Had you supped when my brother came in? How long had you been in Paris when your sister arrived?

OBSERVATIONS.

1. This tense is used when the first clause of the sentence is the principal object the speaker has in view, but the *compound of the preterite* is used when the principal object of the speaker is in the following clause; as, *J'avais déjeuné quand vous vîntes me demander*, in this sentence the attention is directed to the *compound of the imperfect*, and not to the time of *your coming*. But when the *compound of the preterite* is used instead of the *compound of the imperfect* the attention is then directed to the preterite in the second clause; Ex. *Quand j'eus reconnu mon erreur, je fus honteux des mauvais procédés que j'avais eus à son égard*, when I had acknowledged my error, I was ashamed of the bad proceedings which I had made in that respect: here my intention is to say, *Que je fus honteux, &c.* but only *Après que j'eus reconnu mon erreur.*—[*V. Gram. des Grammaires*, p. 501.]

2. The English use the *pluperfect*, and the French the *simple imperfect*, to express that actions, or events have continued; as, *Combien y avait-il que vous étiez ici?* how long had you been here? *Il y a quatre ans que je le connais*, I have known, or I have been acquainted with him four years.

COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

This tense, like the *simple preterite*, denotes that an action happened in a time of which no part remains; but it most commonly expresses that an action was completed before another which is likewise past. This tense is always accompanied by conjunctions, or adverbs of time; as, *après que, aussitôt que, d'abord que, dès que, lorsque, quand, hier, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

Après que j'eus fini ma lettre,	After I had finished my letter
elle me pria de lui en écrire une,	she desired me to write one for her
Dès que le parlement fut assemblé, l'émeute cessa,	As soon as the parliament was assembled the tumult ceased
J'eus diné hier dans un instant,	I dined (had dined) yesterday in an instant
L'affaire fut bientôt faite,	The business was soon done

Obs. When any part of the time remains in which we still are, then the compound of the present, which sometimes takes two participles, or the simple imperfect is used; as, *Elle est venue me voir aujourd'hui*, she came to see me to-day. *Quand j'ai eu fini ma lettre, elle m'a prié de lui écrire une*, when I had finished my letter, she desired (had desired) me to write one for her. *J'étais à écrire quand elle est entrée*, I was writing when she came in—[V. Chambaud, p. 279.] We may say, *Dès que j'ai eu diné je suis parti*, when I had dined I set out: but it is better to avoid using this tense, which we may do by substituting *après*, as the preterite of the infinitive; *Ex. Après avoir diné je suis parti*, after I had dined I set out.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

When they had done playing they began to sing. I had written to him the week before. When I had received your letter I gave it to my sister. As soon as I had breakfasted yesterday it struck twelve. I had done breakfast, or had breakfasted this morning at eight o'clock. When I had dined I set out, or after I had dined I set out. As soon as we had supped we set off for Naples.

Done (finished), achevé	it struck twelve, midi sonna
began, se mirent	for, pour

PRE.

COMPOUND OF THE FUTURE.

te, det.

The *compound of the future*, in French, corresponds to what is called the *second future*, in English, but it is sometimes Englished by the perfect. This tense denotes that an action or event will have occurred, and be past, when before another future action or event happens, or will open : but when a question is asked, the subsequent *ant* is not always mentioned.

id, p.

EXAMPLES.

sera.

sera parti de chez nous,	He will be gone from our
quand vous reviendrez,	house when you come back
	(will come back) or return
dès que j'aurai fini mes	As soon as I have done my
affaires je sortirai,	business I shall go out
quand j'aurai soupé il entrera,	When I have supped (shall have supped) he will come in
quand aurez-vous fini votre thème ? A trois heures,	When will you have finished your exercise ? At three o'clock

Obs. This sentence expresses that an action will be accomplished before the hour of three takes place.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

When I have had (*shall have had*) the honor of seeing you at our house, I shall go to see you. When you have done (*shall have done*) your business, you will come to see me. We shall be gone when you return (*will return*). I shall play when I have written (*shall have written*). You will be paid when you have finished your work. The two houses will have finished their business when the king comes (*will come*) to prorogue them.

Honor, *honneur*
to play, *jouer*
work, *ouvrage*, m.

house, *chambre*
them, *les*
to prorogue, *proroger*

COMPOUND OF THE CONDITIONAL

This to
happened
most con-
before an
accompan-
que, auss
hier, &c.

Après que
elle me
écrire un
Dès que
assemblée

J'eus diné
stant,
L'affaire f

Obs. Who
compound o
simple imp
come to see
écrire une,
to write on
writing wh
que j'ai eu
to avoid us
the preter
I had dinc

A compound of the conditional denotes that something
was done in a past time, if the condition
had been fulfilled, or had taken
place.

EXAMPLES.

The minister would have
given him that place if he
had asked for it
He would have (would be)
gone into the country at
his time permitted him
should have written to me
a month ago, if I had
known your address,
direction
should have written to you
a week ago, if I had
your brother before

Je vous aurais écrit
une semaine, si vous
votre frere auparavant.

Obs. 1. *Aurait* marks more precisely the time at which a thing would
have been undertaken, and *eût*, at which it would have been finished.
2. The conditional is used with *si* when doubt or uncertainty
exists, as, Demandez-lui s'il aurait vu avec nous, supposé qu'il
passait en d'affaire.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Who
had w
your
faste
had
din
we

We should have been to see you if the weather had
been fine. I would have settled (done) your business.
I had mentioned it to me (if) you had spoken of it to me.
My brother would have written to you a week ago if he
had known where you lived. I should have gone to France
if I had had my time permitted me.
I should have, *aurais*, or *eût*
had, *aurait*, or *eût*

Syntax of Moods and Tenses.

CORRESPONDENCE of the tenses in the indicative mood.

SIMPLE TENSES.

The *present* corresponds

To the pres.	}	Je <i>lis</i>	{	quand vous <i>lisez</i> .
. . . . comp. pres.				quand vous <i>avez lu</i> .

The *imperfect* corresponds

To the imp.	}	Je <i>lisais</i>	{	quand vous <i>écriviez</i> .
. . . . pret.				quand vous <i>écrivîtes</i> .
. . . . comp. pres.				quand vous <i>avez écrit</i> .
. . . . comp. imp.				quand vous <i>aviez écrit</i> .

The *preterite* corresponds

To the pret. Quand vous le *voulûtes*, je *vins*.

The *future* corresponds

To the pres.	}	Je <i>partirai</i>	{	si vous le <i>désirez</i> .
. . . comp. pres.				si vous <i>avez fini</i> votre ouvrage.
. . . simp. fut.				quand vous <i>voudrez</i> .
. . . comp. fut.				quand vous l' <i>aurez dit</i> .

✓ The *conditional* corresponds

To the simple cond.	}	Quand un coupable <i>échapperait</i> au châtiment, il n' <i>échapperait</i> pas aux remords.	
. . . simp. imp.		{	Je vous <i>aiderais</i> volontiers de ma bourse, si j' <i>étais</i> plus heureux.
. . . . comp. imp.	{		Je vous <i>croirais</i> , si vous n' <i>aviez</i> pas <i>eu</i> la malheureuse habitude de mentir.

COMPOUND TENSES.

The *compound present* corresponds

To the comp. pres.	} <i>j'ai lu</i> {	aussitôt que vous l' <i>avez voulu</i> .
. . . . simp. imp.		pendant que vous <i>écriviez</i> .
. . . . comp. pres.		après que vous <i>avez eu dîné</i> .

The *compound of the imperfect* corresponds

To the simp. imp.	} <i>j'avais lu</i> {	quand vous <i>entriez</i> .
. . . . simp. pret.		quand vous <i>entrâtes</i> .
. . . . comp. pres.		quand vous <i>êtes entré</i> .
. . . . comp. pret.		quand vous <i>fûtes entré</i> .
. . . . comp. imp.		que vous n' <i>étiez</i> pas encore <i>entré</i> .

The *compound of the preterite* corresponds

To the simp. pret.	} {	Quand j' <i>eus lu</i> , vous <i>entrâtes</i> .
		Après que j' <i>eus lu</i> , on me <i>demanda</i> .
		Quand j' <i>eus fini</i> , j'y <i>allai</i> .

The *compound of the future* corresponds

To the simp. fut.	} {	Quand vous <i>aurez fini</i> , je <i>partirai</i> .
		J' <i>aurai fini</i> , quand vous <i>arriverez</i> .

The *compound of the conditional* corresponds

To the comp. imp.	} {	Les Romains <i>auraient conservé</i> l'empire de la terre, s'ils <i>avaient</i> <i>conservé</i> leurs anciennes vertus.
. . . . comp. pret. sub.		J' <i>aurais été</i> content, si j' <i>eusse pu</i> vous être utile.
. . . . comp. cond.	} {	Quand Alexandre <i>aurait conquis</i> toute la terre, il n' <i>aurait pas</i> <i>été</i> satisfait.

[*Vide Grammaire des Grammaires*, p. 522.]

Subjunctive Mood.

The *subjunctive* or *subjoined mood* is used when any doubt or uncertainty is implied; it has no determinate sense unless preceded or followed by an affirmative or negative expression or phrase on which it depends.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

This tense, though under the same form in French, represents either a *present* or *future* time, depending upon the sense in which it is used. It is sometimes Englished by the *present subjunctive*, or the *present* and *future indicative*, and also by the *infinitive* and *imperfect subjunctive* when they denote futurity.

EXAMPLES.

Comportez-vous de telle sorte que vous <i>meritiez</i> l'estime des gens de bien,	Conduct yourself in such a manner, or so that you <i>may merit</i> the esteem of good men
Je souhaite qu'il <i>vienne</i> , Votre cousin est très-modeste, quoiqu'il <i>soit</i> très-instruit,	I wish he <i>would come</i> Your cousin is very modest, although he is (<i>may be</i>) very well informed
J'espère qu'il <i>vienne</i> ,	I hope he <i>will come</i> (<i>may come</i>)
Quoique vous <i>soyez</i> riche, vous n'êtes pas savant,	Although you <i>may be</i> rich, you are not learned
Je désire que vous <i>alliez</i> le voir,	I wish you <i>to go</i> , or <i>would go</i> to see him

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Send me a book, that I may read it. I do not believe he is come (*that he may be come*). I do not think he will come (*that he may come*). I wish you may succeed in your

undertaking. I doubt whether he will do it (*he may do it*). I wonder that you dare to do it (*should dare to do it*). He desires or wishes you to carry (*would carry*) this note expeditiously. Do you believe that she will do it?

That, *afin que*
to believe, *croire*
to think, *croire*
to succeed, *réussir*
undertaking, *entreprise*

I wonder, *je suis surpris*
to dare, *oser*
to carry, *porter*
expeditiously, *promptement*
note, *billet*, m.

PRETERITE SUBJUNCTIVE.

The *preterite* of the *subjunctive* denotes the same time as the *imperfect* of the *indicative*, with the difference that this tense expresses doubt, and sometimes denotes futurity.

EXAMPLES.

Il refusait la place qui lui était offerte, quoiqu'il fût bien en état de la remplir,	He refused the situation which was offered to him, although he <i>was</i> (<i>might be</i>) well qualified to fill it
Quoiqu'il la maltraitât souvent, elle était toujours gaie,	Although he often <i>ill treated</i> (<i>might often ill treat</i>) her, she was always merry
Je ne croyais pas que vous vinssiez avant le mois prochain,	I did not think you <i>would come</i> before the next month
Quelque vieille qu'elle fût, elle était belle,	However old she <i>might be</i> , she was handsome

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Did you suspect (*that*) he would not do it. Alexander the Great ordered, that all his subjects should worship him like a God. I should wish you to come (*that you should come*) next week only. He would wish you had taken (*that you should take*) more becoming measures. I should have feared that you would have struck him.

pect, <i>soupçonner</i>	like a, <i>comme un</i>
r, <i>ordonner</i>	becoming, <i>convenables</i>
s, <i>sujets</i>	should have feared, <i>aurais</i>
ship, <i>adorer</i>	<i>craint</i> ; to strike, <i>frapper</i>

COMPOUND OF THE PRESENT.

s tense is generally preceded by the *present*, or *future*
 — *indicative*, or *imperative*, followed by a *conjunction*,
 denotes that an action was accomplished, or will be
 nplished before, or at a time specified by the preceding

EXAMPLES.

<i>doute que vous n'ayez fait</i>	I doubt (<i>think</i>) you have made
<i>es plaintes de moi,</i>	complaints of me
<i>more qu'il soit venu,</i>	I do not know that he is
	(<i>may be</i>) come
<i>suis enchanté que vous</i>	I am delighted that you <i>have</i>
<i>yez fait la connaissance</i>	<i>become</i> (<i>should have become</i>)
<i>un homme aussi estima-</i>	acquainted with so worthy
<i>le,</i>	a man
<i>ne cachèterai pas cette</i>	I shall not seal that letter
<i>ettre que vous ne l'ayez</i>	before you <i>have read</i> it
<i>lue,</i>	

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

I fear you have complained (*that you may have made*
complaints) of me. They are delighted that you have (*should*
ave) become acquainted with them. Although he may
 ave read many books, he knows nothing. I believe I shall
 e ready before they come (*may be come*). Conduct your-
 elves in such a manner, that you may be loved and
 esteemed by your masters.

To fear, <i>craindre</i>	in such a manner, <i>de ma-</i>
to complain, <i>plaindre</i>	<i>nière</i>
to conduct, <i>comporter</i>	to esteem, <i>estimer</i> ; by, <i>de</i>

COMPOUND OF THE PRETERITE.

This tense, like the corresponding tense of the indicative, denotes that an action was completed before another event happened, which is also passed; but it has sometimes a future signification.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Je doutais que vous n'eussiez fait des plaintes de moi,</i>	<i>I doubted you : would have made complaints of me</i>
<i>Ils n'ont pas cru que je fusse arrivé avant eux,</i>	<i>They did not think that I should have arrived before them</i>
<i>Elle voudrait que vous eussiez fini quand elle reviendra,</i>	<i>She would wish you to have done (that you should have done) when she returns</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

I did not believe that you would have done so soon. We did not know that you had (*might have*) embraced that profession. They did not believe that he had learnt (*could have learnt*) geography. You did not believe that I should have arrived before you. I should wish them to have done when I return.

So soon, <i>sitôt</i>	learnt, <i>appris</i>
to embrace, <i>embrasser</i>	geography, <i>géographie</i>

Correspondence of the tenses of the subjunctive with those of the indicative and imperative.

RULE I.

When the verb, in the principal part of the sentence, is in the *present*, *future*, or *imperative*, then the *present subjunctive* is used in the subordinate part of the sentence: but the *simple* or *compound* of the *preterite* is employed after the *present*, when a conditional phrase is used.

EXAMPLES.

Je <i>crains</i> qu'il ne <i>vienn</i> e,	I <i>fear</i> lest he <i>should</i> come
Je <i>souhaite</i> qu'il <i>vienn</i> e,	I <i>wish</i> he <i>would</i> come
Je <i>crains</i> qu'il <i>vienn</i> e,	I <i>am afraid</i> he <i>will</i> come
Son père <i>défend</i> qu'il y <i>aille</i> ,	His father <i>forbids</i> his <i>going</i> there
Il <i>nie</i> qu'il l' <i>ait</i> pris,	He <i>denies</i> having taken it
Je <i>suis surpris</i> que vous <i>osiez</i> le faire,	I <i>wonder</i> that you <i>dare</i> to do it
Je n' <i>ai</i> rien <i>vu</i> qu'on <i>puisse</i> blâmer dans sa conduite,	I have seen nothing reprehensible in his conduct
Je <i>doute</i> qu'il le <i>fasse</i> ,	I <i>doubt</i> , or <i>question</i> whether he <i>will</i> do it
Je <i>veux</i> qu'il <i>crive</i> ,	I <i>will</i> have him <i>write</i>
J' <i>écris</i> qu'on m' <i>en</i> voie de l'argent,	I <i>am</i> writing to them to <i>send</i> me some money
Je <i>craindrai</i> qu'il <i>vienn</i> e,	I <i>shall be afraid</i> that he <i>will</i> come
Je ne <i>douterai</i> pas qu'il le <i>fasse</i> ,	I <i>shall</i> not <i>doubt</i> that he <i>will</i> do it
<i>Dites-lui</i> qu'il <i>revienn</i> e,	<i>Tell</i> him to <i>come back</i> (<i>that he should come back</i>)
Il <i>écrira</i> qu'on lui <i>en</i> voie de l'argent,	He <i>will</i> write to them to send him some money
Je <i>doute</i> que l'expérience nous les <i>fît</i> éviter,	I <i>doubt</i> whether experience <i>could have made</i> us avoid them
Je ne <i>pense</i> pas que cette affaire <i>eût</i> réussi sans votre protection,	I <i>do not think</i> that (<i>that</i>) business <i>could have succeeded</i> without your protection

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

They are afraid lest he should come. He will be afraid lest we should come. He must learn (*it is necessary that he should learn*) the English language. It will be necessary for him to learn (*that he should learn*) French. I fear that you have (*may have*) complained (*made some complaints*)

272 SYNTAX OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

of me. Tell him to go out (*that he should go out*). I am rejoiced at your having gained (*that you should have gained*) your law-suit.

To fear, <i>craindre</i>	complaint, <i>plainte</i> , f.
lest he, <i>qu'il ne</i>	to tell, <i>dire</i>
to be afraid, <i>craindre</i>	to go out, <i>sortir</i>
lest we, <i>que nous ne</i>	to rejoice, <i>ravir</i>
to be necessary, <i>falloir</i>	law-suit, <i>procès</i> , m.

RULE II.

When the verb, in the principal part of the sentence, is in the *simple* or *compound* of the *imperfect*, *preterite*, or *conditional*, then the *preterite* is used in the subordinate part of the sentence.

Obs. 1. With the compound of the present, we may put the second verb in the simple present, if it expresses an action which is doing, or may be doing at any time; but the compound of the present is used, if we wish to express a past action; as, Dieu *a entouré* les yeux de tuniques fort minces, transparentes au-devant, afin que l'on *puisse* voir à travers. Il *a fallu* qu'il *ait sollicité* ses juges, et qu'il *se soit informé* de plusieurs affaires.

2. The simple or compound of the preterite is used after the present when there is a third verb in the imperfect; as, *Croyez-vous* qu'ils *me refusassent*, si je *les en priais*? Do you *think* they *would refuse* me, if I *requested* it of them.

3. The subjunctive is used at the beginning of a sentence to express *desire*, *surprise*, &c. Ex. *Puissions-nous être heureux!* *may* we be happy!

EXAMPLES.

Je <i>craignais</i> qu'il <i>vînt</i> ,	I <i>was afraid</i> that he <i>would come</i>
Je <i>doutais</i> qu'il <i>la fît</i> ,	I <i>was in doubt</i> whether he <i>would do it</i>
J' <i>écrivais</i> qu'on <i>m'envoyât</i> de l'argent,	I <i>wrote</i> to them <i>to send</i> me some money
Il <i>a nié</i> (<i>il nia</i>) qu'il <i>l'eût</i> pris,	He <i>denied</i> having taken it
J' <i>étais surpris</i> qu'il <i>osât</i> le faire,	I <i>wondered</i> that he <i>dared to do it</i> .
Il <i>faudrait</i> que je <i>le fisse</i> ,	I <i>should be obliged to do it</i>
Je <i>voudrait</i> qu'il <i>écrivît</i> ,	I <i>would have him write</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

I was afraid lest he should come. I have been fearing lest he should come. I should be afraid lest he should come. He was obliged to learn (*it was necessary that he should learn*) French. He had been obliged to learn French. I was afraid that you had (*should have made complaints*) complained of me. I told him to go out (*that he should go out*). I should have told him to go out (*that he should go out*). I was rejoiced at your having (*that you should have*) gained the law-suit. He would have been rejoiced at your having gained the law-suit.

Correspondence of the tenses in the subjunctive mood.

SIMPLE TENSES.

The *present* of the *subjunctive* corresponds to, and follows

The pres. ind.	Je veux	} que tu viennes.
. . simp. fut. ind.	Je voudrai	
. . comp. fut. ind.	Quand j'aurai voulu	

The *preterite* of the *subjunctive* corresponds to, and follows

The imp. ind.	Je voulais	} que tu vinsses.
. . comp. imp. ind.	J'avais voulu	
. . simp. pret. ind.	Je voulus	
. . comp. pret. ind.	J'ai voulu	
. . simp. cond. ind.	Je voudrais	
. . comp. cond. ind.	J'aurais voulu	

The *compound* of the *present subjunctive* corresponds to, and follows

The simp. pres. ind.	Je veux	} que tu aies écrit.
. . comp. pres. ind.	J'ai voulu	
. . simp. fut. ind.	Je voudrai	
. . comp. fut. ind.	Quand j'aurai voulu	

The compound of the *preterite subjunctive* corresponds to, and follows

The comp. pres. ind.	J'ai voulu	} que tu <i>eusses</i> écrit. que tu <i>fusses</i> écrit.
. . simp. imp. ind.	Je voulais	
. . comp. imp. ind.	J'avais voulu	
. . simp. pret. ind.	Je voulus	
. . comp. pret. ind.	Quand j'eus voulu	
. . simp. cond. ind.	Je voudrais	
. . comp. cond. ind.	J'aurais voulu	

OBSERVATIONS ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. The subjunctive mood is used after *que*, in the second member of a sentence, or when *que* is preceded by verbs of *fearing, doubting, asking, forbidding, wishing, &c.*; as, Si vous m'aimez et *que* vous vouliez me le persuader, &c. if you love me and *wish* to persuade me of it, &c. Je crains *que* mon père ne soit mort, I *fear* my father is dead. Je doute *qu'il* le fasse, I *doubt* he will do it.

2. When preceded by the impersonals, *il faut*, I must, we must, &c.; *il importe*, it concerns, or matters; *il convient*, it becomes; *il est juste*, it is just; *il est injuste*, it is unjust; *il est important*, it concerns; as, Il faut *que* j'aille en ville, I *must* go to town. Il emporte à vos associés *que* vous partiez sur l'heure, it *concerns* your partners that you *should* set off immediately. Il est *juste* *qu'il* la voie, it is just that he *should* see her.

3. After the relatives *qui, que, dont, où*, or any relative pronoun preceded by a superlative, a negative, or by *seul, unique, premier, dernier, personne*, and conjunctions expressing doubt, &c.; as, Vous parlez du plus grand roi qui ait jamais existé, you speak of the *greatest* king that has ever existed. C'est la plus belle femme *que* je connaisse, she is the finest woman (*that*) I know. C'est le seul homme sur qui nous puissions compter, he is the *only* man upon whom we can rely.

4. Many verbs; such as, *savoir*, to know; *croire*, to believe, &c. and impersonals that denote *evidence, certainty, or probability*; as, Il est vrai, it is true; il est clair, it is clear; il y a, there is, &c. take the subjunctive after them when used *negatively, interrogatively, or conditionally*; but they take the indicative when used *affirmatively*, or when the event is positively known to the speaker, even though used *negatively or interrogatively*; as, Croyez-vous qu'il ait raison? Do you think he is right? Il n'est pas certain que j'aie raison, it is not certain that I am right. Je crois qu'il a raison, I believe he is right. Ne savez-vous pas qu'il est venu? do you not know that he is come? Il n'y a pas un homme qui soit plus estimé que lui, there is no man who is (*may be*) more esteemed than he; but the indicative is used when the negative is taken away; as, Il y a un homme qui est plus estimé que lui, there is a man who is more esteemed than he.

5. *Il semble*, with *que* and a noun or pronoun expressing the object, takes the indicative after it; but when there is no object, the subjunctive is used; as, *Il me semble que vous ayez peur*, it seems to me that you are afraid. *Il semble que vous ayez peur*, it seems that you are afraid.

6. Some conjunctions take the indicative or subjunctive after them, depending upon the sense of the sentence; if *determinate* and *positive*, they take the *indicative*; if not *positive*, the *subjunctive*. For those conjunctions which take the indicative or subjunctive, or both, *vide* pages 164, 166, and 168.

Examples to illustrate the preceding Observations, &c.

- | | |
|---------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| 1. S'il vient et qu'il me demande, | If he come and ask for me |
| Pourvu qu'il vienne et qu'il soit en | Provided he come and be in good |
| bonne santé, | health |
| Dites qu'on vienne de bonne heure, | Bid them come in time |
| Il ordonne qu'on les punisse, | He orders them to be punished |
| A Dieu ne plaise qu'on fasse, | God forbid that it should be done |
| Je n'ai pas voulu qu'il aint, | I did not wish him to come |
| Il ne permettrait pas qu'ils le jet- | He would not permit them to |
| assent, | throw it |
| 2. Il faut qu'il vienne, | He must come |
| Il importe qu'elle y soit, | It is of importance that she should |
| | be there |
| Il est juste qu'il le sache, | It is right for him to know it |
| Il n'y a pas moyen qu'elle échappe, | There is no way for her to escape |
| Il est surprenant qu'elle ait réussi, | It is surprising that she has suc- |
| | ceeded |
| Il est injuste qu'il soit puni, | It is unjust that he should be |
| | punished |
| C'est une chose fâcheuse qu'il soit | It is a grievous thing that he is |
| arrivé si tard, | come so late |
| Il est indifférent qu'il soit en An- | It is indifferent whether he be in |
| gleterre ou en Irlande, | England or Ireland |
| 3. Quoi-que je fasse, | Whatever I do (may do) |
| Quelques amis que j'aie, | Whatever friends I have (may have) |
| C'est la meilleure raison que vous | It is the best reason you can give |
| puissiez lui donner, | him |
| C'est le meilleur ouvrage qui soit, | It is the best work extant |
| Y en a-t-il qui le sache ? | Is there any one that knows it ? |
| Je cherche un domestique à qui je | I look for a servant whom I can |
| puisse m'offrir, | trust |
| Donnez-moi des raisons qui puissent | Give me reasons that can convince |
| me convaincre, | me |
| Je veux un cheval qui aille bien, | I want a horse that will go well |
| Je n'ai jamais vu d'homme qui eût | I never saw a man that had more |
| plus d'esprit que lui, | sense than he |
| Avez-vous un livre que je n'aie lu ? | Have you a book that I have not |
| | read ? |
| Afin que vous puissiez réussir, | In order that you may succeed |
| Bien qu'il me l'ait dit, | Although he told me of it |

Crainte qu'il ne <i>soit</i> fâché, A moins que vous n' <i>alliez</i> , Quoiqu'il <i>soit</i> pauvre, Quoiqu'il m' <i>offrît</i> tout l'or du monde,	Lest he <i>should be</i> angry Unless you <i>go</i> Poor as he <i>is</i> <i>Were</i> he to <i>offer</i> me all the gold in the world
4. Je sais qu'il <i>est</i> venu, Je ne savais pas qu'il <i>fût</i> venu, *Savez-vous qu'il <i>soit</i> venu? Je crois qu'il <i>viendra</i> , ou je crois qu'il <i>vienne</i> , Ne croyez-vous pas qu'il <i>viendra</i> ?	I know that he <i>is</i> come I did not know that he <i>was</i> come Do you know* whether he <i>is</i> come? I believe he <i>will come</i> , or I believe he <i>may come</i> Do you not believe that he <i>will come</i> ?
Croyez-vous qu'il <i>vienne</i> ? Je ne crois pas qu'il <i>vienne</i> , J'espère qu'il le <i>fera</i> , N'espérez-vous pas qu'il le <i>fera</i> ?	Do you believe that he <i>will come</i> ? I do not believe that he <i>will come</i> I hope he <i>will do it</i> Do you not hope that he <i>will do it</i> ?
Espérez-vous qu'il le <i> fasse</i> ? Je n'espère pas qu'il le <i> fasse</i> , Il est certain qu'il <i>est</i> mort, N'est-il pas certain qu'il <i>est</i> mort ? Est-il certain qu'il <i>soit</i> mort ? Il n'est pas certain qu'il <i>soit</i> mort, S'il est certain qu'il <i>soit</i> mort, Agissez de manière que, ou en sorte que, vous <i>réussissiez</i> , Il agit de manière qu'il <i>réussit</i> ,	Do you hope that he <i>will do it</i> : I do not hope that he <i>will do it</i> It is certain that he <i>is</i> dead Is it not certain that he <i>is</i> dead ? Is it certain that he <i>is</i> dead ? It is not certain that he <i>is</i> dead If it be certain that he <i>is</i> dead Act so as to <i>succeed</i> (so that you <i>may succeed</i>) He acts so as to <i>succeed</i>
5. Il lui semble que vous <i>avez</i> tort, Il semble que vous <i>ayez</i> tort, Il me semble que vous n' <i>êtes</i> pas si âgé, Il ne semble pas que vous <i>soyez</i> si âgé,	It seems to him that you <i>are</i> wrong It seems that you <i>are</i> wrong It seems to me that you <i>are</i> not so aged It does not seem that you <i>are</i> so aged

PRACTICE ON THE OBSERVATIONS.

Practice on Observation 1.

Perhaps he loves her, but is unwilling (*that he may wish*) to own it. We easily commit faults when we are young, and take (*and that we may take*) counsel only of our

* *Do you know that he is come ?* may be rendered by **savez-vous qu'il est venu ?* the question here does not imply any doubt on the part of the speaker, but is rather intended to give information to the hearer. Therefore we may, in many instances, use either the indicative or subjunctive depending upon the idea we wish to convey.

selves. I doubt whether he will come. I wish they (*one*) would make peace. He ordered the bad books to be burnt (*that one should burn the bad books*). I could wish that you lived near me. I will have him (*I will that he should*) obey me. I am sorry they have (*one may have*) deceived you. I fear that he is dead. I bid him learn (*that he should learn*) his lesson.

To own, *avouer*
easily, *bien*
to commit, *faire*
to wish, *souhaiter*
peace, *paix*, f.

to order, *ordonner*
to wish, *vouloir*
to live, *demeurer*
to deceive, *tromper*
to bid, *dire*

Practice on Observation 2.

He who speaks, must (*it is necessary that he who speaks should*) accommodate himself to the understanding of him who listens. It becomes you to speak to her. It is necessary for him to go to Paris. It is sufficient for him to have (*that he should have*) neglected nothing. It is impossible for him to recover.

to accommodate oneself to the	to be sufficient, <i>suffire</i>
understanding, <i>se mettre à</i>	to recover, <i>en revenir</i>
<i>la portée</i>	

Practice on Observation 3.

The best guard that a king can have, is the heart of his subjects. However learned he may be, he is not prudent. He is the most learned man that I know. He is the only one on whom I can rely. Have you any book that I have not read? Unless you come with me, he will not go. Though he is idle, he has some good qualities. Send me your book, that I may read it. I shall be ready before they are come (*may be come*). Retire, lest he should use you ill. Though he is very poor, yet he is happy.

Guard, *cortège*, f.
only one, *seul*

to use ill, *maltraiter*
that, *afin que*

Practice on Observation 4.

The Indicative.

It is certain that he will go. Is it not certain that he will go? It is true that he knew (*has known*) him. Is it not true that he knew him (*has known him*)? I know that he is come. Do you not know that he is come? I believe that he has done it. Do you not believe that he has done it? It is probable that he will come. It appears that he is right. It is evident that he is wrong. Tell him that I will come. It is said that the king of Spain is arrived. It seems to me that he is (*has*) right. It seems to me that you are sorry. Do you think that an honest man is not more estimable than a rogue? If you are persuaded that he is an honest man, and (*that he*) wishes for your welfare, follow his counsels. Do you think that he would go on his journey?

Rogue, *fripon*
to wish for, *vouloir*
welfare, *bien*
to go on one's journey, *aller*
voyager

The Subjunctive.

Is it certain that he will go? It is not certain that he will go. If it be certain that he will go. Is it true that he knew him? If it is true that he knew him. I do not know that he is come. Do you believe that he has done it? I do not believe that he has done it. Is it probable that he will come? It does not appear that he is right. Is it evident that he is wrong? Do not tell him that I am at home. Tell him that I will come (*may come*). It is not said whether the king of Spain is arrived. It seems that he is right. It does not seem that she is sick. Do you think that one can become learned without studying methodically? I do not think there can be (*any*) true friendship between persons who are not virtuous.

methodically, *avec méthode*
be, *y avoir*
friendship, *amitié*
between, *entre*

May, Might, &c. used as Principal Verbs.

RULE.

WHEN *may* and *might*, *can* and *could*, *will* and *would*, *shall* and *should*, *must* and *ought*, are used as principal verbs, and not as auxiliaries, they are rendered, in French, by *pouvoir*, *savoir*, *être capable*, *vouloir*, *devoir*, or *falloir*.

Obs. *Would have*, *could have*, *should have*, or *might have*, are rendered, in French, by some tense of *avoir*, and the participles *voulu*, *pu*, or *du*. The compound present is often rendered by *vouloir*, *pouvoir*, or *devoir*, and the infinitive *avoir* followed by a participle.

EXAMPLES.

POUVOIR.	MAY. MIGHT.
Je <i>puis</i> y aller, ou rester chez moi,	I <i>may</i> go there, or stay at home
Vous <i>pouvez</i> vous promener dans le jardin, mais non dans le bois,	You <i>may</i> walk in the garden, but not in the wood
En montant sur un arbre aussi haut, ils <i>auraient pu</i> se tuer,	By climbing so high a tree, they <i>might have</i> killed themselves
Vous <i>pourriez avoir</i> été trompés,	You <i>might have been</i> deceived
POUVOIR. SAVOIR. ÊTRE CAPABLE DE.	CAN. COULD.
<i>Pouvez-vous</i> me prêter votre canif? Non, je ne <i>puis</i> pas,	Can you lend me your pen-knife? No, I <i>cannot</i>
Vous <i>savez</i> lire aussi bien que lui,	You <i>can</i> read as well as he
Il <i>est capable de</i> parler toute une journée sans s'arrêter une minute,	He <i>can</i> speak (<i>is capable of speaking</i>) a whole day, without stopping a minute
Je <i>pourrais</i> courir aussi vite que vous,	I <i>could</i> run as fast as you
Je n' <i>ai pas pu</i> dormir,	I <i>could not</i> sleep
Je ne <i>pus</i> jamais lui faire goûter vos raisons,	I <i>could</i> never make him relish your arguments
Je <i>pus</i> le faire autrefois,	I <i>could</i> do it formerly
<i>Pourriez-vous</i> venir demain?	<i>Could</i> you come to-morrow?
Je <i>pourrais</i> aller, si je voulais,	I <i>could or might</i> go, if I would

VOULOIR.

This verb is used to express a *desire*, *will*, *wish*, or an *inclination*. It is also Englished by *will have*, *shall*, *intend*, *would have*, &c.

Je *veux* qu'il écrive,
Voulez-vous venir avec moi,
Elle *veut* partir demain,

Il le fera quand il *voudra*,

Voulez-vous que je vous découvre la cause de tous ces désordres ?

Je *voudrais* que vous eussiez entendu ce qu'il a dit,

Je *voudrais* qu'il écrivît,
J'*aurais voulu* qu'il écrivît,
J'*aurais voulu* écrire à votre frère,

On vous donnera tout ce que vous *voudrez*,

Malgré votre obstination, je *veux* que vous alliez à l'école,

WILL. WOULD. SHALL.

I *will have* him write
Will you go (come) with me
She *wishes*, *intends*, or *has a desire* to set out to-morrow

He will do it when he *pleases*, *likes*, or *has a mind* to do it

Shall I lay before you the cause of all these disorders ?

I *wish* you had heard what he said

I *would have* him write

I *would have had* him write

I *wanted*, or *wished* to write to your brother

They will give you all that you *want*, or *wish for*

You *shall* go to school in spite of your obstinacy

DEVOIR.

Je *dois*, ou je *devrais* aimer mes parens,

J'ai *dû* vous représenter l'affaire,

Vous *deviez* vous lever ce matin de bonne heure,

Vous *auriez dû* vous lever ce matin plus de bonne heure,

Vous *auriez dû* lui écrire auparavant,

SHOULD, used for OUGHT.

I *should love*, or *ought to love* my relations

I *should have* represented the case to you

You *should* rise early this morning

You *should have* got up earlier this morning

You *should have* written, or *ought to have* written to him before

FAIRE. AVOIR.

Faites-moi le plaisir de venir chez nous,

J'ai *fait* mon devoir,

Il *deut* ou *fit* son devoir,

~~avez-vous~~ *fait* cela ?

DO. DID. DONE.

Do me the pleasure of coming to our house

I have *done* my duty

He *did* his duty

Did you do that ?

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

You may go out if you wish or like. May I go out this afternoon? Can you lend me a guinea. She can write a whole day without stopping. I might have lost a great deal of time. You can write your letter before dinner. I could not go this week. You cannot go out to-day. You shall go home, notwithstanding your obstinacy. I will not have that dirty book. I would have done my exercise before now (*this time*). I could have done that this morning. I wanted, or wished you to write to him. He wanted us to write to you. You should have walked early this morning. You should love your father and mother. You should have written to me since you knew my address. I did that myself.

Afternoon, *après midi*
 notwithstanding, *malgré*
 dirty, *vilain*

exercise, *thème*
 now, *auparavant*
 to walk, *se promener*

Infinitive Mood.

THE *infinitive*, in French, is not preceded by a preposition when it is used as a nominative, like the English *infinitive* or *active participle*, in which case it may be considered as a noun.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Mourir</i> n'est rien quand on a bien vécu,	<i>To die</i> , or <i>dying</i> is nothing when we have lived well
<i>Secourir</i> les pauvres est une action digne de louange,	<i>Relieving</i> , or <i>to relieve</i> the poor is a praiseworthy action
<i>Être</i> trop mécontent de soi est une faiblesse,	<i>To be</i> too much dissatisfied with oneself is a weakness

Obs. The infinitive is used without any preposition after the verbs

Aller, to go
croire, to believe
compter, to reckon
daigner, to condescend
déclarer, to declare
devoir, to owe
entendre, to hear
envoyer, to send
espérer, to hope
faire, to do
faillir, to be necessary
laisser, to let

Nier, to deny
oser, to dare
paraître, to appear
prétendre, to pretend
puvoir, to be able
savoir, to know
sembler, to appear
souhaiter, to wish
soutenir, to maintain
venir, to come
voir, to see
vouloir, to be willing

EXAMPLES.

Voulez-vous <i>aller la voir</i> ?	Will you <i>go to see</i> her ?
Croyez-vous <i>avoir raison</i> ?	<i>Do you think you are</i> in the right ?
Il ne <i>sait se taire</i> ,	He cannot <i>keep silence</i>
Je les en <i>ferai repentir</i> ,	I <i>shall make</i> them <i>repent</i> of it
Je le leur <i>ai vu faire</i> ,	I <i>saw</i> them <i>do it</i>
Je ne l' <i>ai pas laissé écrire</i> ,	I <i>did not let</i> her <i>write</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE ON THE RULE AND OBSERVATION.

To whom can I apply for protection ? I have heard your sister sing that song. To be, or being too satisfied with oneself is a folly. To speak, or speaking too much is dangerous. To gratify one's ambition is dangerous. How can I prevent that ? I will cause your orders to be executed. Did you not let him write to your uncle. You may go out when you please. He can do it if he will. Why speak to him about it ? He came to see you. It was insulting him too much. Let him finish his discourse.

To apply, *s'adresser*
 to hear, *entendre*
 song, *ariette*, f.
 folly, *sottise*
 to gratify, *satisfaire* à
 one's, *son*

to prevent, *empêcher*
 uncle, *oncle*
 if he will, *s'il veut*
 why, *pourquoi*
 about it, *en* ; to let, *laisser*
 to finish, *achever*

INFINITIVE WITH *DE*.

RULE I.

The *infinitive* with *de* is generally used when the English *noun, adjective, participle, or verb*, is followed by an *infinitive* with *to*, and when the *active participle* is preceded by the preposition *of, from, for, with, at, upon, about, or after*.

EXAMPLES.

Ils sont indignes de vivre,	They are unworthy to live
Il a eu le plaisir de vous voir chez lui,	He has had the pleasure of seeing you at his house
Elle a acquis l'art de parler,	She has acquired the art of speaking
Il est capable de le faire,	He is capable of doing it
Nous sommes fâchés de vous interrompre,	We are sorry to interrupt you
Il le blâme d'avoir écrit,	He blames him for having written
Il se contentait de vivre ici,	He was contented to live here
Quand il eut cessé de parler,	When he had done speaking
Il se flatte de savoir tout,	He flatters himself with knowing every thing

Although the author has endeavoured to give rules on the use of the *infinitive* with *de, à, and pour*, yet there are so many exceptions to them, that he must acknowledge with the best French Grammarians, that no positive rules have or can be given: hence their use must, in a great measure, be learned by practice; for which purpose the writer has introduced a variety of examples.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

It is dangerous to trust every body. I am very glad to see you. He is sorry to see you sick. He is on the point of dying. I am wearied with writing. I proposed calling on you. I had an opportunity of serving him. He had the intention of calling on you. It is time to set out. He intends to go and see you to-morrow evening.

To trust, <i>se fier</i>	to call, <i>passer</i>
glad, <i>aise</i> ; sorry, <i>fâché</i>	on, <i>chez</i>
on, <i>sur</i> ; wearied, <i>las</i>	opportunity, <i>occasion</i>
to propose, <i>se proposer</i>	to intend, <i>se proposer</i>

OBSERVATIONS.

1. *De* is used before the infinitive after verbs that govern a noun or pronoun in the *dative* or *accusative*.

2. *De* is used after any adjective preceded by the impersonals, *il est*, *il suffit*, *il semble*, *c'est*, *c'est que*, &c. or the verbs *venir*, *ne faire que*, &c.

3. *De* is used after *que*, when *que* follows a word of comparison.

1. N'oubliez pas d'apporter vos livres,	<i>Do not forget to bring your books</i>
Elle refusa de lui parler,	<i>She refused to speak to him</i>
Il m'empêcha de travailler,	<i>He hindered me from working</i>
Il a négligé d'étudier sa leçon,	<i>He neglected to study his lesson</i>
N'entreprenez pas de la débaucher,	<i>Do not undertake to seduce her</i>
Avez-vous promis d'y aller ?	<i>Did you promise to go there ?</i>

2. Il est impoli de ne pas dire son nom,	<i>It is impolite not to mention one's name</i>
Il suffit de lui dire,	<i>It will be sufficient to tell him</i>
Ce n'est pas une petite chose que de savoir se taire,	<i>It is not a trifle to know how to be silent</i>
C'est une belle chose que de garder le secret,	<i>It is a good thing to keep a secret</i>
C'est une grande folie que de vouloir être sage tout seul,	<i>To wish to be the only wise man is a great folly</i>
C'est une grande folie à elle que de refuser mes offres,	<i>It is a great folly in her to refuse my offers</i>
Je viens de le quitter, ou Je ne fais que de le quitter,	<i>I have just left him</i>
Il ne lui convenait point de prendre des airs,	<i>It does not become him to give himself airs</i>
Il importe de bien employer son temps,	<i>It is of importance to employ one's time well</i>
Il est barbare d'insulter aux malheureux,	<i>It is barbarous to insult the unfortunate</i>
Ce serait lui faire une injure que de nous méfier de lui,	<i>It would be doing him an injury to mistrust him</i>

3. Il est plus beau de vaincre ses passions que de vaincre ses ennemis,	<i>It is more noble to conquer our passions than our enemies,</i>
Il aime autant souffrir que de se plaindre,	<i>He likes as well to suffer as to complain</i>
Rien ne lui plaît tant que de l'entendre chanter,	<i>Nothing pleases him so much as to hear it sung</i>
Etudiez plutôt que de perdre votre temps,	<i>Study rather than lose your time,</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

He refused to speak to her. I advised him to be more diligent. He has forgotten to bring them. Try to persuade her. It is time to set out. It will be sufficient to speak to him. It is dangerous to trust every body. It would be doing him an injustice to mistrust him. It is a barbarous action to insult (*to*) the unfortunate. It is a misfortune to have no friends. It is a folly to despise others. Nothing pleases him so much as to study languages. I had rather (*should love better*) die than (*to*) be idle.

To advise, *conseiller*
to forget, *oublier*

to try, *essayer*
misfortune, *malheur*, m.

RULE II.

The *infinitive* with *à* generally follows *nouns*, *adjectives*, *verbs*, &c. when the *infinitive* or *active participle*, in English, is used with the prepositions *to*, *at*, *in*, *on*, *for*, &c. to express, *effort*, *encouragement*, *inclination*, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Je suis prêt à aller,
Il s'attache à lui plaire,
Je me plais à vous écrire,
Je suis disposé à vous obéir,
Songez à me payer,
Elle se plaît à me tourmenter,
Il se prépare à partir,

Elle l'a engagé à jouer,
Un Chrétien doit être prêt à
mourir plutôt que de renier
sa foi,
Les habitants étaient deter-
minés à mourir,
Vous n'êtes pas exact à ap-
prendre votre leçon,
Il est très-enclin à médire,
Vous m'avez excité à manger,

I am ready to go
He endeavours to please her
I delight in writing to you
I am disposed to obey you
Think of paying me
She delights in tormenting me
He is preparing for his de-
parture
She has engaged him to play
A Christian ought to be
ready to die rather than
renounce his faith
The inhabitants were deter-
mined to die
You are not exact in learning
your lesson
He is much inclined to slander
You have induced me to eat

1. D.
promis

2. D.
il suffi.

3. D.

1. N.
liver

Elle

Il m.

Il a

N'et

Ave.

2.

Il

Il

Ce

C

(

i

à craindre,	He is to be pitied
à craindre,	He is a man to be feared
bon à manger ?	Is that fruit fit to eat ?
bons à brûler,	These rags are for burning
à faire,	That is difficult to do, or to be done
quelque chose à	Have you any thing to eat ?
à gagner avec lui,	There is nothing to be got by him
à se plaindre de lui,	I have to complain of him
deux heures à faire	I shall be two hours doing that
et sincèrement, je n'en	To tell you sincerely, I do not be-
rien, on dirait qu'il était	lieve any thing of it
rien, on dirait qu'il était	To hear him talk, one would think
rien, on dirait qu'il était	(say) he was very rich
n'en point douter, que	I know to a certainty, that it was
qui l'a fait,	he who did it
vous à jouer,	It is your turn to play
moi à sortir,	It is my turn to walk out
lui à rester au logis,	It is his turn to stay at home
est-ce à boire ?	Whose turn is it to drink ?
elle à écrire,	It is her business, or turn to write
obligerai à le faire,	I will oblige him to do it
obligé de le faire,	He was obliged to do it
efforcé à courir,	He made an effort to run
force de lui plaire,	He strives to please her
n'osera pas de venir,	He will not fail to come
mené de tomber,	I was near falling
obligé à faire son devoir,	He has failed in doing his duty
de vous obliger,	He endeavours to oblige you
de me nuire,	He aims at hurting me
trop tardé à venir,	He has delayed too long coming
tarde de partir,	He longs to set off
avaient de finir,	They had just finished
quand je vins à écrire ma lettre,	When I began to write my letter
un plaisir de (que de) vous en-	It is a pleasure to teach you
seigner,	
à du plaisir à vous enseigner,	There is a pleasure in teaching you
ce n'est pas la peine de faire cela,	It is not the trouble of doing that
à peine à le croire,	I can hardly believe it

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

He likes singing (*to sing*). Do you learn dancing (*to dance*)? He instructs me in drawing. It is to be feared that he will die. That fruit is good to eat. I have much pleasure in seeing you. Have you any thing to eat? What

you have given me to do is not very easy. This is a very hard lesson to learn. We shall be two hours doing (*to do*) that. He has been a week writing letters. To tell you candidly (*to speak to you sincerely*), I believe nothing of it. It is not my business (*for me*) to correct him. It is his turn (*for him*) to walk out. It is not your business to meddle with it.

What, or *que*
easy, *aisé*
hard, *difficile*

candidly, *sincèrement*
to meddle, *se mêler*
with it, *en*

CONTRASTED EXAMPLES OF THE INFINITIVE.

With *de*.

He will not fail to write.
I long to tell him.
He longs to see you.
He endeavours to satisfy you.
My father is just gone out.

They had just finished their game.

We had just got out of the coach.

I had just left him.

It is easy to do that.

It is dangerous to trust every body.

He took great pains to persuade me.

To fail, *manquer*
I long, *il me tarde*
to defer, *tarder*
he longs, *il lui tarde*
to delay, *tarder*
to endeavour, or aim, *tarder*
to deceive, *tromper*
to go out, *sortir*

With *à*.

He has failed to write.
Do not defer telling him.

He delays going.

They aim at deceiving you.

If it happen to rain, he will be wet.

He began to speak of his riches.

As soon as she came to speak of her misfortunes.

When he comes to know it.

That is easy to be done.

Some people think it dangerous to be (*placé danger in being*) charitable.

He had much difficulty to persuade me.

wet, *mouillé*
game, *jeu*, m.
to get out, *sortir*
as soon as, *dès que*
great pains, *beaucoup de peines*
much difficulty, *beaucoup de peine*

RULE III.

Pour is used before the infinitive to express the *end, design, cause, or reason* for which any thing is done; also *pour* is employed when we can put *in order to*, or *for the purpose of*, before an infinitive.

EXAMPLES.

Je viens <i>pour</i> vous dire que	I am come <i>to</i> tell you that
Monsieur B . . . est mort,	Mr. B . . . is dead
Il a été pendu <i>pour</i> avoir tué	He was hanged <i>for</i> killing a
un homme,	man
Je l'ai fait <i>pour</i> vous plaire,	I have done it <i>to</i> , or <i>in order</i>
	<i>to</i> please you
Cette eau de mer est <i>pour</i>	This salt water is <i>to</i> drink,
boire,	or <i>for the purpose of</i>
	<i>drinking</i>

Obs. *Pour* is frequently used, though not always, after *trop*, too much; *assez*, enough; *suffire*, and *être suffisant*, to be sufficient: also *pour* is used when we use *for* before the active participle; Ex. Il est *trop* sage *pour* faire cela, he is *too* wise *to* do that. Il a *assez* de vanité *pour* le croire, he has vanity *enough* *to* believe it. Combien me demandez-vous *pour* me faire un chapeau? how much do you ask *for* making me a hat? Sometimes *assez* takes *de* after it, and sometimes there is no preposition after either *assez* or *trop*; Ex. Ce n'était pas *assez* de l'outrager, it was not *sufficient* *to* outrage him. C'est *assez*, ou *trop* m'insulter, this *insults* me *enough*, or *too* much.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

He shall be rewarded for having worked well. He has too much (*of*) pride to own his faults. You have not money enough to bear (*to make*) great expenses. I shall do every thing to please you. In order to be happy, one must be (*if is necessary to be*) contented. They are strong enough to do it. He is virtuous enough to resist (*to the*) temptation.

Too much, <i>trop</i>	strong, <i>forts</i>
pride, <i>amour propre</i>	to resist, <i>résister</i>
bear, <i>faire</i>	temptation, <i>tentation</i> , f.
expense, <i>dépense</i>	

Infinitive used instead of the Active Participle.

The infinitive is used, instead of the active participle, after the prepositions *à, après, de, par, pour, sans, &c.*

Obs. The active participle is never used, in French, after any other preposition than *en*^o; although it is used, in English, after almost every preposition.

EXAMPLES.

On croirait <i>à l'entendre</i> , qu'il ne sait rien,	One would think, <i>by hearing</i> him, he knows nothing
Il mourut <i>après avoir</i> bien dîné,	He died <i>after having</i> eaten a hearty dinner
Empêchez-le <i>de faire</i> du mal,	Prevent him <i>from doing</i> mischief
Il faut que vous commenciez <i>par réciter</i> vos leçons,	You must begin <i>by saying</i> your lessons

Obs. 1. **En*, before an active participle, is Englished by *whilst, when, in, as, by, with, &c.* Ex. Il me rencontra *en allant* à l'église, he met me *when going, whilst, or as I was going* to the church. Il laissa des ordres *en partant*, he left orders *when he went away, or was going away.* Il l'aborda *en riant*, he came up to her *with a smile, or smiling.*

2. When the active participle, in English, is used with the article *the* or, *a* as a noun, it is generally rendered by a substantive in French; as, *L'écriture* est mauvaise, *the writing* is bad.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

He went away without speaking. He was imprisoned for having robbed on the highway. She gets her living by writing. He often speaks without knowing what he says. We have obtained peace by making great sacrifices. By buying the horse I have also bought the saddle and bridle. The learning of mathematics is difficult.

Imprisoned, <i>emprisonné</i>	by, <i>à</i> ; what, <i>ce que</i>
highway, <i>grand chemin</i> , m.	to obtain, <i>obtenir</i>
to get, <i>gagner</i> ; living, <i>vie</i> , f.	sacrifice, <i>sacrifice</i> , m.

On the Present,* or Active Participle.

RULE.

THE active participle always terminates in *ant*, and is never declinable, unless when used as an adjective, in which instance it must agree with the noun to which it refers.

EXAMPLES.

Indeclinable as Participles.

Je l'ai rencontré <i>allant</i> à la comédie,	I met him as he <i>was going</i> to the play
Je l'ai rencontré <i>en allant</i> à la comédie,	I met him as I <i>was going</i> to the play
Ils vont <i>rampant</i> devant les grands,	They go <i>cringing</i> before the great
Votre frère <i>devant</i> sortir, vous resterez à la maison,	Your brother <i>having</i> to go out, you will stay at home

Declinable as Adjectives.

C'est un homme <i>obligeant</i> ,	He is an <i>obliging</i> man
Une personne <i>obligeante</i> se fait aimer de tout le monde,	An <i>obliging</i> person is beloved by every body
Elles sont <i>engageantes</i> ,	They are <i>engaging</i>
Ces hommes sont, <i>condescendants</i> ,	Those men are <i>condescending</i>

* *Obs.* 1. Although the participle or gerund, in *ant*, is called present, yet it may be applied to any time. Ex. *En riant*, je vous donne un avis sérieux; *En riant*, je vous ai donné un avis sérieux; *En riant*, je vous donnerai un avis sérieux.

2. *Ayant*, *étant*, *ayant été*, neither change for the gender nor number; Ex. La ville de Londres *ayant été* brûlée en 1666, fut rebâtie, au grand étonnement de l'Europe, en trois années, plus belle et plus régulière qu'elle n'était auparavant.

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Indeclinable.

I have seen them eating and drinking. It was a proof, convincing to every body but you. The mind is formed by reading good books. She saw your brother, as she was returning from the country.

Proof, *preuve*, f.
convincing, *convainquant*
the mind is formed, *on se*
forme l'esprit
as she was returning, *en re-*
venant

Declinable.

She is an obliging woman. It is a convincing proof. They are bleating sheep. That lady is a very charming singer. Her society is interesting. She produces surprising effects.

Sheep, *des brebis*, f.
bleating, *bélant*
lady, *dame*
society, *société*
interesting, *attachant*
effects, *des effets*

Past Participles.

RULE I.

WHEN the past participle is immediately preceded by any tense of the verbs *être*, *paraître*, *naitre*, *sembler*, &c. or any *neuter* verb, it must agree with the subject that precedes it in gender and number; but it is never made to agree with the subject of *avoir*. When *été* is joined to any tense of *avoir*, and is followed by another participle, the sense is passive, and the second participle is declinable.

EXAMPLES.

Il est allé à Calais,
Elle est allée à Paris,
Ils sont allés à Rome,
Elles sont allées à Rome,

He is gone to Calais
She is gone to Paris
They are gone to Rome
They are gone to Rome

L' <i>ennemi</i> a été* vaincu,	The <i>enemy</i> has been con- quered
Les <i>ennemis</i> ont été vaincus,	The <i>enemies</i> have been con- quered
L' <i>armée</i> a été vaincue,	The <i>army</i> has been con- quered
Les <i>armées</i> ont été vaincues,	The <i>armies</i> have been con- quered
Vos <i>sœurs</i> paraissent affligées,	Your <i>sisters</i> appear afflicted
Elle a reçu une lettre ce matin,	She has received a letter this morning
Nous avons reçu des lettres aujourd'hui,	We have received some letters to-day

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

My sister is respected by every body. She has written to my father to day. He has written to my mother this morning. (The) Tyrants are feared and abhorred. Virtue is seldom rewarded. My friends have been persecuted. My father has sung that song. My mother has sung. My brothers have not sung. Have not my sisters sung?

RULE II.

When the verb *avoir*, is preceded by a noun, or pronoun in the *accusative case*, the participle is declinable; but if the participle be followed by the *accusative* it is indeclinable. When the noun, or pronoun which precedes *avoir* is in the *genitive, dative, or ablative case*, the participle is indeclinable, unless preceded by *que, combien de, que de, quel, quelle, quels, quelles, &c.*

* *Obs.* 1. The participles *été, vécu, coûté, and valu* are indeclinable, and *eu* also, when it is placed before another participle, otherwise it is declinable; Ex. Vous croyiez que votre oncle aurait *vécu* cent ans? Oui, Monsieur, il *les* aurait *vécu*. Ce château a dû coûter quatre vingt mille francs? Il *les* a effectivement *coûté*. Voyez-vous les honneurs qu'on rend à cet homme? Eh bien! c'est son génie qui *les* lui a *valu*. Je lui ai rendu ces livres lorsque je *les* ai *eu lus*.—[*Vide* SAVIGNY, p. 23.]

2. When *vous*, you, is used in addressing a single person the participle must be singular, although the verb which precedes must be plural; Ex. J'ai dit que *vous* étiez *engagé*, I said you were engaged.

EXAMPLES.

Avez-vous vu *Marie*? Oui, je l'ai vue (*l'*, acc.) Have you seen *Mary*? Yes, I have seen her (*her*, acc.)
 Il y a des *hommes* là-bas; je les ai vus (*les*, acc.) There are some *men* yonder; I have seen them (*them*, acc.)

Ces *roses* étaient belles; mais vous les avez gâtées (*les*, acc.) These *roses* were beautiful; but you have spoiled them (*them*, acc.)

Les *hommes* dont nous avons parlé sont allés (*dont*, gen.) The *men* of whom we spoke are gone (*of whom*, gen.)
 Je les ai vus et leur ai parlé (*leur*, dat.) I have seen them and (have) spoken to them (*to them*, dat.)

Je connais la personne de qui vous avez reçu ces livres (*de qui*, abla.) I know the person from whom you received those books (*from whom*, abla.)

J'ai renvoyé les *lettres* que vous m'avez prêtées (*que*, acc.) I have sent back the *letters* which you lent me

Obs. *Que* is *f. pl.* because it refers to *les lettres*, and we can say you lent me *them*.

La terre que j'ai vendue, The land which I have sold
 Les lettres qu'il a écrites, The letters which he has written

Les livres que je vous ai prêtés, The books which I lent you

Avez-vous vu les bas que j'ai achetés? Have you seen the stockings which I bought?

Savez-vous les raisons qu'il m'a données? Do you know the reasons he gave me?

Je n'ai pas lu les papiers que vous m'avez envoyés, I have not read the papers you sent me,

Il nous a reçus avec beaucoup d'honnêteté, He received us with a great deal of politeness

Ils la lui ont renvoyée, They have sent her back to him

Ce sont des choses que je n'ai jamais prévues, Those are things that I never foresaw

Ce sont d'aussi bons fruits <i>que</i> vous ayez jamais <i>mangés</i> ,	Those are as good fruits as you have ever <i>eaten</i>
C'est la meilleure liqueur <i>que</i> j'aie jamais <i>bue</i> ,	This is the best liquor I have ever <i>drank</i>
J'ai <i>appris</i> la leçon <i>que</i> vous m'avez <i>donnée</i> ,	I have <i>learnt</i> the lesson you <i>gave</i> me
Je <i>les</i> ai <i>vus</i> et <i>entretenus</i> ,	I have <i>seen</i> them and <i>spoken</i> to them
Je <i>l'ai vue</i> et <i>entretenu</i> ,	I have <i>seen</i> her and <i>spoken</i> to her
Il <i>nous</i> a <i>cherchés</i> long-tems,	He has <i>sought</i> <i>us</i> a long time
Je <i>l'avais perdue</i> ,	I had <i>lost</i> her
Vous <i>l'aviez crue</i> coupable,	You had <i>thought</i> her guilty
Je connais la personne <i>de</i> <i>qui</i> il vous a <i>parlé</i> ,	I know the person <i>of whom</i> he <i>spoke</i> to you
Voilà la ville <i>par où</i> j'ai <i>passé</i> ,	This is the city <i>through</i> <i>which</i> I <i>passed</i>
Il a <i>reçu</i> les lettres <i>que</i> vous lui avez <i>écrites</i> ,	He has <i>received</i> the letters <i>which</i> you wrote to him
Combien <i>en</i> a-t-il <i>reçu</i> ?	How many <i>did</i> he <i>receive</i> ?
Il <i>en</i> a <i>reçu</i> trois (<i>en gen.</i>)	He has <i>received</i> three (<i>of</i> <i>them</i>)
<i>Les</i> en avez-vous <i>prévenus</i> ?	Have you <i>informed</i> <i>them</i> <i>of</i> <i>it</i> ?
Combien <i>de</i> maisons avez-vous <i>achetées</i> ?	<i>How many</i> houses have you <i>bought</i> ?
La plume <i>que</i> nous vous avons <i>taillée</i> ,	The pen <i>which</i> we have <i>made</i> for you
Quelles plumes nous avez- vous <i>taillées</i> ?	<i>What</i> pens have you <i>made</i> for us ?
Que <i>de</i> folies n'a-t-il pas <i>faites</i> ?	<i>What</i> pranks has he not <i>played</i> ?
Quelle toile a-t-il <i>choisie</i> ?	<i>Which</i> cloth has he <i>chosen</i> ?
Laquelle a-t-il <i>achetée</i> ?	<i>Which</i> has he <i>bought</i> ?
Quel homme avez-vous <i>vu</i> ?	<i>What</i> man did you see ?
Savez-vous <i>quels</i> livres il a <i>achetés</i> ?	Do you know <i>which</i> books he has <i>bought</i> ?
Quelles nations n'a-t-on pas <i>vaincues</i> ?	<i>What</i> nations did they not <i>conquer</i> ?

CONTRASTED EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Indeclinable.

She has received the letters.
 Have you received the books?
 I knew the woman of whom
 you speak.
 I have sent you some papers
 to read.
 Did you not lend me some
 books?
 I had lost my gloves;
 God had created men inno-
 cent.
 Commerce has rendered this
 city flourishing;
 I have undertaken a business.
 The letter of which I spoke
 to you.
 He has spoken to her.
 She has written to them.

Declinable.

The letters which she has
 received.
 Yes, I have received them.
 You speak of a woman whom
 I knew (*have known*).
 Have you read the papers
 which I sent you?
 There are the books which
 you lent me.
 But I have found them again.
 Their passions have made
 them guilty.
 But it has made it proud.
 What business have you un-
 dertaken?
 The letter which I showed
 you.
 He has seen her.
 She has visited them.

RULE III.

The past participle is indeclinable after *avoir* when followed by an *infinitive** or *any verb* that expresses an *action* done to the *person* or *thing* of which we speak; but if the *action* is *done by*, or *is in the person* or *thing* of which we speak, then the participle is declinable. *Fait* is indeclinable when used impersonally; but it is declinable when used actively for *fabriquer*, *créer*, *former*, *produire*, &c. [V. Gram. Par. P. Catineau, p. 37.]

* *Obs.* The *infinitive* is sometimes not expressed, but understood.

EXAMPLES.

Indeclinable.

If in speaking of a house we say, *je l'ai vu bâtir*, I saw it built (*bâtir* expresses that the action was upon *l'*, it, meaning the house).

Je l'ai entendu chanter, I heard it sung (meaning a song).

Je l'ai vu peindre, I saw her picture taken.

La femme que j'ai vu battre, the woman whom I saw beaten (this means that the action of beating was performed upon the woman).

La règle que j'ai commencé à vous expliquer, the rule which I began to explain to you.

Les mathématiques que vous n'avez pas voulu que j'étudiasse, the mathematics which you did not wish me to study.

J'ai fait tout les efforts que j'ai pu (*faire* is understood), I have used all the endeavours I could.

La grande chaleur qu'il a fait, a caused beaucoup de *maladie*, the great heat we have had, has caused a great deal of sickness.

Il a eu de la cour toutes les grâces qu'il a voulu (*avoir* is understood), he has re-

Declinable.

But if we say, in speaking of a house, *je l'ai vue tomber*, I saw it fall (*tomber* expresses that the action was performed, or done by the house).

Je l'ai entendue chanter, I heard her sing.

Je l'ai vue peindre, I saw her painting.

La femme que j'ai vue battre, the woman whom I saw beating (this means that the woman performed the action of beating).

L'histoire que je vous ai donnée à étudier, the history which I have given you to study.

Les femmes que vous avez instruites à feindre, you ont surpassées, the women whom you have instructed to dissemble have surpassed you.

Les bottes qu'il m'a faites sont trop étroites, the boots which he has made for me are too tight.

Les grandes dépenses qu'il a faites ont ruiné sa famille, the great expenses he has run into have ruined his family.

La résolution que vous avez prise d'aller à la campagne, the resolution which you

Indeclinable.

ceived every favor from the court *which* he could have wished.

J'avais intention de me promener, mais la pluie qu'il a fait m'en a empêché, I intended to take a walk, but the rain which we have had prevented me.

On dit qu'elle ne sait pas lire, mais je lui ai vu écrire une lettre, they say she does not know how to read, but I have seen her write a letter.

Declinable.

have taken to go into the country.

Les habits que le tailleur m'a faits ne valent rien, the clothes which the taylor has made for me are worth nothing, or are good for nothing.

Je l'ai vue écrire des lettres, I have seen her writing letters.

CONTRASTED EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Indeclinable.

The men whom she saw (*has seen*) killed.

That tragedy, I have seen it applauded.

The reasons which he thought (*that*) I approved of.

The virtues which I heard praised.

The history which I have begun to read is very amusing.

The house which he ordered to be built.

The ladies whom I suffered to pass.

The man whom you ceased to visit.

Have you heard the new actress sing?

Declinable.

The officers whom he saw (*has seen*) assemble.

That tragedy, I have seen it fall.

The reasons which I had approved of.

I heard her praising those virtues.

The history which I gave you to read appeared to me very agreeable.

The soldiers whom they have obliged to submit.

The ladies whom I saw passing.

The people whom I saw arriving.

Yes, I have (*I have heard her sing*).

*Indeclinable.**Declinable.*

Have you heard the new song sung? Yes, I have (*I have heard it sung*).

It is a thing which I have seen done.

I have cited the noblest (*finest*) traits I could.

To assemble, *s'assembler*
tragedy, *tragédie*
applauded, *applaudir*
to order, *faire*

I have heard them singing it (*I have heard them who sung it*).

I saw her doing the same thing.

There are the books I ordered (*have made, or caused to come*) from France.

obliged, *contraints*
to submit, *se soumettre*
cited, *cité*
traits, *traits*

OBSERVATIONS RESPECTING THE CASES.

1. The pronouns *me*, *me*; *te*, *thee*; *se*, *himself*, *herself*, &c.; *nous*, *us*; *vous*, *you*; are in the *accusative* when Englished in the preceding manner: but they are in the *dative* when they can be Englished as follows; *me*, to me; *te*, to thee; *se*, to himself, &c.; *nous*, to us; *vous*, to you. *Lui*, to him, to her, to it; *leur*, to them, are always *dative*; and *le*, *him*, *it*; *la*, *her*, *it*; *les*, *them*, are always *accusative*.

2. The nominative answers to the question *who?* or *what?* the genitive to the question *whose?* or *of whom?* or *of what?* the dative to the question *to*, or *for whom?* *to*, or *for what?* the accusative to the question *whom?* *what?* or *whither?* and the ablative is translated by *from whom?* or *from what?* and generally answers to the question *from whom?* or *from what?* or *where?*

EXAMPLES.

Mademoiselle B . . . dessine bien; je l'ai *vue* souvent dessiner, Miss B . . . draws well; I have often *seen her* draw.

EXPLANATION.

Who saw, or has seen?

Nom. I, *je*

Whom did you see?

Acc. Her, *l'*

Mademoiselle B . . . *nous a envoyé* de beaux tableaux, Miss B . . . has *sent us* some fine pictures.

Who has sent?

Nom. Miss B . . . *Mademoiselle B . . .*

What has she sent?

Acc. Some fine pictures, *de beaux tableaux*

To whom?

Dat. To us, *nous*

From where?

Abl. From Paris, *de Paris*

Avez-vous vu mon père et ma mère ? Oui, nous *les* avons *vus*, et *leur* avons *parlé*, have you seen my father and mother ? Yes, we have *seen them*, and have *spoken to them*.

Who has seen ?

Whom have you seen ?

To whom have you spoken ?

Nom. We, *nous*

Acc. Them, *les*

Dat. To them, *leur*

RULE IV.

The past participle is made to agree with *me*, *me*; *te*, *thee*; *se*, *himself*, &c. that precede reflective verbs in the *accusative*; but when those pronouns can be turned by *to me*, *to thee*, &c. in the *dative*, the participle is indeclinable, unless *que*, *quel*, &c. precede, in which instance the participle is declinable.

EXAMPLES.

Indeclinable.

Lucrèce s'est *donné* la mort,
Lucretia *killed* herself (*s'*,
dat. gave death *to herself*).

Elle s'est *blessé* le pied, she
has *hurt* her foot.

Ils *se* sont *cassé* les bras,
they have *broken* their
arms.

Nous *nous* sommes *lavé* les
mains, we have *washed*
our hands.

Elles *se* sont *imaginé*, they
have *fancied* to themselves.

Vous *vous* êtes *imaginé*, you
have *fancied* to yourselves.

Elle s'est *donné* de la peine,
she has *given* herself trouble
(*trouble to herself*).

Declinable.

Elle s'est *tuee*, she *killed*
herself (*s'*, *acc.*)

La mort *qu'elle* s'est *donnée*,
the death which she *in-*
flicted on herself.

Elle s'est *promenée*, she has
taken a walk.

Elles *se* sont *allées* promener,
they are *gone* to take a
walk.

Ils *se* sont *appliqués* aux
mathématiques, they have
applied to the mathematics.

Ma sœur, s'est *blessée*, my
sister has *hurt* herself.

Les peines *qu'elle* s'est
données, the trouble which
she gave herself (*to her-*
self).

Indeclinable.

Nous ne nous sommes pas donné de la peine, we have not given ourselves trouble.

Elle s'était attiré des ennemis, she had drawn enemies upon herself.

Declinable.

Quelles peines s'est-elle données? what trouble did she give herself? (to herself).

Les ennemis qu'elle s'était attirés, the enemies whom she has drawn upon herself.

CONTRASTED EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Indeclinable.

They have attached to themselves.

We have proposed to ourselves.

She has drawn upon herself.

They have attached many persons to themselves.

We have proposed difficulties to one another.

She has drawn enemies upon herself.

They have built houses for themselves.

I had formed ideas of it.

We have given ourselves much trouble.

They have given themselves much trouble.

She has cut her finger.

**To attach to oneself, *s'attacher*
to propose to oneself, *se proposer***

to abandon oneself, *s'abandonner*

to draw upon oneself, *s'attirer*

Declinable.

She has abandoned herself.

We have applied ourselves.

She has presented herself.

They have abandoned themselves to despair.

We have applied to the mathematics.

The enemies which she has drawn upon herself.

We have built them, *f.* for ourselves.

Such are the ideas that I had formed of it.

What (*of*) trouble has he given himself.

The trouble which they gave themselves.

She has cut herself.

to present oneself, *se présenter*

to propose to one another, *se faire*

difficulty, *difficulté*

**to form, *se former*
to cut, *se couper***

Recapitulatory Practice on the Verbs, &c.

FIRST LESSON.

THE source of true happiness is in the heart of man, and the greatest satisfaction is found in the practice of virtue. The Tribunes demanded of Clodius the execution of the promise which the Consul Valerius had given. The laws which the first Christians had imposed on themselves were full of wisdom. Demetrius of Phalerius having understood that the Athenians had thrown down his statues; they have not, said he, overthrown the virtue which caused them to be erected to me. The glory which our ancestors have left us, is an inheritance of which merit alone can put us in possession. Study frees us from the errors into which the prejudices of a (*the*) bad education had plunged us. As soon as Aristides had said that the proposition of Themistocles was unjust, all the people cried out that it must be thought of no more. I have read in history that the Egyptians were very superstitious, and (*that they*) worshipped even the vegetables of their gardens. If you had studied the Roman history, you would know that Rome was at first governed by kings. Plato said (*used to say*) that the people would be very happy if wisdom was the sole object of ministers. We are more prone to excuse ourselves than to acknowledge our faults.

In, <i>dans</i> ; practice, <i>pratique</i>	to put in possession, <i>donner</i>
promise, <i>parole</i> , f.	<i>la possession</i>
Valerius, <i>Valérius</i>	to free, <i>affranchir</i>
Demetrius, <i>Démétrius</i>	to cry out, <i>s'écrier</i>
to understand, <i>apprendre</i>	it must be thought of no more,
Athenian, <i>Athénien</i> , m.	<i>il n'y fallait plus penser</i>
to throw down, or overthrow,	to worship, <i>adorer</i>
<i>renverser</i>	even, <i>jusqu'aux</i>
to cause, <i>faire</i>	vegetables, <i>légumes</i> , f. pl.
to erect, <i>dresser</i>	at first, <i>d'abord</i>

SECOND LESSON.

The idle are very seldom well-informed. Those who love to improve in knowledge, or to learn, are never idle. Lying is the lowest of all vices. A young man should speak (*ought to speak*) with a great deal of discretion. A wise man neither allows himself to be governed, nor does he endeavour to govern others. Alexander attacked Darius Codoman, defeated him twice, and made his mother, wife, and daughters prisoners. (*made prisoners his mother, &c.*) While M. Turenne was commanding in Germany, the inhabitants of a neutral city thought (*believed*) that the king's army was going to pass that way (*was going by its side*), and they, through fear, made an offer to the general of a hundred thousand crowns (*caused to offer to the general a, &c.*) in order to induce him to take another rout. I cannot in conscience, said he, accept that sum, because I have had no intention of passing through that city. Before you undertake (*before undertaking*) any thing, adopt proper measures, so that you may have nothing to reproach yourself for, if you do not succeed. You have adopted very proper measures, so that you will have nothing to reproach yourself for, if the affair does not succeed. Patience is the surest remedy against calumnies: time, soon or late, discovers the truth. (*The*) True merit is always accompanied with civility and modesty.

Very seldom, *très-rarement*
 informed, *instruit*
 to improve in knowledge, or
 to learn, *à s'instruire*
 low, *bas*; with, *avec*
 allows himself to be governed,
ne se laisse gouverner
 to endeavour, *chercher*
 to attack, *attaquer*
 to defeat, *vaincre*
 prisoner, *prisonnier*
 to induce, *engager*

in, *en*; before, *avant de*
 to adopt, *prendre*
 proper, *juste*
 measure, *mesure*, f.
 to reproach for, *reprocher*
 remedy, *remède*, m.
 sure, *sûr*
 soon or late, *tôt ou tard*
 discovers, *découvre*
 true, *véritable*
 with, *de*, and *d'*
 civility, *honnêteté*.

THIRD LESSON.

Sur le nombre XIV relativement à Henri IV.

Le premier roi de France, nommé Henri, a été sacré le 14 Mai 1029.

Henri IV naquit le 14* Décembre 1553, 14 siècles, 14 décades, et 14 ans après la naissance de J. C.

Henri II. ordonne, le 14 Mai 1554, d'élargir la rue de la Feronnerie; on négligea de le faire, et cette négligence favorisa l'assassinat de Henri IV. un 14 Mai.

Les Parisiens résistent, le 14 Mai 1576, à un édit de Henri III. roi de France.

Marguerite de France, première femme de Henri IV. naquit le 14 Mai 1582.

Paris, à l'instigation du duc de Guise, se révolta contre Henri III. le 14 Mai 1588.

Henri IV. gagne la bataille d'Ivry le 14 Mars 1590.

La Ligue fait une procession le 14 Mai 1590, pendant le siège de Paris par Henri IV.

Henri IV. est assassiné le 14 Mai 1610.

Il a vécu 4 fois 14 ans, 14 semaines, et 4 fois 14 jours.

Il y a dans HENRI DE BOURBON 14 lettres.

Louis XIII. fils de Henri IV. est mort le 14 Mai 1643.

AMUSEMENTS PHILOLOGIQUES.

FOURTH LESSON.

La vraie politesse est commune aux âmes délicates de toutes les nations, et elle n'est particulière à aucun peuple. La civilité extérieure n'est que la forme établie dans les différens pays pour exprimer cette politesse de l'âme. Je préfère la civilité des Grecs à celle des autres peuples, parce qu'elle est plus simple et moins fatigante : elle rejette toute formalité superflue, son unique objet est de rendre la société et la conversation aisée et agréable. Mais la politesse intérieure est bien différente de cette civilité super-

* Erreur, il est né le 13 Décembre.

ficielle. C'est une égalité d'âme qui exclut en même temps l'insensibilité et le trop d'empressement ; elle suppose une promptitude à discerner ce qui peut convenir aux différens caractères des hommes : c'est une douce condescendance, au moyen de laquelle nous nous accommodons au goût de chacun, non pas pour flatter ses passions, mais pour éviter de les irriter. En un mot, c'est un oubli de nous-mêmes, pour chercher ce qui peut être agréable aux autres ; mais d'une manière si délicate, que nous laissons à peine s'apercevoir que tel soit notre but ; elle sait contredire avec respect, et plaire sans adulation, et elle est également éloignée de la fade complaisance et de la basse familiarité.

—RAMSAY.

A discerner, in discerning
convenir à, suit
au moyen de, by

de les irriter, provoking them
d', in ; *que nous les laissons*,
as to let them ; *fade*, insipid

FIFTH LESSON.

Nous sommes si présomptueux, que nous voudrions être connus de toute la terre, et même des gens qui viendront quand nous n'y serons plus, et nous sommes si vains que l'estime de cinq ou six personnes, qui nous environnent, nous amuse et nous contente. Que chacun examine sa pensée ; il la trouvera toujours occupé au passé et à l'avenir. Nous ne pensons presque point au présent, et si nous y pensons, ce n'est que pour en prendre la lumière pour disposer de l'avenir. Le présent n'est jamais notre but. Le passé et le présent sont nos moyens ; le seul avenir est notre objet. Ainsi nous ne vivons jamais, mais nous espérons de vivre ; et nous disposant toujours à être heureux, il est indubitable que nous ne le serons jamais, si nous n'aspirons à une autre béatitude qu'à celle dont on peut jouir en cette vie. Peu de chose nous console, parceque peu de chose nous afflige.—

PASCAL.

Des gens qui viendront, to but, aim
posterity ; *que*, let moyens, resources
prendre la lumière, to gain disposant toujours, are always
information endeavouring.

On the placing of Adverbs.

RULE I.

ADVERBS are generally placed after verbs in the *simple tenses*, and between the *auxiliary* and *participle* in the *compound tenses*; but *davantage*, more, is always put after the *participle*.

Obs. 1. The adverbs *bien*, *mieux*, *trop*, *mal*, *pis*, *toujours*, *jamais*, &c. are sometimes placed indifferently, either before or after an *infinitive*; but they are always placed after verbs in the *simple tenses*, and generally, though not always, between the *auxiliary* and *participle*: Ex. *Faire bien son devoir*, ou *bien faire son devoir*.

2. Adverbs are never placed between the *nominative* and the verb, as in English: Ex. *Il parle souvent*, he *often* speaks.

EXAMPLES.

Votre frère parle <i>rarement</i> ,	Your brother <i>seldom</i> speaks
Il a <i>toujours bien</i> parlé de vous,	He has <i>always</i> spoken <i>well</i> of you
Je pense <i>souvent</i> à elle,	I <i>often</i> think of her
Elle n'a pas <i>encore</i> appris sa leçon,	She has not <i>yet</i> learnt her lesson
Votre sœur a <i>bien</i> chanté, ou a chanté <i>bien</i> ,	Your sister has sung <i>well</i>

RULE II.

The adverbs *aujourd'hui*, *demain*, *hier*, and those which consist of *several words*,* are generally placed after the *participle* in the *compound tenses*.

EXAMPLES.

Il a plu <i>aujourd'hui</i> .	It has rained <i>to-day</i>
J'aurai fait <i>demain</i> ,	I shall have done <i>to-morrow</i>
Elle a eu beaucoup de peine à le persuader,	She has had a <i>great deal</i> of trouble to persuade him
Nous l'avons rencontrée par <i>hasard</i> .	We met her <i>by chance</i>

* (*Obs.* Adverbs are sometimes so connected with nouns as to form a compound; as, *beaucoup de peine*, much trouble.

RULE III.

The adverbs *jamais*, *toujours*, and *souvent* are placed before all other adverbs, except *presque*. *Assez*, enough, is never put after the noun as in English.

EXAMPLES.

Nous ne buvons <i>jamais trop</i> ,	We <i>never</i> drink too much
Mon père est <i>presque toujours</i>	My father is <i>almost always</i>
malade,	ill
Vous êtes <i>souvent ensemble</i> ,	You are <i>often together</i>
Vous n'avez pas <i>assez de</i>	You have not <i>patience enough</i>
<i>patience</i> ,	

Obs. *Adverbs*, in French, as in English, frequently begin a sentence; as, *Comment se porte Monsieur votre père?* *how* is your father? *Quand voulez-vous venir chez-nous?* *when* will you come to our house?—[For the formation of Adverbs, &c. v. p. 144.]

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

I often think of you. She speaks much, and thinks little. I have often seen her at the theatre. They never speak well of any body. We have never spoken ill of any body. They have acted conformably to their principles. I have always considered maturely. When shall you go to Italy? The king is scarcely ever well (*is almost always ill*). You never come to see me.

To act, <i>agir</i>	maturely, <i>mûrement</i>
principles, <i>principes</i>	Italy, <i>Italie</i>

OBSERVATIONS ON THE NEGATIVES NE-PAS, POINT, &c.

1. *Ne* is generally put before the *verb*, and *pas* or *point* after; in compound sentences *pas* or *point* is put before the *participle*. If an adverb follow the negation, *pas* must be used, not *point*. *Point* denies more strongly than *pas*—[v. p. 70.]

EXAMPLES.

Je ne vois pas souvent votre sœur,	I do not often see your sister
Ne savez-vous pas votre leçon?	Do you not know your lesson?
N'avez-vous pas dit votre leçon?	Have you not said your lesson?
Il n'a point lu du tout,	He has not read at all

2. When *jamais, plus, guerre, aucun, nul, nullement, personne, rien, qui que ce soit, quoi que ce soit, quelconque, que, ni*, are used *negatively*, neither *pas* nor *point* can be used.

EXAMPLES.

Alexandre n'est plus, il est mort,	Alexander is no more, he is dead
Personne ne le sait,	Nobody knows it
Je ne le veux nullement,	I by no means wish it
Je n'y pense plus,	I shall think no more of it
Je ne soupe guère,	I seldom sup
Je n'en ai jamais ouï parler,	I have never heard of it
Il ne cherche que la vérité,	He only seeks truth
Il ne mange ni ne boit,	He neither eats nor drinks
Il n'est ni beau ni riche,	He is neither handsome nor rich
Je n'ai vu qui que ce soit de ma connaissance,	I have seen none of my acquaintance
Il n'en sait rien,	He knows nothing about it
Il ne peut réussir à quoi que ce soit,	He cannot succeed in any thing

3. *Ne* is used after *appréhender, craindre, douter, avoir peur, empêcher, à moins que, de crainte que, de peur que, si, que, &c.* when the *negation* is not expressed in English; however, when the *negation* is expressed in English by *not*, *ne* and *pas*, or *point*, are mostly used in French; but after *si* and *que*, *pas* is sometimes omitted when we use *not*. *Ne* before a verb, and *que* after, is Englished by *but* or *only*.

EXAMPLES.

Je crains qu'il ne vienne,	I fear lest he should come, or I fear he will come
J'ai peur qu'il ne vienne pas,	I am afraid he will not come

<i>Ne craignez-vous pas qu'il ne vienne ?</i>	<i>Are you not afraid that he will come ?</i>
<i>Je crains qu'elle ne meure,</i>	<i>I fear lest she should die</i>
<i>J'apprends que sa maladie ne soit mortelle,</i>	<i>I am apprehensive lest his malady should be mortal.</i>
<i>Je ne doute point qu'il ne vienne</i>	<i>I do not doubt but he will come</i>
<i>A moins qu'il ne fasse beau,</i>	<i>Unless it should be fine</i>
<i>Si vous ne venez me prendre,</i>	<i>If you do not fetch me</i>
<i>S'il ne le veut pas,</i>	<i>If he does not wish it</i>
<i>S'il ne parlait pas,</i>	<i>If he did not speak</i>
<i>Que n'êtes-vous arrivé plutôt ?</i>	<i>How is it you did not arrive sooner ?</i>
<i>Que ne m'est-il permis ?</i>	<i>Why is it not granted to me ?</i>
<i>Que ne parlez-vous ?</i>	<i>Why do you not speak ?</i>
<i>De crainte qu'il ne s'égare,</i>	<i>Lest he should go wrong</i>
<i>De peur qu'il ne vienne,</i>	<i>For fear he should come</i>
<i>Je n'ai que deux francs,</i>	<i>I have only, or but two francs</i>

4. *Ne* is used without *pas*, or *point*, after *il y a*, *depuis*, and before a verb followed by *de* in speaking of time.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Il y a dix ans que je ne l'ai vu,</i>	<i>I have not seen him these ten years</i>
<i>Il y a six mois que je ne lui ai parlé,</i>	<i>I have not spoken to him for six months</i>
<i>Comment vous êtes-vous porté, depuis que je ne vous ai vu ?</i>	<i>How have you been since I saw you ?</i>
<i>Je ne sortirai de trois jours,</i>	<i>I shall not go out for three days</i>

5. *Ne* is used as a negative without *pas* or *point*, before the verbs *cesser*, *oser*, *pouvoir*, and also before *savoir*, to be able, used for *pouvoir*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Il ne cesse de gronder,</i>	<i>He does not cease grumbling</i>
<i>On n'ose l'aborder,</i>	<i>They dare not accost him</i>
<i>Je ne puis me taire,</i>	<i>I cannot be silent</i>
<i>Il ne sait ce qu'il veut,</i>	<i>He knows not what he wants</i>

6. *Ne* is used before a verb that is preceded by a comparative; as, *plus*, *moins*, &c. or by *autre*, *autrement*, when the first verb is used *affirmatively* or *negatively interrogatively*; but if the first verb be *negative*, or *interrogative* without a *negation*, then *ne* is omitted.

EXAMPLES.

Mademoiselle S . . . est <i>plus</i> riche que vous <i>ne</i> pensiez (<i>affirmative</i>),	Miss S . . . is <i>richer</i> than you thought
N'est-elle pas <i>plus</i> jeune que vous <i>ne</i> pensiez? (<i>neg. inter.</i>)	Is she not <i>younger</i> than you thought?
L'affaire est tout <i>autre</i> qu'on <i>ne</i> me l'avait racontée,	The affair is quite <i>different</i> from what it had been related to me
Elle n'est pas <i>moins</i> belle que sa sœur l'était (<i>negative</i>)	She is not <i>less</i> handsome than her sister was
Est-elle <i>plus</i> belle que sa sœur l'était? (<i>interrogative</i>)	Is she <i>handsomer</i> than her sister was?

On the placing of Prepositions.

RULE.

PREPOSITIONS are generally placed before *nouns* and *pronouns*, in French as in English.

EXAMPLES.

A qui parlez-vous?	To whom do you speak?
Je parle à lui, et non à vous,	I speak to him, and not to you
De quoi vous plaignez-vous?	Of what do you complain?
Je me plains de la personne pour qui vous vous intéressez,	I complain of the person for whom you are interested

Obs. The French *prepositions*, particularly *de* and *à*, are frequently repeated before *nouns*, *pronouns*, and *verbs*. With regard to the cases by which they are followed, and the different ways in which many of them are Englished—[v. pages 156, 157, &c.]

As it would only be embarrassing to the student to enter into any further explanation respecting prepositions, than what has already been given, the author thinks it may here be only useful for the learner to see the various applications and illustrations of the manner in which *de*, *à*, &c. are rendered into English.

De after Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

EXAMPLES.

Un homme d'esprit, d'honneur,	A man of talent, of honor
Un acte de justice, de probité,	An act of justice, of probity
Il a une montre d'or, un habit de drap, un gilet de satin, un mouchoir de poche, du vin de France, des soies d'Italie, de la laine d'Espagne,	He has a gold watch, a cloth coat, a satin waistcoat, a pocket handkerchief, French wine, Italian silks, Spanish wool
Il est digne de louanges, las du discours, charmé de la nouvelle, content de sa condition,	He is praiseworthy, weary of the discourse, overjoyed at the news, contented with his condition
Il s'avisa d'un expédient,	He thought of an expedient
Ne vous moquez pas des malheureux,	Do not laugh at the unfortunate
Ayez pitié de mes malheurs, Réjouissez-vous de ma fortune,	Have pity on my misfortunes Rejoice at my fortune
Il s'est informé de vous,	He inquired after you
Ils s'étonnèrent de lui,	They wondered at him
Il mourut de froid, de faim,	He died with, or of cold, with, or of hunger

De before Nouns denoting Measure, Weight, &c.

EXAMPLES.

Un tapis long de six verges et large de deux, ou un tapis de six verges de longueur et de deux de largeur,	A carpet six yards long and two wide, or six yards in length and two in breadth
--	---

Un livre épais <i>de</i> trois pouces, ou un livre <i>de</i> trois pouces <i>d'épais</i> ou <i>d'épaisseur</i> ,	A book three inches thick, or a book three inches in thickness
J'ai un arbre qui a quatre doigts <i>de</i> largeur, ou qui est large <i>de</i> quatre doigts,	I have a tree which is four fingers broad, or four fingers in breadth
Il est rare <i>de</i> voir une planche <i>de</i> sapin longue <i>de</i> douze verges, large <i>de</i> dix pieds et épaisse <i>de</i> huit, ou <i>de</i> douze verges <i>de</i> long ou <i>de</i> longueur, <i>de</i> dix pieds <i>de</i> large ou <i>de</i> largeur et <i>de</i> huit <i>d'épais</i> ou <i>d'épaisseur</i> ,	It is rare to see a plank of deal twelve yards long, ten feet broad, and eight inches thick, or twelve yards in length, ten feet in breadth and eight inches in thick- ness
Ce linon a une verge <i>de</i> largeur,	This lawn is a yard wide, or a yard in width

DE is used after *Adjectives* or *Adverbs* used *partitively*.

EXAMPLES.

Vous avez plus <i>d'argent</i> que moi, autant <i>d'amis</i> et moins <i>d'orgueil</i> que lui,	You have more money than I, as many friends, and less pride than he
Il a beaucoup <i>d'esprit</i> , point <i>d'argent</i> , et très peu <i>d'amis</i> ,	He has much wit, no money, and very few friends
Autant <i>de</i> femmes que <i>d'hommes</i> ,	As many women as men
Que <i>de</i> peines et <i>de</i> soins !	What care and trouble !
Il prend trop <i>de</i> peine,	He takes too much pains
Il n'a point <i>de</i> sens commun,	He has not common sense

DE after *Numerals* or *Pronouns*, and before *Adjectives*.

EXAMPLES.

Il y en a trente <i>d'achevés</i> ,	Thirty of them are finished
Il y en eut cinquante <i>de</i> tués et cent <i>de</i> blessés,	There were fifty men killed and a hundred wounded
Il n'y a personne <i>de</i> blessé,	There is nobody wounded
Il n'y a personne <i>de</i> si heureux,	There is no person so happy
Il y a dans son style je ne sais quoi <i>de</i> dur.	His style has I know not what that is harsh in it

Quoi <i>de</i> plus juste ?	What can be fairer ?
Il y a je ne sais quoi <i>de</i> gracieux dans ses discours,	There is something inexpressibly gracious in his discourse
Avez-vous jamais vu rien <i>de</i> plus curieux ?	Did you ever see any thing more curious ?
Il n'y a rien <i>de</i> tel,	There is no such thing

De after *Comparatives*.

EXAMPLES.

Plus <i>de</i> dix guinées,	More <i>than</i> ten guineas
J'en suis plus <i>d'</i> à moitié persuadé,	I am more <i>than</i> half persuaded of it
Il a plus <i>de</i> vingt ans,	He is more <i>than</i> twenty years of age
Il croît tous les jours <i>d'un</i> pouce,	It grows an inch every day
Il est plus grand <i>de</i> toute la tête,	He is taller <i>by</i> a whole head
Vous êtes plus jeune que moi <i>de</i> quatre ans,	You are younger than I <i>by</i> four years

De used in *Adverbial Expressions*.

EXAMPLES.

Il voit <i>de</i> nuit, comme les chats,	He sees <i>by</i> night, like a cat
Nous y arriverons <i>de</i> jour,	We shall arrive there <i>in</i> the day time
Il courut <i>de</i> toutes ses forces,	He ran <i>with</i> all his might
Elle danse <i>de</i> bonne grace,	She dances <i>with</i> a good grace
Il se conduit <i>de</i> cette manière,	He behaves <i>in</i> that manner
Ils jouent <i>de</i> la flûte,	They play <i>on</i> the flute
Nous vivons <i>de</i> poisson,	We live <i>on</i> fish

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE ON *DE*.

That is a man of talent. Here is a silver-dish. There are several fine stone bridges over the Thames. Where do you come from? I come from France. My brother has a silver

watch. He is worthy of friendship. There were as many children as men. We go from province to province, from town to town, from street to street. Have you ever seen any thing prettier. My sister is more than twenty years of age. I will not give more than twenty guineas for that watch. We shall not travel by night. We shall only travel by day. They jumped, or leaped for joy.

Dish, *plat*, m.
silver, *argent* ; to, *en*

street, *rue*
to jump, or leap, *sauter*

'A after Nouns, Adjectives, and Verbs.

EXAMPLES.

Des bas <i>à</i> trois fils,	Stockings <i>with</i> three threads
L'homme <i>au</i> gilet rouge,	The man <i>with</i> the red waist-coat
Un procureur <i>à</i> la cour de conscience,	A proctor <i>in</i> the court of conscience
Une dorure <i>à</i> l'or pâle,	A gilding <i>with</i> pale gold
Voici le moulin <i>à</i> vent,	Here is the windmill
Voilà un moulin <i>à</i> eau,	There is a watermill
Donnez-moi le pot <i>à</i> l'eau,	Give me the watering-pot
Apportez la bouteille <i>à</i> l'encre,	Bring the ink bottle
Une chaise <i>à</i> bras,	An elbow chair
Un habit <i>à</i> la mode,	A fashionable coat
Un bassin <i>à</i> laver les mains,	A wash-hand basin
Une corbeille <i>à</i> pain,	A bread basket
Avez-vous de la poudre <i>à</i> canon ?	Have you any gunpowder ?
Nous avons des armes <i>à</i> feu,	We have fire arms
Voici notre salle <i>à</i> manger,	This is our dining room
C'est un fruit nuisible <i>à</i> la santé,	It is a fruit hurtful <i>to</i> the health
Elle est trop adonnée <i>au</i> plaisir,	She is too much addicted <i>to</i> pleasure
Cela est semblable <i>au</i> mien,	That is like mine
Il est propre <i>à</i> tout,	He is fit <i>for</i> every thing
Cela est bon <i>à</i> quelque chose,	That is good <i>for</i> something

Elle est très sensible <i>au</i> froid,	She is very susceptible <i>of</i> cold
Il déplaît <i>à</i> son maître,	He displeases his master
Ne désobéissez pas <i>à</i> vos <i>parens,</i>	Do not disobey your parents
Je pardonne <i>à</i> mes ennemis,	I forgive my enemies
Il ne ressemble pas <i>à</i> son <i>père du tout,</i>	He does not resemble his father at all
Il applaudit <i>à</i> tout ce qu'ils <i>font,</i>	He applauds all they do
Elle condescend <i>à</i> tout,	She complies with every <i>thing</i>
Il ne se fie <i>à</i> personne,	He trusts nobody
Ne nous nuisons pas l'un <i>à</i> <i>l'autre,</i>	Let us not hurt one another
Je pense <i>à</i> votre affaire,	I am thinking <i>on</i> your busi- ness

'*A* is used to denote the *place* where one *is*, or *is going*.

EXAMPLES.

Il vint <i>à</i> Londres,	He came <i>to</i> London
Il demeure <i>à</i> Londres,	He lives <i>in</i> London
Elle vit <i>à</i> la campagne,	She lives <i>in</i> the country
' <i>A</i> l'entrée, <i>à</i> l'extrémité, <i>au</i> milieu des bois,	<i>At</i> the entrance, <i>at</i> the ex- tremity, <i>in</i> the midst of the woods
' <i>A</i> deux doigts de terre,	<i>Within</i> two inches of the ground
Tournez <i>à</i> droite,	Turn <i>to</i> the right

'*A* is used to denote the *Period or Succession of Time or Action*.

EXAMPLES.

Nous nous levons <i>à</i> six heures, <i>à</i> neuf heures, <i>au</i> lever du soleil, <i>au</i> coucher du soleil, <i>à</i> tems, <i>à</i> divers tems,	We rise <i>at</i> six, <i>at</i> nine, <i>at</i> sun rise, <i>at</i> sun set, <i>in</i> time, <i>at</i> different times
--	---

'*A* is used to denote the *Circumstances of Events and Actions*.

EXAMPLES.

Il a mal à la tête,	He has a pain <i>in</i> his head
Un blessure à l'épaule,	A wound <i>in</i> the shoulder
Il était blessé au bras,	He was wounded <i>in</i> the arm
Du drap à dix huit schellings	Cloth <i>at</i> eighteen shillings a
la verge, à vil prix,	yard, <i>at</i> a cheap rate
Il vend des chandelles à la	He sells candles <i>by</i> the dozen,
douzaine, du vin à la pinte,	wine <i>by</i> the pint, meat <i>by</i>
de la viande à la livre, du	the pound, cloth <i>by</i> the
drap à la verge,	yard
Elle travaille à l'aiguille,	She works <i>at</i> her needle
Jouerons-nous aux cartes,	Shall we play <i>at</i> cards, <i>at</i>
aux échecs, &c.	chess, &c.
Je montai à cheval,	I rode <i>on</i> horseback
Nous allâmes à pied,	We went <i>on</i> foot
Elle s'habille à la Française,	She dresses in the French
	fashion

'*A* is used to denote *Possession, Office, Duty, &c.*

EXAMPLES.

' <i>A qui est ce canif?</i>	<i>Whose penknife is this?</i>
Il est à moi,	It is <i>mine</i>
Il est à lui; il est à elle; il est	It is <i>his</i> ; it is <i>her's</i> ; it is <i>my</i>
à mon frère,	<i>brother's</i>
C'est à vous à m'obéir,	It is <i>your part</i> to obey me
Ce n'est pas à nous à décider,	It is not <i>for us</i> to decide
C'est à votre père à voir,	It is your <i>father's business</i> to
	see

In speaking of time, *from* is rendered by *depuis*, and *to* by *jusqu'à*, also when *to* signifies *as far as*, or *so far as*, it is mostly expressed by *jusqu'à*; Ex. Je resterai à la ville depuis le milieu de l'été jusqu'à Noël, I shall remain in the city from Midsummer to Christmas. Il a voyagé jusqu'au delà l'Euphrate, he has travelled *as far as* beyond the Euphrates.

Avant, before, opposed to *Après*, after.

EXAMPLES.

Il arriva <i>avant</i> moi,	He arrived <i>before</i> me
Il arriva <i>après</i> moi,	He arrived <i>after</i> me
<i>Avant</i> le déluge,	<i>Before</i> the deluge
<i>Après</i> le déluge,	<i>After</i> the deluge

Devant, before, opposed to *Derrière*, behind.

EXAMPLES.

Il est mon ancien ; il marche	He is my senior ; he walks
<i>devant</i> moi, et moi je	<i>before</i> me, and I walk
marche <i>derrière</i> lui,	<i>behind</i> him
<i>Devant</i> la maison,	<i>Before</i> the house
<i>Derrière</i> la maison,	<i>Behind</i> the house

Chez, at, with.

EXAMPLES.

Il est <i>chez</i> moi, <i>chez</i> lui, <i>chez</i>	He is <i>at</i> my house, <i>at</i> his
<i>elle</i> ,	<i>house</i> , <i>at</i> her house
Il vient de <i>chez</i> moi, de <i>chez</i>	He comes from <i>my</i> house, <i>his</i>
<i>lui</i> , de <i>chez</i> vous,	<i>house</i> , <i>your</i> house
Il va <i>chez</i> vous, <i>chez</i> elle, <i>chez</i>	He goes to <i>your</i> house, to her
<i>eux</i> ,	<i>house</i> , to <i>their</i> house
Il dina <i>chez</i> moi, <i>chez</i> eux,	He dined <i>with</i> me, <i>with</i> them

Dans, in, used in a definite sense.

EXAMPLES.

<i>Dans</i> la ville. <i>Dans</i> la capi-	<i>In</i> the city. <i>In</i> the capital
tale,	
<i>Dans</i> la maison. <i>Dans</i> la	<i>In</i> the house. <i>In</i> the room.
chambre. <i>Dans</i> le des-	<i>With</i> the intent
sein,	
<i>Dans</i> Londres. <i>Dans</i> Paris,	<i>In</i> London. <i>In</i> Paris
Nous lisons <i>dans</i> Cicéron,	We read <i>in</i> Cicero, <i>in</i> Ovid
<i>dans</i> Ovide,	
<i>Dans</i> un mois,	<i>Within</i> a month

The prepositions *EN*, *DANS*, and *'A* sometimes express very different meanings.

EXAMPLES.

Il est <i>en</i> ville ; mais non	He is <i>in</i> town ; but not at
chez lui,	home
Je crois qu'il est <i>dans</i> la ville,	He is <i>in</i> town, and not out
et non hors de la ville,	of town
Il est <i>à</i> la ville, et non <i>à</i>	He is <i>in</i> town, and not in the
la campagne,	country

EN is sometimes used *adverbially*.

EXAMPLES.

<i>En</i> prison, <i>en</i> Angleterre, <i>en</i>	<i>In</i> prison, <i>in</i> England, <i>in</i>
France, <i>en</i> Italie, &c. Aller	France, <i>in</i> Italy, &c. To
<i>en</i> France, <i>en</i> Italie, &c.	go to France, Italy, &c.
<i>En</i> plein jour. <i>En</i> hiver.	<i>In</i> broad day. <i>In</i> winter.
Tant <i>en</i> paix qu' <i>en</i> guerre,	Both <i>in</i> peace and war
<i>En</i> colère. <i>Dans</i> la colère	<i>In</i> a passion. <i>In</i> the passion
où il était,	he was in
<i>En</i> un instant. <i>Dans</i> le	<i>In</i> an instant. <i>At</i> the mo-
moment,	ment

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE ON *'A*, &c.

He has a windmill in the country. I have a pain in my shoulder. We live in Paris, and my brother lives in Rouen. Are you going on foot, or on horseback. She received her daughter with open arms. We have cloth at eighteen shillings a (*the*) yard. To whom did you give the book? I have given it to your brother. It is not far from his house to the church. He is in prison. Your father will dine at our house to-morrow. Whose book is this? It is mine. We shall arrive before you. Your hat is behind the door.

Cloth, *drap*
yard, *verge*, f.

far, *loin*
to arrive, *arriver*

Obs. It may not be necessary to say any thing respecting *conjunctions*, as they have already been sufficiently treated of at pages 164 165, &c.

Of Interjections.

INTERJECTIONS are unconnected words or broken sentences that are used in expressing the *passions, feelings, or emotions* of the mind.

The following is a list of a few of the interjections used in French, which may be divided as follows :

1. TO EXPRESS JOY.

Ah ! ah !
Bon ! well !
Vive la joie ! huzza !
Vive le roi ! long live the king !

2. GRIEF OR AFFLICTION.

Ah ! hélas ! ah ! alas !
Ah mon Dieu ! O dear !
Ahi ! aïe ! oh ! ay !
Ouf ! pho !

3. FEAR.

Ah ! ah !
Hé ! oh !
Hélas ! alas !

4. ENCOURAGEMENT.

Allons ! ça ! ho ça ! come on !
Courage ! cheer up !
Tenez ferme ! hold ! or stand fast !

5. CONTEMPT, OR AVERSION.

Allez-vous en ! go away !
Fi ! fy ! or fye !
Fi donc ! fy upon !

6. DERISION.

Oh ! oh !
Zest ! Bah ! pshaw !

7. ADMIRATION.

Oh ! oh !
Ha ! hah !

8. SURPRISE.

Oh ! oh !
Miséricorde ! bless me !

9. WARNING.

Gare !
Prenez-garde ! } take care !
Tout beau ! softly !

10. CALLING TO.

Ho ! hold ! ho ! holla ! stop
Hem ! here !

11. FOR SILENCING.

Chut ! paix ! hush ! be still !
Silence ! silence !
St ! hist !

Idiomatical Expressions.

THE following is a list of a few of the *idiomatical expressions* which frequently occur in the French language:

I. AVOIR is mostly Englished by *to have*; but it is also frequently Englished by *to be*.

<i>Avoir chaud</i> , to be warm	<i>Avoir raison</i> , to be right
<i>Avoir froid</i> , to be cold	<i>Avoir tort</i> , to be wrong
<i>Avoir faim</i> , to be hungry	<i>Avoir peur</i> , to be afraid
<i>Avoir soif</i> , to be thirsty	<i>Avoir soin</i> , to take care
<i>Avoir besoin de</i> , to be in want of, to have occasion for, or need of	<i>Avoir pitié de</i> , to pity, or to be pitied
<i>Avoir honte</i> , to be ashamed	<i>Avoir cours</i> , to be current, or in vogue
<i>Avoir bonne mine</i> , to look well	<i>Avoir mal</i> , to have a sore, or pain
<i>Avoir affaire</i> , to want, to have need	<i>Avoir beau</i> , to be in vain
	<i>Avoir la bonté</i> , to be so good, or kind as.
<i>N'avoir que faire de</i> ,	} To want none of, or to have no occasion for, or to.
<i>N'avoir affaire de</i> ,	
<i>N'avoir garde de faire</i> ,	} To be far from doing a thing, or to be sure not to do a thing, by no means.
<i>Se garder bien de faire</i> ,	
<i>Avoir six, sept, ou huit ans</i> ,	<i>To be</i> six, seven, or eight years of age.

EXAMPLES.

<i>J'ai chaud aux mains, mais j'ai froid aux pieds,</i>	<i>My hands are warm, but my feet are cold</i>
<i>Avez-vous froid aux pieds ?</i>	<i>Are your feet cold ?</i>
<i>Chauffez-vous, si vous avez froid.</i>	<i>Warm yourself, if you are cold</i>
<i>Vous n'avez pas faim ?</i>	<i>Are you not hungry ?</i>
<i>Non, mais j'ai très soif.</i>	<i>No, but I am very thirsty</i>
<i>J'ai besoin de tout.</i>	<i>I want, or am in want of a coat</i>

J'en ai honte,	<i>I am ashamed of it, of them, &c.</i>
Vous avez très-bonne mine ce matin,	<i>You look very well this morning</i>
J'ai affaire de cela, et vous n'en avez que faire,	<i>I want that, and you do not (want that), or you have no occasion for that</i>
Il n'a que faire de votre argent,	<i>He wants none of your money</i>
Elle n'a que faire de parler,	<i>She has no occasion to speak</i>
Quel âge a Monsieur votre père ?	<i>How old is your father ?</i>
Il avait cinquante ans le mois passé,	<i>He was fifty years of age last month</i>
Vous aviez raison, et j'avais tort,	<i>You were right, and I was wrong</i>
Elle a peur de son ombre,	<i>She is afraid of her shadow</i>
Je ne crois pas que cette monnaie ait cours,	<i>I do not believe that this money is current</i>
J'ai mal à la tête,	<i>I have a pain in my head, or my head aches</i>
Les enfans ont mal aux oreilles,	<i>The children have sore ears</i>
Vous avez beau parler,	<i>You have spoken in vain, or to no purpose</i>
Vous avez beau l'avertir, il ne voulait pas vous croire,	<i>It is in vain for you to advise him, he would not believe you</i>
Voulez-vous avoir la bonté de me donner une plume ?	<i>Will you have the goodness to give me a pen ?</i>

EXAMPLES FOR PRACTICE.

Are your hands and feet warm ? My hands are so cold that I cannot write. Are you thirsty ? No, but I am very hungry. Do you want a hat ? You do not look well to day. How old are you ? I shall be twenty-two next week. He is right, and you are wrong. If I be right, you are wrong. Why are you afraid ? I am not afraid. Does your head ache ? No, but my tooth aches. It is in vain to

wait for him (*you have waited for him in vain*), he will not come. Will you be so kind as to bring me some chocolate.

So cold, *si froid* to bring, *apporter*
to wait for him, *l'attendre* chocolate, *chocolat*, m.

Idiomatical signification of different verbs.

<i>Aller à bride abattue,</i>	To go full speed
<i>Aimer mieux,</i>	To prefer, to have rather
<i>Casser un testament,</i>	To annul a will
<i>Casser le parlement,</i>	To dissolve parliament
<i>Donner à pleines mains,</i>	To give plentifully
<i>Donner un coup de main,</i>	To help
<i>Donner de main en main,</i>	To hand about
<i>Donner la main à un mal-</i>	To assist, or relieve an un-
<i>heureux,</i>	fortunate (<i>person</i>)
<i>En venir aux mains,</i>	To come to blows, to fight
<i>En vouloir à,</i>	To have a spite against
<i>Je souhaiterais pouvoir,</i>	I wish I could
<i>Il me tarde de,</i>	I long to
<i>Il ne laisse pas,</i>	He fails not, nevertheless
<i>Il ne tient qu'à moi, qu'à vous,</i>	It is in my, your, &c. power
<i>&c. que,</i>	
<i>Il ne tient pas à moi, à vous,</i>	It is not my, your, &c. fault,
<i>&c. que,</i>	if
<i>Il y va de votre vie,</i>	Your life is at stake
<i>Il y allait de mon honneur,</i>	My honor was at stake, or
	was concerned in it
<i>Jouer des instrumens,</i>	To play upon instruments
<i>Jouer un pièce de théâtre,</i>	To act a play
<i>Mourir de faim,</i>	To be starved, or to die of
	hunger
<i>Mourir de froid,</i>	To be starved with cold
<i>Mettre l'épée à la main,</i>	To draw the sword
<i>Prendre à toutes mains,</i>	To catch every way
<i>Prendre les devans,</i>	To get the start
<i>S'en prendre à,</i>	To find fault with, to blame
<i>Savoir bon gré,</i>	To take kindly
<i>S'en tenir à,</i>	To keep, or stand to

<i>Se bien prendre à quelque chose,</i>	}	To go the right way to work.
<i>S'y bien prendre,</i>		
<i>S'y prendre de la bonne façon,</i>		
<i>S'y prendre mal,</i>		To go the wrong way to work
<i>Trouver à redire à,</i>		To find fault with
<i>Venir à bout de,</i>		To accomplish, to bring about, &c.

Idiomatical significations of FAIRE.

<i>Faire peur,</i>	}	To make afraid
<i>Faire cas de,</i>		To esteem, to value
<i>Faire état,</i>		
<i>Faire faire,</i>		To bespeak, to get made, to oblige a person to do something
<i>Faire de son pis,</i>		To do our or one's worst
<i>Faire maigre,</i>		To eat fish
<i>Faire un tour de promenade,</i>		To take a walk
<i>Faire emplette,</i>		To purchase
<i>Faire le bel esprit,</i>		To set up for a wit, to pretend
<i>Faire semblant, ou mine,</i>		To pretend
<i>Faire le malade,</i>		To sham sickness
<i>Faire des armes,</i>		To fence
<i>Faire de son mieux,</i>		To do one's best
<i>Faire bien ses affaires,</i>		To prosper
<i>Faire la chambre,</i>		To clean the room
<i>Faire la cuisine,</i>		To cook, to dress victuals
<i>Faire la moisson,</i>		To reap the harvest
<i>Faire fond sur quelqu'un,</i>		To rely upon some one
<i>Faire en sorte que,</i>		To do in such a manner that
<i>Faire main basse sur l'ennemi,</i>		To put the enemy to the sword
<i>Faire beaucoup de chemin,</i>		To go, or walk a great way about
<i>Faire la sourde oreille,</i>		To turn, or give a deaf ear
<i>Faire voile, ou mettre à la voile,</i>		To set sail

Obs. Faire is used in expressing the state of the weather—v. p. 131.

<i>C'en est fait de lui,</i>	He is undone, it is over with him
<i>C'en était fait de moi,</i>	I was undone, it was over with me
<i>C'en sera fait de moi,</i>	It will be over with me, &c.
<i>Ne faire que,</i>	To do nothing but
<i>Ne faire que de,</i>	To be but just
<i>Se faire à la fatigue,</i>	To inure oneself to hardships
<i>Se faire des amis, ou des ennemis,</i>	To make friends, or enemies
<i>Se faire fort de,</i>	To take upon oneself
<i>Se faire des affaires,</i>	To bring oneself into trouble

EXAMPLES.

On a tort de <i>faire peur</i> aux enfans,	It is wrong to frighten children
Il m'a dit qu'il <i>fesait</i> grand cas de vous,	He told me that he esteemed you very much
Il a <i>fait faire</i> une montre à répétition,	He has <i>bespoke</i> a gold repeating watch
Il <i>fait de son pis</i> ,	He <i>does his worst</i>
Les Catholiques <i>font maigre</i> pendant le carême,	The Catholics <i>eat fish</i> during lent
Nous avons quelques <i>emplettes à faire</i> ,	We have some things to purchase
Il <i>fait le bel esprit</i> ,	He <i>sets up for a wit</i>
Elle <i>fait mine</i> d'être malade,	She <i>pretends</i> to be ill
Il <i>fesait semblant</i> de n'en rien savoir,	He <i>pretended</i> to be ignorant of it, or to know nothing of it
Il s'exerce à <i>faire des armes</i> ,	He practises <i>fencing</i>
Voulez-vous <i>faire un tour</i> de promenade?	Will you <i>take a walk</i> ?
On a déjà commencé à <i>faire la moisson</i> ,	They have already begun to <i>reap the harvest</i>
Allez-vous <i>mettre à la voile</i> ?	Are you going to <i>set sail</i> ?
J'aime mieux lire que de jouer,	I <i>had rather</i> read than play
Quand on lui parle de cela, il <i>fait le sourde oreille</i> ,	When they talk to him about that, he <i>turns a deaf ear</i> , or he <i>will not hear</i>

Anecdotes, Bon-Mots, &c.

FIRST.

Un gentilhomme entra un jour dans une boutique, pour acheter quelques marchandises ; et comme il trouva qu'on les mettait à un prix trop haut, il dit, qu'étant des amis de la maison, on ne devait pas lui vendre si cher. Le marchand lui répondit : il faut que je gagne ma vie avec mes amis ; car pour mes ennemis, ils ne viennent pas chez moi.

SECOND.

Fontenelle se trouvait un jour dans une société nombreuse. Il entendit un médecin qui cherchait à prouver par de longs raisonnemens, que le café était un poison lent. Vous avez raison, monsieur le docteur, dit Fontenelle, c'est un poison effectivement très-lent, je m'en apperçois par moi-même ; voilà déjà quatre-vingts ans passés que j'en prends, et, comme vous voyez, je me porte encore assez bien.

THIRD.

Voltaire fut mis à la Bastille par ordre du régent. Pendant sa détention on donna sa tragédie d'*Œdipe*. Le prince en fut si content qu'il rendit la liberté au prisonnier. Ce jeune poète alla sur-le-champ remercier le prince, qui lui dit : soyez sage et j'aurai soin de vous. Je vous suis infiniment obligé, répondit l'auteur, mais je vous supplie de ne plus vous charger de mon logement ni de ma nourriture.

FOURTH.

Les premiers beaux jours du printemps ayant fait naître l'envie à un gentilhomme d'aller voir son jardin, où son jardinier travaillait ; il y alla. Y étant entré, il jeta les yeux çà et là pour voir où était le jardinier, et ne le voyant nulle part, il alla sous des arbres fruitiers, où il le trouva endormi. Il l'éveilla et lui dit : est-ce ainsi que tu travailles, coquin ? tu ne gagnes pas le pain que tu manges, tu n'es pas digne que le soleil t'éclaire. Je le sais bien, dit le jardinier, c'est pourquoi je me suis mis à l'ombre.

FIFTH.

Rabelais étant un jour à dîner chez un cardinal dont il était le médecin, frappa avec son couteau sur le bord d'un plat, où il y avait une lamproie, en disant : cela est bien difficile à digérer. Le cardinal, qui aimait fort la santé, fit aussitôt ôter le plat avec la lamproie. Rabelais se la fit rapporter et se mit à en manger de toutes ses forces. Le cardinal voyant ceci, lui dit : comment, Monsieur, vous m'avez dit que cette lamproie était de difficile digestion, et cependant vous en mangez de si bon appétit ? Vous me pardonnerez, lui répondit Rabelais, je parlais du plat, et non pas de la lamproie.

SIXTH.

Monsieur *William Goodels*, gouverneur de la Virginie, s'entretenait un jour dans une rue de *Williamsbourg* avec un négociant. Un nègre le salua en passant. Le gouverneur lui rendit aussitôt son salut d'un air affable.—Quoi ! dit le négociant, votre excellence s'abaisse jusqu'à saluer un esclave ? Pourquoi ne le saluerais-je pas ? répondit le gouverneur ; je serais bien fâché qu'un esclave fût plus poli que moi.

Recapitulatory Practice.

FIRST LESSON.

We should often be ashamed of our noblest actions, if the world were to see all the motives that produce them.

Friendship cannot be maintained, without the forgiveness of many faults on both sides.

A man would have but little pleasure, if he did not flatter himself.

The world oftener rewards the appearance of merit, than merit itself.

There is more glory in forgiving, than there is pleasure in revenging.

Shallow people (*little minds*) ordinarily make a mystery of every thing, even of the greatest (*least*) trifles.

Most people judge of men only by their fortune, and not by their merit.

Most men are guided by custom, interest, and passion, and not by reason.

The ill use we make of our prosperity is often the cause of our misfortunes.

Let us not rest upon the virtue of our ancestors; let us be persons of worth ourselves.

The merit and greatness of a man should be measured only by his virtue and knowledge, and not by his fortune.

SECOND LESSON.

“Be like a promontory, against which the waves of the sea incessantly dash; but it stands firm, and about it the rage of the boiling billows is laid asleep.”

“An ignorant rich man is a golden slave, and in his form only differs from brutes.”

“Do not say few things in many words; but much in few words.”

"The sight of the reasoning power begins to perceive acutely, when that of the eye loses its acme."

"When the wise man opens his mouth the beauties of his mind present themselves to view, like the statues in a temple."

"The life of the avaricious resembles a funeral banquet; for though it has all things requisite to a feast, yet no one present rejoices."

"This world is like a vast sea; mankind is like a vessel sailing upon its tempestuous billows; our skillful conduct is as it sails: the sciences serve us for our oars; good or bad fortune is the favorable or contrary wind; and judgment is the rudder. If unhappily this last be wanting I despair of the vessel, for it must infallibly be wrecked."

THIRD LESSON.

ARCHIMÈDE a dit: "Donnez-moi un point d'appui, et j'ébranlerai l'univers." Ferguson, célèbre astronome et physicien, s'est amusé à calculer, que si, au moment où Archimède prononça ces paroles, Dieu l'eût pris au mot en lui fournissant avec ce point d'appui donné à 6000 milles du centre de la terre, des matériaux d'une force suffisante et un contre-poids de deux cents livres, il eût fallu à ce grand géomètre un levier de douze quadrillions de milles (12,000,000,000,000,000,000,000) et une vitesse à l'extrémité du long bras égale à celle d'un boulet de canon, pour élever la terre d'un pouce en vingt-sept centaines de billions d'années (27,000,000,000,000).

La lumière du soleil, qui nous parvient en 8 minutes 13 secondes, fait 192895 milles par seconde, c'est à dire 95097538 milles pendant les 8 minutes et quart à-peu-près.

Archimède, Archimedes
un point d'appui, a place to
stand upon
ébranler, to move
univers, world
physicien, philosopher
s'est amusé, amused himself
paroles, words
l'eût prit au mot, had taken
him at his word

fournissant, furnishing
suffisante, sufficient
contre-poids, counter-poise
livres, pounds
eût fallu, would have wanted
vitesse, velocity
boulet de canon, cannon-ball
élever, raise; pouce, inch
parvenir, to reach
fait, travels

FOURTH LESSON.

Il y a une première puissance, qui a formé le ciel et la terre; lumière infinie et immuable, qui se donne à tous sans se partager; vérité souveraine et universelle qui éclaire tous les esprits, comme le soleil éclaire tous les corps. Celui qui n'a jamais vu cette lumière pure, est aveugle comme un aveugle-né; il passe sa vie dans une profonde nuit comme les peuples que le soleil n'éclaire point pendant plusieurs mois de l'année. Il croit être sage, et il est insensé; il croit tout voir, et il ne voit rien; il meurt n'ayant jamais rien vu; tout au plus il aperçoit de sombres et fausses lueurs, de vaines ombres, des fantômes qui n'ont rien de réel. Ainsi sont tous les hommes entraînés par les plaisirs des sens et par le charme de l'imagination. Il n'y a point sur la terre de véritables hommes, excepté ceux qui consultent, qui aiment, qui suivent cette raison éternelle; c'est elle qui nous inspire quand nous pensons bien; c'est elle qui nous reprend quand nous pensons mal. Nous ne tenons pas moins d'elle la raison que la vie. Elle est comme un vaste océan de lumière; nos esprits sont comme de petits ruisseaux qui en sortent, et qui y retournent pour s'y perdre.—FÉNELON.

<i>Se donne</i> , communicates itself	<i>ombres</i> , shadows
<i>sans se partager</i> , without	<i>ainsi</i> , such
partaking of them	<i>entraînés</i> , carried away
<i>éclaire</i> , enlightens, or illu-	<i>charme</i> , allurements
minates	<i>de véritables hommes</i> , any
<i>comme un aveugle né</i> , as one	rational men
who is born blind	<i>suivent</i> , obey
<i>nuit</i> , darkness	<i>reprend</i> , reproves
<i>il croit être sage</i> , he thinks	<i>nous ne tenons pas moins</i> , we
himself wise	are no less indebted
<i>insensé</i> , fool	<i>ruisseau</i> , rivulet
<i>tout</i> , all things	<i>en sortent</i> , flow from it
<i>tout au plus</i> , at most	<i>pour s'y perdre</i> , to be lost in
<i>sombres</i> , glimmerings	it again.

FIFTH LESSON.

La source de la véritable grandeur d'âme consiste à ne désirer rien de ce qui est à autrui ; et à être persuadé qu'on ne peut, ni sur le trône, ni dans aucune autre condition, conserver ni courage ni honneur, si on se laisse séduire par des désirs que la justice condamne.

Il y a beaucoup d'hommes qui accommodent la religion à leurs intérêts, au lieu d'accommoder leurs intérêts à la religion.

La religion étant la source de toute bonne morale, elle rend les hommes heureux sur la terre, en leur donnant la patience, qui les soutient dans les maux ; la charité, qui leur fait aimer leurs semblables ; l'espérance qui les empêche d'altérer leur santé : vertus qui toutes tendent à leur conservation et à leur félicité dans ce monde et dans l'autre.

La religion n'est pas plus exigeante que la philosophie. Loin de prescrire à l'honnête homme aucun sacrifice qu'il puisse regretter, elle répand un charme secret sur ses devoirs, et lui procure deux avantages inestimables, une paix profonde pendant la vie, une douce espérance au moment de la mort.

SIXTH LESSON.

Grand Dieu ! dont la seule présence soutient la nature, et maintient l'harmonie des lois de l'univers ; vous qui, du trône immobile de l'empyrée, voyez rouler sous vos pieds les sphères célestes, sans choc et sans confusion ; qui, du sein du repos, reproduisez à chaque instant leurs mouvements immenses, et seul régissez, dans une paix profonde, ce nombre infini de cieux et de mondes ; rendez, rendez enfin le calme à la terre agitée ! qu'elle soit dans le silence ! qu'à votre voix, la discorde et la guerre cessent de faire retentir leurs clameurs orgueilleuses ! Dieu de bonté, auteur de tous les êtres, vos regards paternels embrassent tous les objets de la création : mais l'homme est votre être

de choix. Vous avez éclairé son âme d'un rayon de votre lumière immortelle ; comblez vos bienfaits, en pénétrant son cœur d'un trait de votre amour : ce sentiment divin, se répandant partout, réunira les natures ennemis ; l'homme ne craindra plus l'aspect de l'homme ; le fer homicide n'armera plus sa main ; le feu dévorant de la guerre ne fera plus tarir la source des générations ; l'espace humaine maintenant affaiblie, mutilée, moissonnée dans sa fleur germera de nouveau, et se multipliera sans nombre ; la nature, accablée sous le poids des fléaux, reprendra bientôt son ancienne fécondité, et nous, Dieu bienfaiteur, nous la seconderons, nous la cultiverons, nous l'observerons sans cesse, pour vous offrir à chaque instant un nouveau tribut de reconnaissance et d'admiration.—BUFFON.

Dont, whose
empyrée, highest heaven
choc, disorder, or clashing
sein, bosom
rendez, restore
agitée, troubled
de faire retentir, need not be
 translated into English
de choix, chosen
de, with, and of
rayon, ray
comblez, increase, or com-
 plete the measure of
trait, ray
ne—plus, no longer
le fer homicide n'armera plus

sa main, his hand will no
 longer wield the murderous
 steel
tarir, exhaust
affaiblie, impaired
moissonnée, cut off
accablée, borne down
germer, to spring up
fléaux, scourge
reprendra bientôt, will soon
 resume
ancienne fécondité, former
 fertility
bienfaiteur, beneficent
sans cesse, incessantly
reconnaissance, gratitude

French Abbreviations.

J. C. . . .	Jesus Christ, <i>Jesus Christ.</i>
L. M. . . .	Leurs Majestés, <i>their Majesties.</i>
L. M. Imp. .	Leurs Majestés Imperiales, <i>their Imperial Majesties.</i>
S. M. . . .	Sa Majesté, <i>his or her Majesty.</i>
S. M. Brit. .	Sa Majesté Britannique, <i>his Britannic Majesty.</i>
S. M. T. C. .	Sa Majesté très Chretienne, <i>his most Christian Majesty.</i>
S. M. Cath. .	Sa Majesté Catholique, <i>his Catholic Majesty.</i>
S. M. Prus. .	Sa Majesté Prussienne, <i>his Prussian Majesty.</i>
S. A. R. . .	Son Altesse Royale, <i>his or her Royal Highness.</i>
S. A. E. . .	Son Altesse Electorale, <i>his Electoral Highness.</i>
S. A. S. . .	Son Altesse Serenissime, <i>his most Serene Highness.</i>
S. E. . . .	Son Excellence, <i>his or her Excellency.</i>
S. Emin. . .	Son Eminence, <i>his Eminence.</i>
S. S. . . .	Sa Sainteté, <i>his Holiness.</i>
V. S. . . .	Vieux Stile, <i>Old Stile.</i>
N. S. . . .	Nouveau Stile, <i>New Stile.</i>
Messrs. . .	Messieurs, <i>Gentlemen, or Messrs.</i>
M.	Monsieur, <i>Sir, or Mr.</i>
Mde. Me. .	Madame, <i>Madam, Mistress, or Mrs.</i>
Mlle. Madlle.	Mademoiselle, <i>Miss.</i>
M. S. . . .	Manuscript, <i>Manuscript.</i>
Sept. or 7 ^{bre}	Septembre, <i>September.</i>
Oct. or 8 ^{bre}	Octobre, <i>October.</i>
Nov. or 9 ^{bre}	Novembre, <i>November.</i>
Dec. or X ^{bre}	Decembre, <i>December.</i>

THE END.

T. C. Hansard, Paternoster-row Press.

ERRATA.

Page 34 line 32 for *la plus belle œil*, read *le plus bel œil*.

. . . 79 . . 8 . . *bâtant*, read *bâtissant*.

. . . 86 . . 12 . . *eut*, read *eurent*.

. . . 162 . . 22 . . *allé*, read *allée*.

. . . 238 last line . . *nul le*, read *nulle*.

. . . 229 line 33 . . Mademoiselle B . . . *nous a envoyé*
de beaux tableaux, Miss B . . . has *sent us* some fine
pictures, read Mademoiselle B . . . *nous a envoyé* de
beaux tableaux *de Paris*, Miss B . . . has *sent us* some
fine pictures *from Paris*.

1

ALSO, MAY BE HAD OF THE SAME PUBLISHERS.

A PRACTICAL GERMAN GRAMMAR; or, A New and Easy Method of acquiring a thorough knowledge of the German Language; for the use of Schools and Private Students. By JOHN ROWBOTHAM, Master of the Classical, Mathematical, &c. Academy, Walworth. 12mo. Price 6s. 6d. boards; or 7s. bound.

Mr. Rowbotham has produced the clearest German and English Grammar that we have seen. The study of German has hitherto been obstructed in England by the circumstance, that the Grammars of that Language have been the forbidding productions of Germans, and hence they have been German and English, instead of being English and German. By means of Mr. Rowbotham's luminous Grammar, in which he exhibits a corresponding familiarity with both languages, the study of German is likely to be considerably promoted.—*Monthly Mag.* June, 1824.

It is seldom that we notice works of this description; but the superior merit of the present book induces us to pay it particular attention. In the Preface, Mr. R. observes, that it has been his particular object to initiate the Student into the intricacies of the German language by slow, and, as it were, imperceptible degrees. Every rule, however simple, is followed by immediate illustrations, so that theory and practice are closely bound together. The fault of the majority of Grammars consists in the confusion of their analyses; but in this, the necessary distinctions between the different parts of speech, are carefully and judiciously marked, so that the intricate labyrinth of the German language may be threaded (to use an appropriate metaphor) by an aspiring Theæus. The rules of Syntax are concise and apposite; the examples are efficient and comprehensive. In short, this Grammar is one that will give the Student a quicker and keener insight into the German Language than any preceding ones, and, as such, we sincerely recommend it.—*Lit. Gaz.* June, 1824.

This desideratum (a good German Grammar) Mr. R. has not only supplied, but supplied with ability and effect; and the Literary World is highly indebted to him for the clear, precise, and comprehensive manner in which he has accomplished his task.—*Critical Gazette*, July, 1824.

In the treatise before us, the rules are clearly explained and exemplified by suitable exercises, particularly on Syntax, where the illustrations are ample. The object of the author appears to have been to compress the requisite information within as narrow limits as it would admit of, by which means he has succeeded in making an excellent work.—*Lit. Chron.*

Toutes les règles ou remarques importantes sont accompagnées d'exemples, ou d'exercices faciles; la marche progressive est convenablement graduée et presque insensible, et, en general, l'auteur a taché d'être concis et clair, autant que le permet la nature du travail.—*Bulletin Universel*, No. 7. Juli, 1824.

Le travail de M. Rowbotham, se distingue par une énonciation simplifiée des principales règles, et surtout par les exercices dont il les fait suivre, et qui offrent à l'élève une occasion immédiate de les appliquer.—*Rev. Encyclopédique*, Juli, 1824.

A PRACTICAL SYSTEM OF ALGEBRA; designed for the use of Schools and Private Students. By P. NICHOLSON, Author of the Architectural Dictionary, Combinatorial Analysis, &c. and J. ROWBOTHAM, Master of the Academy, Walworth. In 12mo. Price 4s. 6d. boards; or 5s. bound.

The examples are very numerous and well chosen. We consider that this treatise deserves commendation for its gradual and successive development of the difficulties of this subject; thus enabling the Student to perceive their nature more distinctly, and grapple with them more successfully.—*Westminster Review*, Jan. 1825.

The advantage of combined talent in the conduct of any work (more especially one on science) is incontestable. The respective character of the talent combined in the work before us is peculiarly calculated to give it value. From the perspicuity with which it is written, and the copious and well-selected examples it contains, it may be regarded as a valuable acquisition to scholastic literature.—*Monthly Mag.* Feb. 1825.

We can most decidedly recommend it as possessing facilities for the attainment of the branch of science, which we do not discover in any other work of the kind. The method of treating Arithmetical Progression in particular, deserves attention, for the examples not only furnish questions in simple equations when there are one or two unknown quantities, but also in affected quadratics.—*Land. Jour. Arts and Sciences*, Nov. 1824.

In the labours of both, we find not merely a simplification of the ordinary processes, and a better arrangement of trite materials, but also considerable novelty and improvement in the theoretical as well as the practical parts of the work. The merit of the work is considerably enhanced by luminous demonstrations, appended in the shape of notes, to all those rules of which the *rationale* is not immediately obvious. In short, we have no hesitation in recommending this little volume as a skilful instructor to the tyro in Algebra studies, and a valuable remembrancer to the proficient.—*Brit. Trav.* Nov. 3, 1824.

Ce petit ouvrage est parfaitement propre à remplir l'objet que les auteurs ont en vue. Il est rédigé avec beaucoup d'ordre et de clarté; les principes y sont présentés de manière à être facilement classés dans la mémoire; et ce qui me semble éminemment convenable au but qu'on veut atteindre, c'est que les exemples où les théorèmes sont mis en usage, sont extrêmement multipliés. Cette multitude de questions que le disciple résout tour à tour, soit lui seul, soit avec l'aide d'un maître, doit nécessairement lui rendre bientôt familiers des procédés dont on a besoin de faire des applications fréquentes aux branches diverses des sciences physiques. Enfin ce petit traité peut être regardé comme comprenant tout ce qu'il promet par son titre, l'enseignement de l'algèbre pratique. Les difficultés métaphysiques sur les racines incommensurables, sur la doctrine des quantités négatives, les paradoxes des expressions indéterminées et infinie, &c., sont, il est vrai, des sujets entièrement omis. Mais cette omission n'est pas un oubli; c'est à dessein que les auteurs ont évité de traiter des matières qui auraient pu jeter des doutes dans l'esprit de leurs jeunes disciples. Ce livre manque en France, et les étudiants de nos collèges y trouveraient des lumières, et surtout des exemples fort utiles à leur instruction. *FRANCEUR.—Revue Encyclopédique*, Décembre, 1824.

A KEY to NICHOLSON's and ROWBOTHAM's ALGEBRA, containing the Solutions at full length of all the Questions in that work.

The authors have completed the obligation on the public, by presenting it with a Key, in which all the solutions are worked at full length, an inestimable advantage to the student, and one with which no other work on the subject will present him. It is printed with the utmost correctness, and finished in the highest style of typographical execution.—*Monthly Mag.* Oct. 1825.

